

C H I N E S E

Chinese Dialogues
(Pinyin Edition)

By

Fred Fang-yü Wang

Edited by

Henry C. Fenn & Pao-ch'en Lee

August 1975

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

COPYRIGHT NOTICE

This Pinyin version of Fred Fang-yll Wang, CHINESE DIALOGUES (copyright 1953), was prepared by Defense Language Institute and is printed with the kind permission of the copyright owners. It is not for duplication or public sale. It is reproduced by Defense Language Institute only for purposes of the U. S. Government. All inquiries regarding other uses should be addressed to Far Eastern Publications, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

Except for the conversion to Pinyin, the text, including the Introduction, is unchanged from the 1953 edition. Thus, there may be occasional wordings which are not relevant to current practice at the Defense Language Institute.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

Lesson 1 Dào le Shànghǎi (Arriving in Shànghǎi)

- 2 Zài Zhàojia (At the Zhàos')
- 3 Zài Zhàojia Chīfàn (Dinner at the Zhàos')
- 4 Tán Tiānqi (Talking about Weather)
- 5 Suíbiàn Tántan (A Chat)
- 6 Jì Xìn (Mailing a Letter)
- 7 Mǎi Xié (Buying Shoes)
- 8 Zū Fáng (Renting a House)
- 9 Jiè Jiājù (Borrowing Furniture)
- 10 Gù Chúzi (Hiring a Cook)
- 11 Dǎ diànhuà (Making a Phone Call)
- 12 Diū Dōngxi (Burglary)
- 13 Jiǎngyǎn (Giving a Lecture)
- 14 Dào Shàoxiàn Qù (To Shàoxiàn)
- 15 Zuò Lǐbài (Going to Church)
- 16 Cānguān Xuéxiào (Visiting a School)
- 17 Cānguān Shàngkè (Visiting a Class)
- 18 Kànbìng (Seeing a Doctor)
- 19 Chūqu Wánr (An Outing)
- 20 Yěcān Yǐhòu (Describing a Picnic)
- 21 Xīhú Lǚxíng (A Trip to West Lake)
- 22 Kàn Shū Kàn Bào (Reading)
- 23 Tán Fàngjià (Talking about Vacation)
- 24 Kèqihuà gen Súhuà (Courtesy Talk and Proverbs)

List of Notes on Sentence Structure

Vocabulary Index

INTRODUCTION

This book is planned for students of spoken Mandarin who have completed the study of Mr. M. Gardner Tewksbury's Speak Chinese or its equivalent (approximately 12 weeks of 25 contact hours per week). The twenty-four lessons are based on everyday conversational situations, and each lesson comprises the following study materials for the student:

1. Dialogues
2. Vocabulary Usage
3. Sentence Structure
4. Pronunciation Drill
5. Questions
6. What Would You Say?
7. Memorization (or Story)
8. Translation

A separate Teacher's Manual is being prepared, containing oral drills for comprehension and other instructional materials which should not be placed in the hands of the student. In addition, both the basic materials of the Teacher's Manual have been recorded on SoundScriber records to make it possible for the student to do a large part of his studying by ear rather than by eye.

Each lesson calls for eight to ten contact hours plus an equal amount of individual study and listening to records. This heavy proportion of classroom contact to homework is necessitated by the objective, which is to speak the language, not to read it. Chinese differs from occidental languages in that the normal medium of reading in Chinese is the ideographic character, which is not essential to the mastery of the spoken language. The spoken language is taught more quickly and effectively through the medium of romanization, but this romanization should be regarded chiefly as a tool. Learning to speak requires plentiful oral drill and the use of recorded materials.

Each teacher will have his own ideas as to how much time should be spent on each section of the lesson. The following outline, recording the experience of the Institute of Far Eastern Languages at Yale University over a period of seven years, is suggestive rather than mandatory.

Dialogue. The dialogue is a live situation, and each expression in it is used in a setting. Obviously a student cannot learn the use of an expression without knowing its meaning, but it is equally axiomatic that he doesn't fully understand its meaning without knowing the context in which it is used. Each sentence of the dialogue is important insofar as it shows the student how to use words in a natural situation to express a non-artificial idea. Hence the aim has been to avoid the artificial sentences that once cluttered the pages of language texts - grammatically correct but not necessarily met in current conversation.

Where records are available, the student should prepare for recitation by listening to the sound recording of the dialogue, both with and without reference to the printed text. The normal life situation for learning a language is to listen without preparation to natural conversations and guess new terms from their context. This setting is best simulated if the student is willing to listen several times to the recording without reference to his text, trying to pick new expressions out of the blue. In this way he avoids approaching them as isolated words in a vocabulary list, meeting them instead as dynamic parts of living speech.

The first class period the instructor reads the dialogue to the class in a normal conversational manner and at normal speed, watching for signs of comprehension or of failure to understand. This may be followed by drawing the story out of the class in English and piecing it together. The teacher may read it through a second time with occasional stops to ask a student to translate a sentence as a check on comprehension. The first objective is complete comprehension of the dialogue, without which the subsequent exercises will be relatively ineffective.

Vocabulary Usage. To stress the belief that a word cannot be fully understood apart from a setting the use of each term except the noun is illustrated by one or more sentences. This procedure saves the student the trouble of turning back to the dialogue for an example of use and offers additional contexts in which the term may be used. Nouns seldom raise major problems of usage in Chinese. Drill teachers should avoid merely asking the meaning of a given vocabulary item; the student should be asked to make a sentence using the specified term. Instructors who prefer to give their own examples of use for the new words should take care not to step outside the limits of the lessons already covered. Words frequently have other uses for which the student is not yet ready, the introduction of which at the moment may only complicate his learning without strengthening his understanding.

Sentence Structure. In Speak Chinese the basic sentence patterns of the Chinese language were introduced in a logical order. The second level of instruction, for which Chinese Dialogues has been prepared, calls for review of all patterns introduced on the first level plus extensions and elaborations. This should be done not in order of ease but in topical grouping for comparison. Thus the patterns for the expression of Time are reviewed comparatively, with stress on the positional difference between expressions of time when, which stand before the verb, and time used as a measure, which stands after the verb. Each lesson reviews one or more problems of structure and idiom, and adds further materials and exercises to aid in mastery.

Pronunciation Drill. At the outset of his study of Chinese, the student's pronunciation problems were primarily a matter of mastering unfamiliar sounds. At the second level this adjustment to new sounds should have been completed, but for a long time there may remain the problem of appropriating the rhythms or normal speech and carrying them over from one situation to another. Consequently there is need for drill in imitating rhythmic enunciation of complete phrases or sentences. Here the teacher should be constantly on his guard against 'reading' the drill material rather than 'saying' it conversationally. The Chinese national, raised on the monosyllabic character, used to reading it in a somewhat staccato rhythm, is particularly liable to this fault in teaching. It is easily obviated by quickly memorizing each sentence and saying it without reference to the book.

Questions. A set of questions is offered to which the student is expected to work out appropriate answers. He should constantly bear in mind the principle laid down in Speak Chinese, that the pattern of the question and the pattern of the answer normally parallel each other very closely, in marked contrast to the English custom of inverting the order of subject and verb. This principle actually simplifies the problem for the student; nevertheless it seems to be difficult to persuade him to rely on it. Once he has this rule firmly implanted in his mind, other answer patterns which deviate from this principle may be introduced to enrich the student's speech.

What Would You Say? This is merely a variation on the question-and-answer drill. Given a certain situation, what question would you ask or what remark would you make? The instructor may vary the drill still further by giving a statement and asking what question would be calculated to produce it as an answer. He may have one student make up a question and another student answer it. The old game of "Twenty Questions" is a realistic and palatable way of making the student ask and answer questions.

Memorization or Story. Memorization is sometimes overdone, sometimes underdone, but it certainly has a place in teaching spoken language. The writer studied German under the author of a well-known German grammar. Part of the regular assignment was to commit to memory the illustrative sentences given in the day's quota of grammar text. They were all fundamental structural patterns and some of them have never been forgotten. A contemporary course in Russian is reputed to consist mainly of memorizing a list of several hundred pattern sentences. In the present work a memorization passage is given in every other lesson. The goal in recitation should be correct sentence structure, but deviations in wording which do not affect the essential meaning can well be ignored. The purpose of these exercises is not the reproduction of gems of literature which permit no editing but the acquisition of structural patterns useful in everyday speech.

The stories which alternate with the memorization passages should be treated even more freely. The student studies the story to get the sequence of events and idiomatic expressions. He then tells the story back in his own words. This procedure may be varied by introducing the round-robin approach, which keeps each student alert against the moment when he is called upon to 'go on from there'.

Translation. There are many ways of handling translation exercises. Most laborious of all, most commonly used, but not necessarily most effective is for the instructor to collect and correct all translation exercises and return them to the student - who has on occasion been known to consign the product of the instructor's labors to the waste basket. The main objective of a translation exercise should be to locate the student's problems and forestall repetition of error. Unless grading be considered of prime importance, it seems more economical of teacher time, as well as more effective, to exchange papers in class while the instructor conducts with the aid of a blackboard a clinical analysis of how each English sentence may best be expressed in Chinese and why. Attention to individual problems is assured by questions from the class. The need for grades can easily be met by a brief test after every four or five lessons.

The reader may be surprised that no place has been given to written translation from Chinese into English. This, it is felt, can better be covered orally. The objective of the course is ability to comprehend and to speak, not to compose written translations. The written translations from English into Chinese are tolerated only because they reflect the student's problems of expressing himself in an alien tongue.

Comprehension. Too much time cannot be given to comprehension work of one kind and another. The student of Chinese in America cannot go out onto the street and hear Chinese spoken as he might if he were living in China. The Teacher's Manual offers limited materials aimed at making good this lack. Constant listening to recorded materials offers a second remedy for the situation. To many students this becomes boring after a few repetitions, but such boredom must be overcome, for the student has no better way of getting the rhythms of the language into his subconscious.

We have used at the Institute at least two types of classroom exercise in comprehension. The one is commonly referred to as 'rapid fire'; it consists of reeling off sentences of moderate length at high speed to stimulate the student's attention and accustom him to grasping meaning in complete phrases and sentences rather than word by word. Difficult at the outset, this soon brings the student to the point where he feels a pardonable pride in his ability to understand normal speech at normal speed. The second type of exercise gives the student, at the normal rate of speech, a paragraph at a time, or even an entire anecdote at a time, asking him to catch the train of thought and report the general idea or plot. These two processes complement each other.

What Next? It is assumed that most students of Chinese will have taken up the study of the Chinese character and mastered several hundred by the time he has completed Chinese Dialogues. From this point on he will naturally devote more time to the character, while his spoken Chinese will arise from the character text he may be studying. To facilitate this transition a romanized sketch of Chinese History, Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Gāngyào, has been prepared. It offers abundant material for classroom discussion in Chinese, not only on the history of China in the past, but on current news. Thus it becomes an appropriate preparation for the reading of the Chinese newspaper. This text is accompanied by a Chinese character version for the convenience of Chinese nationals who may be instructing and for the use of students whose knowledge of characters has reached this level.

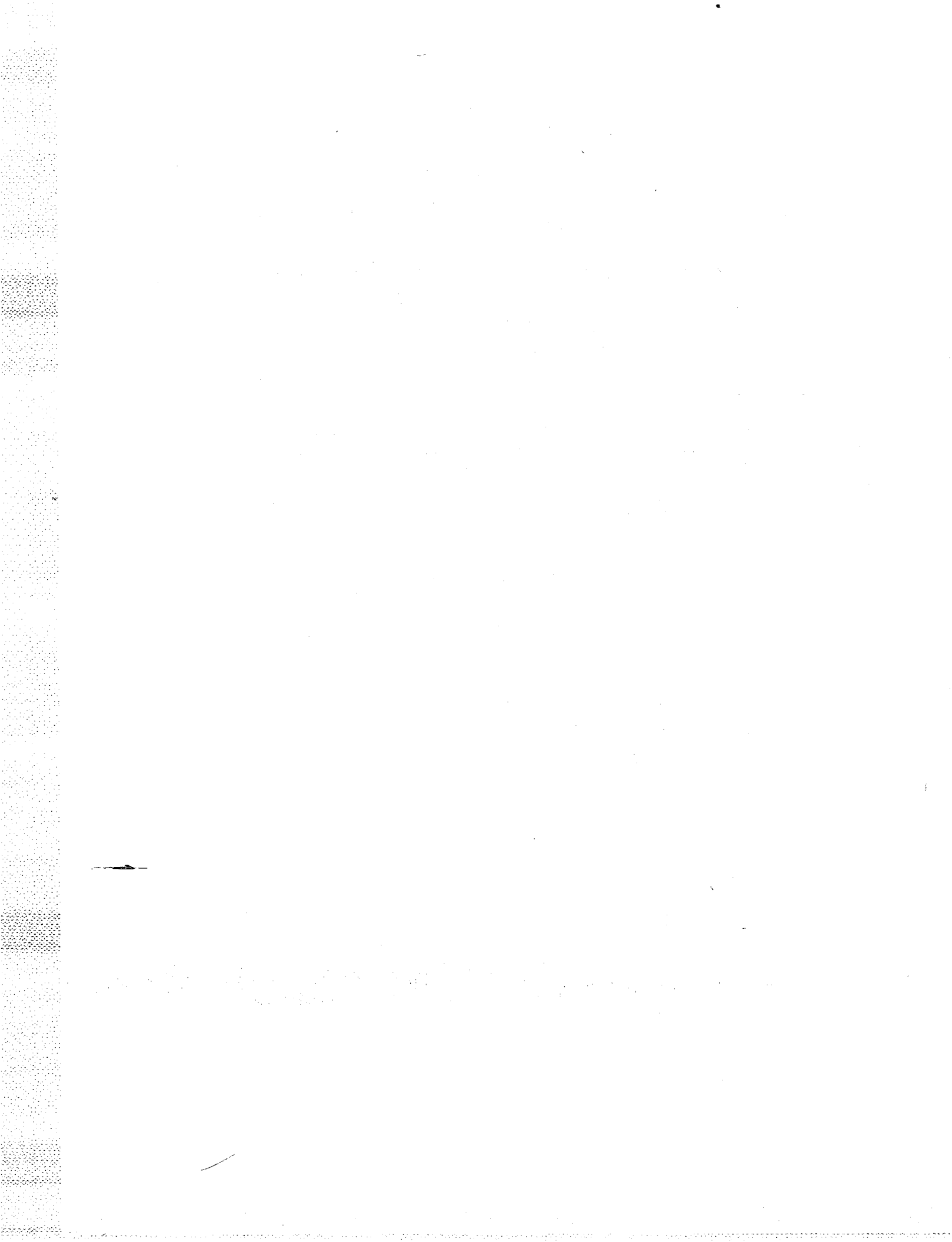
Henry C. Fenn

June 15, 1953

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The author wishes to thank Mrs. Gwendolyn T. Lee for her services in preparing the Vocabulary-Index of this book.

Fred Wang



DIYIKE - DAOLE SHANGHAI

I. Duihua - (Dialogue)

Sī xiānsheng cóng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó qù. Dào le Shànghǎi, xià chuán yǐhòu, kànjian tāde yiwèi Zhōngguó péngyou, Zhào Zǐān, Zhào xiānsheng. Sī xiānsheng shàng chuán yǐqián gěi Zhào xiānsheng dǎle yige diànbào, suóyì Zhào xiānsheng dào mǎtoushang qu jiē ta. Zhào xiānsheng kànjian Sī xiānsheng jiu guòqu gen ta shuō:

- Zhào: Sī xiānsheng, nín lái le. Hǎo a?
- Sī: Hǎo, nín hǎo a? Xièxie nín lái jiē wo.
- Zhào: Búkèqǐ. Wǒ jiēzhào nín de diànbào, xīnli fēicháng tòngkuai. Chuán shì liúyuè sānhào kāide ma?
- Sī: Duìle, jiùshì wǒ dǎ diànbào neitiān kāide. Zǒude hěn kuài. Lùshang yě méitíng. Yígòng cái zǒule shíliùtiān.
- Zhào: Yídìng hěn lèile ba?
- Sī: Méi shenme. Chuánshang de péngyou hěn duō. Měitiān dàjiā zài yíkuàir tántan, hěn yǒuyìsi.
- Zhào: Zuò chuán hěn yǒuyìsi. Wǒmen huíjiā qu tán ba. Qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiāli qu zhù. Wǒmen gěi nín bǎ wūzi yùbeihǎole.
- Sī: Nà butài máfan ma? Wǒ xiǎng wǒ zhù lǚguǎn ba.
- Zhào: Bùmáfan. Wǒmen yǐjing gěi nín yùbeihǎole.
- Sī: Nàme qǐng nín děng yíděng. Wǒ qu qǔ wǒde xíngli qu.
- Zhào: Xíngli, děng yíhuǐr jiào yòngren lái qǔ, hǎo buhǎo? Wǒmen xiān huíqu ba.
- Sī: Yě hǎo. Wǒmen zuò shénme chē qù ne?
- Zhào: Děi xiān zuò gōnggòng-qìchē, zài zuò diànchē. Xiàle diànchē zài guò liángtiáo jiē jiu dào le.
- Sī: Gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?
- Zhào: Jiù zài nèibianr yige yàopù qiántou. Dào nèige shízìlùkǒur, wàng yòu yizǒu jiu shì.
- Sī: Piào duōshao qián?
- Zhào: Nín búyong guǎnle. Wǒ gěi nín mǎi.
- Sī: Wǒ zìjǐ mǎi ba.
- Zhào: Bù, wǒ mǎi, wǒ mǎi.
- Sī: Nàme xièxie nín.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ - (Vocabulary Usage)

(English translations of sentences used in the vocabulary of each lesson as examples of usage can be found in section two of Part VIII of each lesson.)

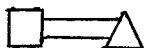
1. diàn N: electricity
1.1 diànbào N: telegram, cable
1.2 diànchē N: trolley car
1.3 diànhuà N: telephone
1.4 diànmén N: electric switch
1.5 dǎ diànbào VO: send a telegram
1.6 dǎ diànhuà VO: make a phone call
- a. Qǐng ni bǎ diànmén kāikāi.
b. Nǐ wèi shénme méigěi wo dǎ diànhuà?
2. mǎtòu N: dock, wharf
3. jiē V: receive, meet (at a train, boat, etc.)
3.1 jiē rén VO: meet someone
3.2 jiēzhào RV: received, met
3.3 jiē diànhuà VO: answer a phone call
- a. Wǒ dào chēzhàn jiē péngyou qule.
b. Shéi dào ta jiā qu jiē ta qu?
c. Jīntiān wǒ jiēzhào ta yīfēng diànbào.
d. Wǒ gěi ta dǎ diànhuà, tā bùjiē.
4. xīn N: heart, mind
4.1 yòngxīn SV/VO: put heart into, apply one's mind to
- a. Nǐ děi duō yòng diǎnr xīn.
b. "Rén lǎo xīn bulǎo."
5. tòngkuai SV: be content, be happy
- a. Wǒ yíkànjian ta, xīnli jiu tòngkuai.
b. Zuótiān wo jiànzhào yīwèi lǎo péngyou, tánde tòngkuaijǐle.
6. tíng V: stop, park
6.1 tíng chē VO: park a car, stop a train
- a. Wǒde biǎo tíngle.
b. Wǒ zhǎobuzhao dìfang tíng chē.
7. dàjiā N: everybody
7.1 wǒmen dàjiā N: all of us
- a. "lěng shi yige ren lěng; rè shi dàjiā rè."
8. máfan N: trouble, nuisance
V: bother, annoy
SV: be bothersome, annoying
8.1 zhǎo máfan VO: look for trouble, make trouble
- a. Wǒ búyuànyì gěi nín zhǎo máfan.
b. Zhèjian shìqing zhēn máfanjǐle.

9. qǔ V: fetch, take out, call for (jiē and qǔ both mean 'fetch', but jiē usually refers to people, qǔ to things)
- 9.1 qǔ xíngli VO: get baggage
- 9.2 qǔ dōngxi VO: fetch things
- 9.3 qǔ qián VO: fetch money, withdraw money
- 9.4 qǔchulai RV: take out, withdraw
- a. Wǒ děi huí jiā qǔ wǒde màozi qu.
- b. Qián dàgài jīntian qǔbuchulái.
10. xíngli N: baggage (M: -jiàn)
11. yòngren N: servant
- 11.1 nányòngren N: male servant
- 11.2 nǚyòngren N: maid
12. gōnggòng-qìchē N: bus, public vehicle (M: -liàng for cart, -tàng for trip)
13. guò V: pass, cross over
- 13.1 guòlai RV: come over
- 13.2 guòqu RV: go over, pass away (die)
- 13.3 guò jiē VO: cross a street
- 13.4 guò NU-tiáo jiē VO: go NU blocks
- a. Qǐng ni ràng wo guòqu.
- b. Tā fùqin zuótian wǎnshang guòqule.
- c. Wǎng qián zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē jiu dàoie.
14. yào N: medicine
- 14.1 yàopù N: medicine (herb) shop
15. shízì-lùkǒur PW: street or road intersection
- 15.1 shízì N: a cross in the shape of the Chinese character ten (十)
- 15.2 lùkǒu(r) N: end of a street
16. piào N: ticket (M: -zhāng)
- 16.1 huǒchēpiào N: railroad ticket
- 16.2 ménpiào N: entrance ticket (of any kind)
- 16.3 xínglipiào N: baggage ticket
17. guǎn V: manage, take care of, attend to
- 17.1 guǎndeliǎo RV: can manage (actual form uncommon)
- 17.2 guǎnbuzhǎo RV: none of one's business (actual form uncommon)
- 17.3 bùguǎn V: don't care whether, no matter whether
- a. Zhèjian shìqing shéi guǎn?
- b. Tā guǎn hái zi guǎnde hěn hǎo.
- c. Tāmen liǎngge rende shìqing, wǒ guǎnbuliǎo.
- d. Nǐ guǎnbuzhǎo.
- e. Wǒ buguǎn ni yǒu qián méi qián, wǒ děi yào yige màozi.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào - (Sentence Structure)

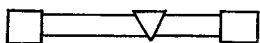
1. The topic of a sentence: While the topic of a Chinese sentence is most commonly a noun, the following situations are also common:

1.1 Number measure:



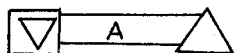
Yíge búgòu. (One is not enough.)

1.2 Specifier (with or without measure):



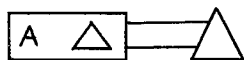
Zhè(ge) shì wǒde. (This one is mine.)

1.3 Funtive verb:



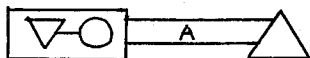
Zǒuzhe tài màn. (Walking is too slow.)

1.4 Stative verb:



Tài xiǎo méiyòng. (Too small is no use.)

1.5 Verb object:



Chàngēer zhēn yǒuyìsi. (Singing is very interesting.)

1.6 Complete sentence:



Wǒ gěi qián, yě xíng. (It's all right for me to pay.)

But it is quite common for a Chinese sentence not to have a topic or a subject. When a thing has already been mentioned in the previous sentence, the subject or object referring to it is often omitted. Usually it is the same topic but sometimes the former object may be used as a new topic which is understood. The first two sentences of this lesson illustrate this type:

Sī xiānsheng cóng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó qù.
 (Sī xiānsheng) dào le Shànghǎi,
 (Sī xiānsheng) xià chuán yǐhòu,
 (Sī xiānsheng) kànjian tāde yíwèi Zhōngguó péngyou,
 (Péngyou) shì Zhào Zīān, Zhào xiānsheng.

In order to comprehend the full meaning of the sentences, one must figure out what the topic of each sentence is.

2. Purpose of coming or going and directional ending:

2.1 A purpose may be expressed in three forms with lái or qù:

- 2.11 Tā dào chēzhàn qu jiē péngyou.
- 2.12 Tā dào chēzhàn jiē péngyou qu.
- 2.13 Tā dào chēzhàn qu jiē péngyou qu.

2.2 Exercise: Translate the following sentences into Chinese, using all three forms:

- 2.21 He went back home to fetch his hat.
- 2.22 My friend will come to meet me at the bus depot.
- 2.23 I plan to go to the country to live.
- 2.24 He said that he wanted to go to town to have a bus ride.
- 2.25 He said that he wanted to go to town by bus to buy something.

3. Use of wàng and cóng:

3.1 Wàng may be followed by certain directional boundforms in the pattern:

wàng	{	-shàng -xià -qián -hòu -zuǒ -yòu -dōng -nán -xī -běi	}	{ fēi zǒu pǎo lái qù
------	---	---	---	-------------------------------------

When these directional boundforms are made into full placewords by the addition of a positional suffix such as -biānr or -tóu, the resultant placewords may follow both wàng and cóng. E.g.

shàng- xià- qián- hòu-	}	{ -tou -biānr	}	dōng- nán- xī- běi- zuǒ- yòu-	}	-biānr (but <u>not</u> <u>-tou</u>)
---------------------------------	---	---------------------	---	--	---	--------------------------------------

3.2 Cóng differs from wàng in three respects:

3.21 In the patterns cóng---lái (come from) and cóng---qù(go from), only dōng, nán, xī and běi may stand.

cóng	{	dōng nán xī běi	}	lái (or qù)
------	---	--------------------------	---	-------------

3.22 Cóng may refer to time as well as place, so may be followed by TW as well as PW, while wàng may not.

3.23 Cóng in the sense of 'by way of', 'via', may be followed by either a PW or a N.

- a. Tā shì cóng zhèr (PW) guòqude.
- b. Tā shì cóng chuānghu (N) jìnláide.

3.24 With opposite pairs of directional boundforms, cóng may stand before the first of the pair and wàng or dào before the second. Furthermore, a wàng-phrase (CV-O) may always be used by itself, while a cóng-phrase cannot.

cóng	{	-shàng -zuǒ -qián -dōng -nán	}	{	wàng dào	}	{	-xià -yòu -hòu -xī -běi	}
------	---	--	---	---	-------------	---	---	-------------------------------------	---

3.3 Exercise:

3.31 Make sentences using the boundforms listed in 3.1. Use each both independently and as a positional suffix.

3.32 Make sentences with the word cóng meaning 'by way of' or 'through'.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí - (Pronunciation Drill)

1. Nǐ gěi shéi dǎ diànbào le? Wǒ gěi wǒ péngyou.
2. Lǎojià, mǎtou zài nǎr? Mǎtou jiu zai bēibianr.
3. Nǐ jiē Zhāng xiānsheng qu ma? Wǒ bùjiē ta qu.
4. Wǒde diànbào, tā jiēzhao méiyǒu? Hái méijiēzhao ne.
5. Nǐ xīnli juéde zěnmeyàng? Wǒ juéde hěn tóngkuai.
6. Nǐde biǎo jǐdiǎn le? Wǒde biǎo tíngle.
7. Zhèjian shì máfan bumáfan? Máfanjile.
8. Nǐ dào nǎr qu? Oǔ xíngli qu.
9. Nǐ guòdelái guòbulái? Wǒ xiǎng guòdeqù.
10. Lǎojià, huǒchēzhàn zai shénme dìfang? Yìzhí wàng dōng zǒu, jiu dàole.
11. Zhèjian shì shéi guǎn? Tāmen liǎngge ren guǎn.
12. Wǒ xiǎng wo búqule. Bùguǎn nǐ qù buqu, wǒ yě yao qù.

V. Wèntí - (Questions)

1. Sī xiānsheng cóng shénme dìfang dào shénme dìfang qu?
2. Tā dào le Shànghǎide mǎtou kànjian shéi le?
3. Zhào xiānsheng zěnmé zhīdao Sī xiānsheng shénme shíhou dào Shànghǎi?
4. Zhào xiānsheng kànjian Sī xiānsheng yǐhòu, gen ta shuō shénme? Sī xiānsheng shuō shénme?
5. Sī xiānsheng zuòde nàitiáo chuán shì jǐyuè jǐhào kāide? Zài lùshang tíngle méitíng?
6. Nàitiáo chuán zǒude kuài bukuài? Yígòng zǒule duōshao tiān?
7. Sī xiānsheng shì bushi hěn lèile?
8. Sī xiānsheng zai chuánshang yǒu péngyou ma?
9. Sī xiānsheng zai chuánshang de shíhou, zuò shénme shìqing?
10. Zhào xiānsheng yě juéde zuò chuán yǒuyìsi ma?
11. Zhào xiānsheng gěi Sī xiānsheng zhǎo lǚguǎn le ma? Wèi shénme?
12. Sī xiānsheng wèi shénme yao zhǔ lǚguǎn?
13. Sī xiānsheng wèi shénme yao qǐng Zhào xiānsheng dēng ta yihuǐr?
14. Zhào xiānsheng wèi shénme búràng Sī xiānsheng qu qǔ xíngli?

15. Cóng mǎtòu dào Zhào xiānsheng jiǎ dǎi zuò shénme chē?
16. Gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn zài shénme dìfang? Dào le shízìlùkǒu wàng nǚbianr zǒu?
17. Piào shì shéi mǎide? Duōshao qián?
18. Sī xiānsheng yào mǎi piào, Zhào xiānsheng shuō shénme?
19. Cóng xuéxiào dào nǚ jiǎ zěnme zǒu?
20. Cóng xuéxiào dào fànguǎnr dǎi guò jǐtiáo jiē?

VI. Nǐ shuō shénme - (What Would You Say?)

1. Yàoshi nǐ dào le Zhōngguó, yíxià chuán jiu kànjian yiwèi péngyou lái jiē ni lái le, nǐ dōu wèn ta shénme?
2. Nǐ yǒu yiwèi Zhōngguó péngyou, dào Měiguó lái le. Nǐ dào mǎtòushang qu jiē ta. Nǐ kànjian ta yíhòu, wèn ta shénme?
3. Nǐ yào dào huǒchēzhàn qu, kěshi búrènshi lù. Nǐ zěnme wèn?
4. Nǐ yào qǐng nǐ péngyou dào nǚ jiǎ zhù liǎngtiān, nǐ zěnme gēn ta shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ zhǎobuzhào gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn, nǐ zěnme wèn?

VII. Bèishū - (Memorization)

A: Lǎojià, dào huǒchēzhàn qu zěnme zǒu?

B: Nǐ shì zǒuzhe qù, shì zuò chē qù?

A: Yuǎn buyuǎn?

B: Bútài yuǎn, yě bútài jìn. Zǒuzhe yǒu shífen zhōng jiu dào le. Nín cóng zhèr yìzhí wǎng qián zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē. Dào le shízì-lùkǒu, wàng zuǒ zǒu jiu kànjian le.

A: Yàoshi zuò chē ne?

B: Qiántou nèige yàopù nǎr, jiùshì gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn. Zuò sānhào chē, yìzhí jiu dào le.

A: Hǎo, xièxie, xièxie.

VIII. Fānyì - (Translation)

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1.1 Did you send that telegram?
- 1.2 He went to the railway station to meet some friends.
- 1.3 Can you go after her?
- 1.4 Will they receive the letter I wrote by tomorrow night?
- 1.5 They did go to the dock to meet you, but they missed you.
- 1.6 As soon as I heard this I felt very unhappy.
- 1.7 You cannot park your car in front of this building.
- 1.8 None of them went after our baggage.
- 1.9 I can ask him to do it for me, but I don't like to bother him.
- 1.10 This is really a lot of trouble, don't you think?

- 1.11 I have to go to the school to get my pen.
1.12 Go to the left three blocks and you will be there.
1.13 Who takes care of meeting Mrs. Lee?
1.14 No matter whether I can afford it or not, I still must buy one for her.
1.15 That's my business, you don't need to interfere.

2. Below are English translations of sentences used in the vocabulary of this lesson as examples of usage. Translate these back into Chinese (numbers corresponding to those in Part II):

- (1) a. Please turn on the switch.
b. Why didn't you phone me?
- (3) a. I went to the station to meet some friends.
b. Who is going to her home to go after her?
c. I received a telegram from him today.
d. I called him on the phone, but he wouldn't answer the phone.
- (4) a. You must put a little more heart into it.
b. "Only old in body but not in spirit."
- (5) a. As soon as I see him, I feel very happy.
b. Yesterday I met an old friend and we had a most delightful chat.
- (6) a. My watch stopped.
b. I can't find a place to park.
- (7) a. "In cold weather some people are cold; in hot weather everybody is hot."
- (8) a. I don't want to cause you any trouble.
b. This matter is really very troublesome.
- (9) a. I have to go home to get (fetch) my hat.
b. Probably I cannot take this money out today.
- (13) a. Please let me pass.
b. His father passed away last night.
c. Go straight ahead for three blocks and you will be there.
- (17) a. Who takes care of this matter?
b. She disciplines her child very well.
c. I cannot manage those two person's affairs.
d. It's none of your business.
e. Whether you have money or not, I must have a hat.

DIÈRKE - ZÀI ZHÀOJIA

I. Duihuà

Sīmǐzī Xs. gēn Zhào Xs. dào le Zhào jia, Zhào Tt. gēn liǎngge xiǎo háizi dou dào kètīngli lái jiàn Sī Xs.

Zhào Xs: Lái lái lái, wǒ gěi nimen jièshao jièshao. Zhèwei shi Sīmǐzī Xs., gāng cóng Měiguó lái. Zhè jiù shì wǒ tàitai gēn liǎngge xiǎo háizi.

Sī: O! Zhào Tt! Jiǔyǎng jiǔyǎng.

Zhào Tt: Wǒ cháng tīng Zǐān shuō, nín yào dào Zhōngguó lái. Liǎngge lǐbài yíqián wǒ jiù bǎ wūzi gei nín shōushihǎo le. Nín zài lùshang yíqiè dōu hǎo ba?

Sī: Hěn hǎo. Chuánshang yíqiè dōu hěn fāngbiàn. Nín zhei liǎngge xiǎo háizi jǐsuì le?

Zhào Tt: Dà de bǎsuì le. Xiǎo de wǔsuì.

Sī: Dōu shàngxué le ba? Jǐniánjǐ le?

Zhào Tt: Gēge zài sānniánjǐ. Dìdi hái méishàngxué ne.

Sī: Gēgede bǐzi, zǔ dou xiàng fùqin, lián ěrduo dou xiàng. Kěshi dìdi xiàng mǔqin. Yǎnjing xiàngde lǐhai. Nín kàn, yǒu dà yòu hēi, gēn tā mǔqinde jiǎnzhíde yíyàng.

Zhào Tt: Nín qǐng dào zhèjiān wūzi lái kànkàn ba. Zhèjiān shì gei nín yùbeide. Chuáng kǒngpà méiyǒu Měiguode shūfu. Kěshi nín zài zhè zhù, bǐ nín zhù lǚguǎn fāngbian yidiǎnr. Zhèbianr shì zǎofáng. Shǒujin, yízi, yáshuā, yá gāo dou zài zhèr. Nín yào yòng shénme biéde dōngxi, jiù jiào yòngren gěi nín ná. Qiānwàn bié kèqi.

Sī: Wǒ búhuì kèqi. Nín yě bié kèqile. Zhè bǐ zhù lǚguǎn hǎoduō le.

Zhào Tt: Nín xiān xíxi liǎn, xiūxi xiūxi ba. Děng yìhuǐ qǐng nín gen wǒmen yíkuàir chīfàn.

Sī: Wǒ yídào zhèr, jiù máfan nín. Zhēn bùhǎoyìsi.

Zhào Tt: Bùmáfan. Děng yìhuǐ jiàn ba.

Sī: Hǎo, děng yìhuǐ jiàn.

II. Shēngzì yòngfǎ

18. jiǔyǎng

IE: I've longed to meet you

A: Wǒ xìng Zhāng, wǒ jiào Zhāng Yǔshí.

B: O, Zhāng Xs! Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng!

19. shōushi V: fix, repair, clean up, put in order, straighten out.
 19.1 shōushi dōngxì straighten things up
 19.2 shōushi wūzi fix up a room
 19.3 shōushi xíngli pack up
 19.4 shōushi qìchē repair an automobile
 19.5 shōushihǎole straightened out
 19.6 shōushiwánle finished fixing
- a. Wǒ jīntian zǎoshang děi shōushi shōushi wūzi.
 b. Zhège zhuōzi huàile. Tā shōushile bàntiān méishōushihǎo.
20. yíqiè N: all of anything
 a. Yíqiède shìqing nǐ dōu búyong guǎnle.
21. -niánjí M: grade in school
 21.1 jǐniánjí PW: what grade or year (in school)?
 21.2 sìniánjí PW: fourth grade or year (in school)
- a. Tā zài èrniánjíde shíhou, niànshū niànde bùxíng.
22. bízi N: nose
 23. zuǐ N: mouth
 24. ěrduo N: ear (M. -zhī, one of a pair)
 25. xiàng AV: resemble, seem like
 SV: look alike
 25.1 kànzhe xiàng look like
 25.2 tīngzhe xiàng sounds like
 25.3 xiàng...zhèyàngr like this
 25.4 xiàng...nàyàngr like that
- a. Tāmen liǎngge rén hěn xiàng.
 b. Tā shuō huà tīngzhe xiàng chàng gē.
 c. Wǒ méikànjianguo xiàng tā nàyàngrde rén.
26. yǎnjing N: eye (M. -zhī)
 27. jiǎnzhí(de) A: simply, just
 a. Jiǎnzhíde shuō ba. Wǒ buyuanyi qù.
 b. Tā jiǎnzhíde bùxǐhuan niàn shū.
28. -jiān M: (for rooms)
 a. Zhège fángzi yígòng yǒu wǔjiān wūzi.
29. chuáng N: bed (M. -zhāng)
 30. shǒujīn N: towel (M. -tiáo; -kuài)
 31. yízi N: soap (M. -kuài)
 32. yá N: tooth

33. shuā V: brush
 33.1 shuā yá VO: brush teeth
 33.2 shuā yīshang VO: brush clothes
 33.3 shuāzi N: brush (M. -bǎ -- generally for things which have handles or parts grasped by the hand in using)
 33.4 yáshuā N: toothbrush (M. -bǎ)
 a. Zhège màozi tài zāngle, wǒ kàn shuābugānjingle.
34. yáɡāo N: toothpaste (M. -tǒng -- meaning tube, keg, barrel, tank)
35. (xǐ)zǎofáng N: bathroom (M. -jiān)
 35.1 xǐzǎo VO: to take a bath
36. qiānwàn A: by all means, without fail, be sure
 a. Qǐng nǐ qiānwàn bié wàngle.
37. xiūxi V: rest, take a vacation
 a. Wǒ zhèi jitiān tài lèile, děi xiūxi jitiān le.
38. bùhǎoyìsi A/SV: be embarrassed, be shy
 a. Nǐ gēn tāmen shuō nèige huà, ràng wǒ hěn bùhǎoyìsi.
 b. Wǒ bùhǎoyìsi yào tāde qiān.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Shì---de Construction:

- 1.1 The shì---de construction is used to stress some attendant circumstance such as time, place, means, purpose, rather than the action of the main verb. In every case, the action of the main verb is already known or has been mentioned, and it is the when, where, who, what or how of the action that is to be stressed. While the de follows the main verb, the shì is generally right before the circumstance to be stressed:

1.11 Tā (shì) zuótian cóng Niǔyuē zuò huǒchē láide.

1.12 Tā zuótian (shì) cóng Niǔyuē zuò huǒchē láide.

1.13 Tā zuótian cóng Niǔyuē (shì) zuò huǒchē láide.

Note that the shì is sometimes omitted in this construction, in which case the stress depends entirely on the voice.

- 1.2 It has just been stated that the de is generally placed right after the main verb. However, when there is an object after the main verb, the de can be placed either after the verb (V-de-O) or after the object (VO-de):

1.21 Nèige ren shì shàngyuè huíde guó. (or)

1.22 Nèige ren shì shàngyuè huí guó de.

The former pattern is more common and is recommended for general use.

1.3 Exercise: Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1.31 I bought a book. Do you know how much I bought it for?
1.32 He has already come. He came by boat.
1.33 Did you fix your room? Yes, I did. When did you fix it?
1.34 Have you brushed my clothes? Which brush did you brush them with?
1.35 It was this morning I bought this watch at that store.
1.36 It was at that store I bought this watch this morning.
1.37 This morning I bought this watch at that store for three dollars.
1.38 When did you have lunch today?
1.39 I didn't buy this book myself. He bought it for me.

2. The Use of Bǐ:

- 2.1 Bǐ has been introduced in Speak Chinese as a co-verb. However, it can also be used as a full verb.

Wōmen liǎngge ren bǐle bàntiān, háishi bùzhīdao shéi gāo.

- 2.2 A co-verbial phrase with bǐ (bǐ-O) generally modifies a stative verb as in the example in 2.3. But it may also modify:

- 2.21 Certain auxiliary verbs such as xǐhuan and ài. When the meaning is well established, the functive verb can sometimes be left out:

Tā bǐ wǒ ài wǎnr.
Wǒ bǐ tā xǐhuan (chī).

- 2.22 Or a functive verb preceded by certain such adverbs as duō, shǎo, zǎo, wǎn, xiān and hòu (and possible some others) and followed by a number-measure:

Tā bǐ wǒ duō chīle yìwǎn fàn.
Tā bǐ wǒ zǎo lái le yíge zhōngtóu.

- 2.3 Degree of comparison is expressed by a predicate complement which is put after the stative verb. It may take any of the following forms:

Zhèige bǐ nèige guì

duōle
-de duō
yidiǎnr
sānmáo (qián)
hǎoxiē
bùshǎo
bùduō
duōshao?

It is important to remember that the two superlative adverbs hěn and tài never precede the stative verb in a sentence expressing degree of comparison.

2.4 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

- 2.41 Her eyes are much more beautiful than her sister's.
- 2.42 This towel is a little cheaper than that one.
- 2.43 I can fix it much better than he can.
- 2.44 He is one inch taller than I.
- 2.45 He works one more hour than I do.
- 2.46 This pen is one dollar cheaper than the other one.
- 2.47 I am three years older than he is.
- 2.48 I came here only five minutes earlier than he did.
- 2.49 He knows much more than I do.
- 2.410 As soon as you compare these two books, you will know which one is better.

3. Lián---Dōu (or Yě):

3.1 Lián is a co-verb whose object may be either nominal or verbal. The main verb of the sentence, which is modified by the lián-O phrase, must be preceded by dōu or yě. Examples of the different types of object which may follow lián are:

- 3.11 a noun: Lián yíge rén dōu méiyǒu,
- 3.12 a verb: Lián kàn yě búkàn,
- 3.13 a S-V: Lián wǒ qù dōu bùxíng,
- 3.14 a V-O: Tā lián chīfàn dōu chībùqǐ,
- 3.15 a S-V-O: Lián wǒ gěi qián tā dōu búyuànyì, or
- 3.16 a SV: Tāde lián lián hóng dōu méihóng, and possibly some others.

3.2 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

- 3.21 Even the children know a few words of English.
- 3.22 I don't even know where he is.
- 3.23 He won't even give a dollar for it.
- 3.24 Don't ask him to buy it. He cannot afford even an old car.
- 3.25 He won't even listen to his wife.
- 3.26 He doesn't want to sell even if I buy it.
- 3.27 He feels dull even when drinking.
- 3.28 Mrs. Zhōu won't come even if I invite her.
- 3.29 When I got up this morning, it wasn't even daybreak.
- 3.30 He won't wash his face even when I offered him one dollar.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Wǒ gěi nín jièshào jièshào. Zhèwèi shì Zhāng Xs. Jiǔyǎng jiǔyǎng.
2. Yíqìède dōngxì, dōu shōushihǎole ma? Dōu shōushihǎole.
3. Nǐ dìdi zài jīniánjí? Tā zài sānniánjí.
4. Zhège shìqing zěnme bàn? Wǒ jiǎnzhíde bùzhīdào.
5. Shǒujīn, yízi, yáshuā, yágāo, dōu mǎile ma?
Shǒujīn, yízi, dōu mǎile, yáshuā, yágāo, hái méimǎi ne.
6. Zhèjiān shì shénme wūzi? Zhèjiān shì xizǎofáng.
7. Tāde bǐzi, zuǐ, yǎnjīng, ěrduo dōu xiàng shéi? Shéi dōu búxiàng.
8. Nǐ gěi tā mǎi shǒujīn le ma? Mǎile. Lián yízi dōu mǎile.
9. Nǐ yìtiān shuā jǐcì yá? Liǎngcì. Zǎoshàng yíci, wǎnshàng yíci.
10. Zhèjiān shì, nǐ qiānwàn bié wǎngle. Nín fàngxīn. Wǎngbuliǎo.
11. Nín jīntian hái chūqu ma? Bùchūqule. Wǒ děi xiūxi xiūxile.
12. Nǐ bùhǎoyìsi gēn tā shuō ba? Méiyǒu shénme bùhǎoyìsi.

V. Wèntí

1. Sīmízī Xs. dào le Zhào Xs. jia, shéi lái jiàn ta? Dào shénme dìfang lái jiàn ta?
2. Zhào Xs. jièshaode shíhou, shì zěnme shuōde?
3. Zhào Xs. gei tāmen jièshaowánle yǐhòu, Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
4. Zhào Tt. zěnme zhīdao Sī Xs. yào dào Zhōngguo lái?
5. Zhào Tt. shuō, ta shénme shíhou jiu bǎ Sī Xs. de wūzi shōushihǎole?
6. Zhàojia yǒu jǐge hái zi? Shì nán de shì nǚ de? Jǐsuì le?
7. Zhàojiade hái zi shàngxué le méiyǒu? Zài jǐnián jí?
8. Sī Xs. shuō dà hái zi xiàng shéi? Shénme dìfang zuì xiàng?
9. Xiǎode xiàng shéi? Shénme dìfang xiàng de lì hai?
10. Zhào Tt. ràng Sī Xs. kàn tā de wūzi méiyǒu?
11. Zhào Tt. shuō nèige chuáng zěnme yàng?
12. Nǐ xiǎng Sī Xs. zài Zhàojia zhù bǐ zhù lǚguǎn zěnme yàng?
13. Zhào Tt. gěi Sī Xs. yùbeile shénme dōngxi le?
14. Yàoshi Sī Xs. yào yòng bié de dōngxi, tā děi zěnme bàn?
15. Zhào Tt. qǐng Sī Xs. kàn wán le wūzi, gen Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
16. Zhào Tt. qǐng Sī Xs. gen tāmen yíkuài chī wǎn fàn, Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
17. Nǐ zài péngyou jiā li zhù guo méiyǒu? Nǐ jué de zhù zài péngyou jiā li bǐ zhù lǚguǎn fāngbian ma?
18. Nǐ shénme shíhou keyi shuō "jiǔyǎng"?
19. Nǐ xiàng nǐ fùqin, xiàng nǐ mǔqin?
20. Nǐ huì shōushi qìchē ma? Nǐ huì shōushi shénme?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi yǒu rén gěi nǐ jièshào xīn péngyou, nǐ tīngjian tā de míngzi yǐhòu, shuō shénme? Nǐ wèn ta shénme?
2. Nǐ gěi nǐ de péngyou men jièshào de shíhou, zěnme shuō?
3. Nǐ kànjian nǐ péngyou de xiǎo hái zi de shíhou, wèn ta shénme? Nǐ wèn ta fùmǔ shénme?
4. Nǐ zhù zài péngyou jiā li, nǐ de péngyou gěi nǐ zuò le hěn duō de shì. Nǐ xiǎng yào shuō liangjù huà, xièxie tā. Nǐ zěnme shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ qǐng péngyou zài jiā li zhù, nǐ yào ràng tā kàn kàn tā de wūzi, gào sòng tā shénme dōngxi zài shénme dìfang, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1.1 I must straighten up the dining room.

1.2 He said that he didn't know how to repair this automobile, but he fixed it.

1.3 He is in the fourth grade. What grade are you in?

1.4 His nose certainly looks like his mother's.

1.5 These two girls look very much alike.

1.6 It sounds like Chinese.

1.7 He simply does not think.

1.8 He just doesn't understand.

1.9 When you go down town, be sure you don't forget to buy some tooth brushes for me.

1.10 I take a bath in the morning and wash dishes at night.

1.11 Do you want to have a rest?

1.12 I want to rest a couple of weeks.

1.13 I want to take a week's vacation.

1.14 I am embarrassed to tell him.

1.15 It was a very embarrassing situation.

2. Translate back into Chinese the following sentences which are translations of the examples of usage in the vocabulary of this lesson:

(18) A. My surname is Zhāng and my given name is Yǔshí.
B. Oh, Mr. Zhāng, I've longed to meet you.

(19) a. This morning I must straighten up my room.
b. This table is broken. He has tried to repair it, but didn't succeed.

(20) a. You don't have to worry about any of the business.

(21) a. When he was in the second grade, his studying was futile.

(25) a. The two of them are very much alike.
b. When he talks, it sounds like singing.
c. I have never seen anyone like him.

- (27) a. To speak frankly, I don't want to go.
b. He simply does not like to study.
- (28) a. Altogether this house has five rooms.
- (33) a. This hat is too dirty, I don't think it can be brushed clean.
- (36) a. Please don't under any circumstances forget it.
- (37) a. These few days I have been too tired. I must rest for a few days.
- (38) a. (When) you said that to them, it made me very embarrassed.
b. I feel very embarrassed to take his money.

DISĀNKE - ZÀI ZHÀOJIA CHĪFÀN

I. Duìhuà

Liùdian zhōng Zhào Xs. dào Sī Xs. wūzili láile.

Zhào Xs: Fàn hǎole. Qǐng dao fàntīng chīfàn ba.

Sī: Hǎo. Wǒ lìkè jiu qù.

(Sī Xs. dào le fàntīng yǐhòu.)

Zhào Tt: Nín qǐng zuò ba. Wǒ gěi nín yùbeile dāozǐ chāzi 1e.

Sī: Wǒ yòng kuàizi ba. Wǒ zai Měiguode shíhou, xué shuō Zhōngguo huà suǐrán méixuéhǎo, kěshi xué chī Zhōngguo fàn, xuéde búcuò. Zhōngguo fàn buyòng kuàizi, buhǎochī.

Zhào Tt: Nín de Zhōngguo huà, shuōde tài hǎole.

Sī: Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng.

Zhào Tt: Nín xuéle jǐnián 1e?

Sī: Búdào yìnián. Kěshi shuōde jīhui hěn shǎo.

Zhào Tt: Búdào yìnián, jiu néng shuō zènme hǎo ma? Kě zhēn bùróngyi. Nín chángchang zhège cài ba. Yěxǔ búgòu xián. Zhèr you yán, hújiāomiánr, jiàngyóu. Nín yào buyào?

Sī: Xíngle! Wǒ búyào. Zhège càide wèir hǎojíle. Zhème duōde cài, dou shi nín yíge rén zuòde ma?

Zhào Tt: Méi shénme cài. Nín zai chī yìdianr zhèige yú ba.

Sī: Hǎo! Xièxie nín! Zhèige cài jiào shénme? Wèir, wénzhe zhēn xiāng.

Zhào Tt: Zhèi shi chǎobáicài.

Sī: Duìbuqǐ! Wǒ méitīngqīngchu. Qǐng nín zai shuō yíci.

Zhào Tt: Wǒ shuō zhèi shì CHǎO-BÁI-CÀI.

Sī: O! CHǎO-BÁI-CÀI. Zhēn hǎochī. Yǒuyidiǎnr tián. Měiguode Zhōngguo fànguǎnr, duōbàn dōu shi Guǎngdōng ren kāide. Cài ye búhuài. Kěshi wèir hǎoxiàng méiyóu zhème hǎo shìde. Zhèige shi jī ma? Shi zènme zuòde?

Zhào Tt: Shi zháde.

Sī: Zuò zhèige cài, yòng yóu yòngde hěn duō ba?

Zhào Tt: Duìle. Nín zai chī yìdianr fàn ba.

Sī: Bùchīle. Wǒ chībǎole. Nín màn mǎnr chī ba.

Zhào Tt: Zhēn chībǎole ma? Zai hē yìdianr jīdàntāng.

Sī: Bùle. Wǒ shì chībǎo. Wǒ búhuì kèqǐ.

Zhào Tt: Nàme nǐn qǐng dao kètīng hē diǎnr chá ba.

Sī: Hǎo! Xièxie nǐn.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

39. suǐrán...kěshi... A: although...(yet)...

a. Tā suǐrán niànguò yidiǎnr zhōngguó shū, kěshi kàn bào háishi kànbudǒng.

40. guòjiǎng IE: you flatter me

A. Nín de gēr chàng de zhēn hǎo.

B. Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng.

41. bú dào V: less than, not quite (usually followed by a numeral)

a. Tā nèige bǐ, bú dào liǎngkuài qián.

42. jīhuì N: opportunity, chance

43. cháng V: taste

a. Nèige cài hǎochījǐle. Nǐ cháng le méiyóu?

44. xián SV: be salty

44.1 xiányú N: salted fish

44.2 xiánròu N: salted meat

44.3 xiánjīdàn N: salted egg

44.4 xiáncài N: salted vegetables

a. Wǒ bú tài xǐhuan chī xián dōngxi.

45. yán N: salt

46. hújiāomiàn N: (ground) pepper

47. yóu N: oil, sauce

47.1 cài yóu N: vegetable oil

47.2 jiàng yóu N: soya sauce

48. wèir N: taste, flavor, odor

49. wén V: smell

49.1 hǎowén SV: be good to smell

49.2 wénjian RV: smelled

a. Nǐ wénjian le ma?

b. Nǐ wénwen, zhèi wūzili shénme wèir?

50. xiāng SV: be fragrant, smell good

50.1 xiāngwèir, N: good smell, aroma

50.2 xiāngshuǐ, xiāngshuǐ N: perfume

a. Zhèige wūzili zěnme zěnme xiāng a?

51. chǎo V: sauté, fry
 51.1 chǎo cài VO: to prepare a fried dish
 51.2 chǎocài N: a fried dish
 51.3 chǎo fàn VO: to fry rice
 51.4 chǎofàn N: fried rice
- a. Děng wǒ chǎowán zhèige cài, wǒmen jiù chīfàn.
52. báicài N: cabbage (M: -kē, for trees and some vegetables)
53. yǒuyidiǎnr A: a little bit
- a. Zhèige fànguǎnrde cài, yǒuyidiǎnr tài guì.
54. tián SV: be sweet
- a. Tā bùxǐhuan chī tián dōngxi.
55. duōbànr, duōbàn A: most likely, most of, the majority
- a. Wǒde qián duōbànr dōu shì tā gěi wǒde.
56. Guǎngdōng PW: Kwangtung (province)
 56.1 Guǎngdōng rén N: Cantonese (people)
 56.2 Guǎngdōng huà N: Cantonese (dialect)
57. hǎoxiàng V/A: resemble/a good deal like, just as though, it seems that
- 57.1 hǎoxiàng...
 de yàngzi resemble, appearance of...
 57.2 hǎoxiàng...shìde resemble
- a. Tā hǎoxiàng bingle shìde.
 b. Tā hǎoxiàng búdá ài shuōhuà.
 c. Nèige rén hǎoxiàng yǒubinglede yàngzi.
58. jī N: chicken (M. -zhī)
 58.1 jīdàn N: (chicken) egg (M. -dá, dozen)
 58.2 jīdàntāng N: egg drop soup
 58.3 chǎojīdàn N: scrambled egg
 58.4 chǎo jīdàn VO: scramble an egg
59. zhá V: fry in deep fat
 59.1 zháyú N: fried fish
 59.2 zhá yú VO: fry fish
 59.3 zhájī N: fried chicken
 59.4 zhá jī VO: fry chicken
- a. Zháde dōngxi dōu bùróngyi zuò.
60. màn mānr (de) A: slowly
- a. Bùmáng, nín màn mānr xiě ba.

1.5 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

- 1.51 If you didn't go to New York, then you must have gone to Washington.
- 1.52 Because I didn't pay him anything, he wouldn't do it for me.
- 1.53 This seems rather expensive, but it is imported (has come) from abroad.
- 1.54 If he is going, then I don't need to.
- 1.55 I'll be there, although I may be late.
- 1.56 It seems that he studied hard, but just couldn't make it. (Couldn't learn well.)
- 1.57 If I had had the money, I would have bought it.
- 1.58 If it isn't that his car is out of order, then it is that he has to go to New York.
- 1.59 I am not going to buy it even if it is inexpensive.
- 1.60 It is just because he isn't rich that I want to be friends with him.

2. Xiàng and hǎoxiàng are similar in meaning but differ somewhat in use.

2.1 We find three possible situations in the use of xiàng:

2.11 It may be used as a stative verb:

Tāmen liǎngge ren hěn xiàng.

2.12 It may function as a verb:

Tā hěn xiàng ta mǔqin.

2.13 It may serve as an auxiliary verb:

Tā xiàng xǐ yīshang shide.

2.2 There are two possible situations for hǎoxiàng:

2.21 It can be treated as a functive verb:

Tā hǎoxiàng Fàguo ren.

2.22 It can also be treated as a movable adverb:

Tā hǎoxiàng shuǐjiào ne.
Hǎoxiàng tā shuǐjiào ne.

Unlike xiàng, hǎoxiàng cannot be preceded by hěn, nor can it function as a stative verb.

2.3 Note that both xiàng and hǎoxiàng may take "shide" or "de yàngzi" at the end of the sentence without changing the meaning:

2.31 Tā hěn xiàng ta mǔqin (shide).

2.32 Tā hǎoxiàng shuǐjiào (de yàngzi).

2.4 Exercise: Translate the following sentences:

- 2.41 It seems as though I knew him.
- 2.42 It looks as though it might be hot today.
- 2.43 The door seems to be closed.
- 2.44 Those two students certainly look alike.
- 2.45 Those two boys both look very much like their father.
- 2.46 He looks like a school teacher.
- 2.47 I told him I was an American, but he said I didn't look like one.
- 2.48 He seems to be unwilling to go, but I think he will go if you ask him to.
- 2.49 This dish tastes like Chinese food. Don't you think?
- 2.50 He seems to be quite rich, but I don't believe he can afford this.

3. Reduplicated Stative Verbs: A stative verb may have three functions: to modify a noun, to stand as the predicate of a sentence, and (in some cases) to modify a verb (adverbial function). Reduplicated SV have the same three possible functions, but they more commonly appear as adverbs. In Peking Mandarin, the last syllable of a reduplicated SV acquires the high level tone, and a final er or r is frequently added. So far as meaning is concerned, the reduplication has little effect other than to add a degree of stress.

kuàikuàirde zǒu	(walk quickly)
hǎohǎorde zuò	(do it nicely)
zǎozǎorde lái	(come early)
mànmǎnrde chī	(eat slowly)

- 3.1 When a two-syllable SV is reduplicated, the pattern AB becomes AABB, but the final syllable does not necessarily change to a high level tone and a final er or r is seldom added:

súisuibianbiànde shuō	(talk freely)
gāogaoxingxìngde hē dianr jiǔ	(drink merrily)
kèkèqiqīde gēn wo shuō	(speak to me politely)
shūshufūfūde zuò yihuīr	(sit down for a little while comfortably)
qīngqingchūchūde gào song ta 1e	(told him clearly)

- 3.2 Exercise: Translate into Chinese, using reduplicated SV as adverbs where appropriate:

- 3.21 When we get there let's have a meal in comfort.
- 3.22 If you talk with him politely, I think he'll be very glad to listen.
- 3.23 You'd better write him a good clear letter telling him all about it.
- 3.24 I only hope he will finish his work and come back early.
- 3.25 He just took a walk very casually.

4. Reduplicated Functive Verbs: Most functive verbs may be reduplicated like kānkān and wánwánr, but care should be taken with two-syllable functive verbs. The pattern AB becomes ABAB (in contrast to the AABB of SV). The stress is generally on the first syllable. E.G.:

shōushishōushi xiūxixiūxi jièshaojièshao

If however the two-syllable word is a verb-object compound rather than a verb, only the verb part is reduplicated (not the object). E.G.:

xiéxie zì kànkàn bào tántan huà

4.1 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

4.11 You have walked so long. You must sit down and rest for a while.

4.12 Come, let me introduce you two to each other.

4.13 After I get home, all I can do is to have a little rest and read the papers.

4.14 I want to take a little walk. Do you want to go with me?

4.15 This room is filthy. I have to clean it up a bit.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

- A. Zhèige jīde wèir hěn xiāng.
B. Suíran hǎowén, kěshi bù yídìng hǎochī.
- A. Shénme shíhou you jīhui, wǒmen tán yítán, hǎo buhǎo.
B. Hǎojīle. Míngtiān xiàwǔ zěnmeyàng?
- A. Nǐ chángchang zhèige yú zěnmeyàng?
B. Hǎoxiàng yǒuyidiǎnr tāi tián le.
- A. Nín yào hújiāomiàn'r buyào?
B. Hǎo. Wǒ yào yidiǎnr. Yě yào yidiǎnr yán. Xièxie nín.
- A. Nín duōbàn'r bùxǐhuan chī chǎojiǎn ba?
B. Xǐhuan. Wǒ shénme dou xǐhuan chī.
- A. Nǐ zěnmé le?
B. Wǒ yǒuyidiǎnr bushūfu.
- A. Wǒ xǐng Lǐ, jiào Dénián.
B. Ò, Lǐ Xiānsheng, jiǔyǎng jiǔyǎng.
- A. Nín de huà huà de zhēn hǎo.
B. Guōjiǎng, guōjiǎng.
- A. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín lǐbailiù chī wǎnfàn.
B. Nín bié kèqi, lǐbailiù wǒ duōbàn'r méi gōngfu.
- A. Nín zài chī yidiǎnr fàn.
B. Wǒ chībǎole. Nín mǎnmǎnr chī ba.

V. Wèntí

- Zhào Xs. wèi shénme dao Sī Xs. wūzili qu? Tā gen Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
- Sī Xs. dào le kètīng yǐhòu, Zhào Tt. gēn ta shuō shénme?
- Zhào Tt. wèi shénme gěi Sī Xs. yùbei dāozǐ chāzi?
- Sī Xs. wèi shénme búyòng dāozǐ chāzi?
- Sī Xs. zài shénme dìfang xuéde yòng kuàizi?
- Sī Xs. de Zhōngguó huà shì zài shénme dìfang xuéde? Xuéle duōshao shíhou?
- Zhào Tt. juéde Sī Xs. de Zhōngguó huà zěnmeyàng?

8. Sī Xs. tīng Zhào Tt. shuō tāde Zhōngguo huà shuōde hǎo, tā shuō shénme?
9. Zhào Tt. zuò fàn zuòde zěnmeyàng? Gòu xián búgòu?
10. Yàoshi cài búgòu xián, nǐ zěnmeyàng?
11. Sī Xs. shuō Zhào Tt.de cài zuòde zěnmeyàng?
12. Sī Xs. zài Měiguó de shíhou, dao Zhōngguo fànguǎnr qùguo méiyóu?
13. Sī Xs. shuō Měiguóde Zhōngguo fànguǎnr duōbànr shi shénme dìfangde rén kāide? Càide wèir zěnmeyàng?
14. Měiguóde Zhōngguo fànguǎnr nǐ qùguo méiyóu? Chīguo shénme cài?
15. Zhào Tt. shuōle yiju huà, Sī Xs. méitīngqīngchū, tā shuō shénme?
16. Sī Xs. wèi shénme yào wèn nèige jī shì zěnmeyàng?
17. Sī Xs. chībǎole yǐhòu, tā gēn Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. shuō shénme?
18. Sī Xs. chīwánle fàn, Zhào Tt. qǐng ta dào shénme dìfang zuò?
19. Nǐ zài Guǎngdōng fànguǎnr chīguo Zhōngguo fàn méiyóu? Fànde wèir zěnmeyàng?
20. Nǐ huì zuò shénme cài?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Fàn zuòhǎole, nǐ yào qǐng nǐde péngyou dao fàntīng chīfàn, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi yǒurén shuō nǐde Zhōngguo huà shuōde hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Yàoshi nǐ tīngjian yige Měiguó rén shuō Zhōngguo huà shuōde hěn hǎo; nǐ wèn ta shénme?
4. Yǒurén qǐng ni chīfàn, nǐ xiǎng shuō nèige cài hěn hǎo, nǐ zěnmeyàng?
5. Yàoshi yǒurén gēn nǐ shuō huà, nǐ méitīngjiàn, nǐ shuō shénme?
6. Nǐ gēn nǐde péngyou zai yikuàir chīfàn, nǐ chīwánle, kěshi nǐde péngyou hái méichīwán ne, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénme?

VII. Bèishū

A: Lái, lái, wǒ géi nimen jièshao jièshao. Zhèiwei shi Lǐ Xs., zhèiwei shi Lù Xs.

Lǐ and Lù: Jiǔyǎng jiǔyǎng.

Lǐ: Wǒ jiào Dénián. Dé shi Déguode Dé, Nián shi xīnniánde Nián. Nín zai Zhōngguo zhùle duōshao shíhou le?

Lù: Bànniánduō le.

Lǐ: Nín de Zhōngguó huà shuō de zhēn hǎo.

Lù: Guòjiǎng guòjiǎng. Nín zài shénme dìfang zuòshì?

Lǐ: Wǒ zài Xīn-guó xuéxiào jiāo shū.

Lū: Ò! Xīn-guó xuéxiào. Nèr yǒu yìwèi Zhāng Xs., nín rènshi bú rènshi?

Lǐ: Rènshi. Zhāng Xs., rén hěn hǎo.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 I must go there, although the weather is not good.
- 1.2 That trolley ticket is less than a dollar and a half.
- 1.3 This is a big opportunity.
- 1.4 You taste it and tell me whether I put enough pepper in it.
- 1.5 Have you ever tasted this fried chicken?
- 1.6 Smell it, it is very fragrant.
- 1.7 Have you smelled it? It certainly smells good.
- 1.8 It sounds good.
- 1.9 This cabbage is a little too salty.
- 1.10 Most of the Chinese in the United States are Cantonese.
- 1.11 Most likely he doesn't know.
- 1.12 It seems that the flavor is very good.
- 1.13 This sounds a good deal like Japanese.
- 1.14 That dish tastes a good deal like fried eggs.
- 1.15 Let's walk slowly.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (39) a. Although he studied some Chinese, still he cannot read the newspapers.
- (40) A: Your singing is wonderful.
B: You flatter me.
- (41) a. He bought his pen for less than two dollars.
- (43) a. That dish is delicious. Did you taste it?
- (44) a. I don't care much for salty things.
- (49) a. Did you smell it?
b. Take a smell, what's the odor in this room?
- (50) a. Why is it that this room is so fragrant?
- (51) a. Wait until I finish preparing this dish, then we'll eat.
- (53) a. The food in this restaurant is rather expensive.
- (54) a. He doesn't like to eat sweet things.
- (55) a. He gave me most of my money.

- (57) a. It seems as though he were sick.
b. It seems that he doesn't like to talk.
c. That man looks like he is sick.

(59) a. All fried food is difficult to cook.

(60) a. No hurry. Write it slowly.

DISIKE - TÁN TIĀNQI

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. zǎoshang qīlai, zai yuànzili sànbù. Zhào Xs. ye chūlaile.

Sī: Nín zǎo a!

Zhào: Zǎo. Nín kàn, jīntiande tiānqi duōme hǎo a!

Sī: Kě bushì ma! Yòu liángkuai yòu shūfu. Zhèirde tiānqi zǒngshi zènme hǎo ma?

Zhào: Bùyídìng. Děi kàn shi shénme shíhou. Chūntian gen dōngtian búcuò; xiàtian tài rè, qiūtian búshi xià yǔ, jiùshi yīn tiān, yàoburán jiù guā fēng.

Sī: Dōngtian zhèir ye xià xuě ma?

Zhào: Zhèir dōngtian yǒu shíhou xià xuě, kěshi xiàde búdá. Běifāng tiānqi lěng, xuě xiàdàle de shíhou, nǎr dōu shi báide, zhēn hǎokàn.

Sī: Wǒ tīngshuō Běipíng cháng guā fēng, zhì zhēnde ma?

Zhào: Shì zhēnde. Běipíngde fēng hěn dà, tǔ ye hěn duō. Běipíng shénme dōu hǎo, jiùshi zhèiyàng, wǒ bùxǐhuan.

Sī: Rén dōu shuō Běipíng de fēngjǐng hěn hǎo, wǒ zhēn xiǎng qu kànkàn.

Zhào: Běipíng zhèige chéng, gēn biéde chéng bùyíyàng. Yǒu hěn duō yǒuyìside dìfang. Yě yǒu hěn duō hǎochīde dōngxī. Kěshi yàooshi shuō fēngjǐng, háishi nánfāngde hǎo. Nánfāng yòu yǒu shān, yòu yǒu shuǐ, yòu yǒu shù. Tèbié shi chūntian, tiānqi nuǎnhuo, huār kāile de shíhou, yǒu hóngde, yǒu huángde. Zhèixie yánshe gēn lǚde yèzi, lǚde cǎo zai yīkuàir, zhēnshi hǎokànjíle. Yóuqíshi qīngtiānde shíhou, tiān shi lánde, yúncai shi báide, shuǐ shi lǚde. Rén hǎoxiàng zai huàrlì shíde. Zai wénwen huārde xiāng wèir, tīngting niǎor jiào, xīnli zhēnshi tòngkuaijíle.

Sī: Nà duōme hǎo a! Zhèir ye cháng xià wù ma?

Zhào: Shànghǎi xià wù de shíhou bútai duō. Chóngqìng cháng xià wù. Yǒuyidiǎnr xiàng Lúndūn. Zǎofàn dàgài kuài hǎole. Wǒmen qu chī zǎofàn ba.

Sī: Hǎo! Nín qǐng.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

61. yuànzi	N: yard
61.1 qiányuàn(r)	N: frontyard
61.2 hòuyuàn(r)	N: backyard
61.3 dōngyuàn(r)	N: east yard

62. sànbù VO: take a stroll, take a walk

a. Wǒ měitiān chīwán wǎnfàn, dōu zài wàitou sànsànbù.

63. kě búshì ma! IE: isn't that the truth! sure enough!
 A: Měiguode dōngxi, xiànzài dōu guìle.
 B: Kě búshì ma!
64. liángkuai SV: be cool (comfortably cold)
 a. Wūzili bǐ yuànzili liángkuaiduōle.
65. zǒng(shi) A: always
 a. Zhēn qíguài, zhèige zì, tā zǒng búhuì xiě.
66. chūnxiàqiūdōng N: spring, summer, fall and winter
 66.1 chūntian TW: spring
 66.2 xiàtian TW: summer
 66.3 qiūtian TW: fall
 66.4 dōngtian TW: winter
67. yǔ N: rain
 67.1 xià yǔ VO: rain (falls)
 a. Yǔ xiàde dà budà?
68. yīn tiān N/VO: cloudy day
 a. Yīn tiān de shíhou wǒ zǒng búde shūfu.
69. xuě N: snow
 69.1 xià xuě VO: snow (falls)
 a. Jīnniande xuě xiàde tài duōle.
70. -fāng BF: direction, a region
 70.1 nánfāng N: the South
 70.2 běifāng N: the North
 70.3 nánfāng rén N: Southerner
 70.4 běifāng rén N: Northerner
71. fēng N: wind
 71.1 guā fēng VO: wind blows
 a. Xiàwánle xuě yòu guā fēng, lěngjile.
72. tǔ N: dust, earth
73. fēngjǐng N: scenery, view
74. shù N: tree, (M. kē)
75. nuǎnhuo SV: be warm (comfortably warm)
 a. Zhèige fángzi hǎojile, dōngtiān nuǎnhuo, xiàtiān liángkuai.
76. huār N: flower (M. -duǒ)
 a. Tiānqi yīnuǎnhuo, huār jiu dōu kāile.
77. yánshe, yánsè N: color

78. yèzi N: leaf
 78.1 shùyèzi N: tree leaf
 78.2 chàyè N: tea leaf
79. cǎo N: grass, straw
 79.1 cǎodì N: lawn
 79.2 cǎomaor N: straw hat
80. yóuqí(shì) A: especially, above all
 a. Nèige rén zhēn yǒuyìsi, yóuqíshì shuōhuàde shíhou, jiǎnzhíde yǒuyìsijǐle.
81. qíng tiān N/VO: clear sky, day or weather
 a. Xiànzài tiān qíngle.
82. yúncai N: cloud (M. -kuài)
83. niǎor N: bird (M. -zhī)
 83.1 niǎor jiào singing of birds
84. wù N: fog
 84.1 xià wù VO: become foggy
 a. Xià wù de shíhou kāi qìchē, zhēn děi xiǎoxin.
85. Nín qǐng IE: please go ahead, after you

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Time Expressions may be classified into two general groups: time-when group, denoting when the action happened or will happen, and time-spent group, indicating the length of time of the action.

1.1 Time-when group of time expressions all serve as movable adverbs which precede the main verb. It consists of three kinds:

- 1.11 A time word or a combination of them such as jīntian, jīntian wǎnshang and jīntian wǎnshang bādiān zhōng:

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ míngtian xiàwǔ cái néng huílai ne.

Note when such time words are used as nouns, they may either precede or follow the verb which is limited to a very few verbs used in the equational sense, such as shì and jiào:

Míngtian shì lǐbaiwǔ.
 Zhèige yuè jiào liùyuè.

- 1.12 Time clauses ending with yǐqián, yǐhòu, de shíhou, etc.:

Chīfàn yǐqián bié niànshū.
 Wǒ xiǎode shíhou xǐhuan wánr.

- 1.13 A Nu-M-(N) preceded by a specifier:

Tā měi sānge yuè qù yíci.

1.2 Time-spent group of time expressions generally follows the Nu-M-(N) pattern such as:

sānge zhōngtóu,
liùnián, etc.

However, in this group, there are certain expressions which denote an indefinite amount of time, such as:

bùjiǔ,
hěn jiǔ,
hěn duōde shíhou,
hěn dàde gōngfu, etc.

1.21 The time-spent expression generally follows the main verb and precedes the object if there is one:

Tā zài zhèr zhànle bàntiān le.
Tā yào niàn sānnián shū.

1.22 In certain cases, it may precede the main verb. It will be explained more in detail in Lesson VI.

1.3 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

1.31 Three days ago, I didn't know whether he would come or not.

1.32 When it rains, it is a little cold here.

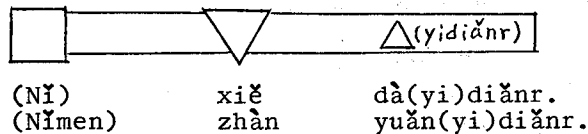
1.33 It has been foggy here for a week already.

1.34 This tree has been in blossom for quite a while.

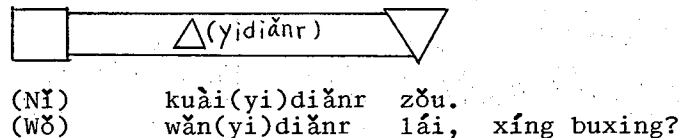
1.35 I usually take a walk before breakfast.

2. THE POSITION OF SV-YIDIǎNR - This phrase may function either as an adverbial modifier of the verb, or as a predicate complement. In the first case it precedes the verb; in the second it follows it. Some SV followed by yidiǎnr may take either position.

2.1 PREDICATE COMPLEMENT



2.2 ADVERBIAL POSITION



2.3 BOTH POSITIONS PERMISSIBLE: kuài, màn, zǎo, wǎn (plus yidiǎnr)

2.4 Exercise: Translate the following:

- 2.41 Will you please come a little earlier tomorrow?
- 2.42 May we eat a little later today?
- 2.43 It's getting late; let's go faster.
- 2.44 When you write, write a little slower and make it clearer.
- 2.45 Please speak a little more slowly.

3. If not....then....otherwise....

The pattern in Chinese is:
Búshì....jiùshì....yàoburán....

3.1 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

- 3.11 The weather was very bad these several days.
If it didn't rain, (then) it snowed, otherwise, the wind was very bad.
- 3.12 None of these tables will do. If they aren't too high, (then) they are too long, otherwise they are too expensive.
- 3.13 He didn't buy a thing. It was either that he didn't like the color, or else that he didn't care for the style, otherwise, he said that the article was too expensive.
- 3.14 How did people know that spring is here? If they didn't notice that the weather was getting warmer, (then) they must have heard the singing of the birds, otherwise, they must have seen those blossomed trees.
- 3.15 When I get a letter from my son, if he doesn't ask for money, (then) he wants to use the car, otherwise, he would say that he cannot come back this weekend.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

- 1. A. Jīntian tiānqi zěnmeyàng?
B. Yīntiān, kěshì hěn liángkuai.
- 2. A. Zhèige dìfang qiūtiān cháng xià yǔ ma?
B. Bùcháng xià yǔ, kěshì cháng guā fēng.
- 3. A. Nǐ měitiān zài yuànzili sànbù ma?
B. Wǒ zài jiēshang sànbù.
- 4. A. Zhèige dìfang hěn nuǎnhuo.
B. Kě búshì ma!
- 5. A. Nèige huār shì shénme yánshe?
B. Wǒ xiǎng shì hóngde.
- 6. A. Xiànzài yòu shì qiūtiān le.
B. Shéi shuō búshì ne. Shùyèzi dou huángle.
- 7. A. Yòu xià xuě le.
B. Xià xuě de shíhou, fēngjǐng hěn hǎo.
- 8. A. Zhèige niǎor jiàode hěn hǎotīng.
B. Kěshì yánshe bǔtài hǎokàn.

9. A. Jīntian shì qíngtian ma?
B. Yídiǎnr yúncái dou méiyóu.
10. A. Zhèige dìfang wèi shénme zǒng xià wù?
B. Yīnwei lí hǎi tài jìn.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. zǎoshang qǐlai, zuò shénme?
2. Nèitiande tiānqi zěnmeyàng?
3. Nèige dìfangde tiānqi zǒngshì nème hǎo ma?
Chūntian zěnmeyàng? Xiàtian ne? Qiūtian gen dōngtian ne?
4. Zhōngguode běifang, dōngtian xià xuě ma? Xià xuě de shíhou hǎokàn ma?
5. Běipíng cháng guā fēng ma? Guā fēng de shíhou zěnmè bùhǎo?
6. Běipíngde fēngjǐng zěnmeyàng?
7. Běipíng gēn biéde chéng zěnmè bùyíyàng?
8. Nánfangde fēngjǐng zěnmè hǎo? Huār dou shì shénme yánshe? Yèzi shì shénme yánshe?
9. Qíngtiande shíhou, tiān shì shénme yánshe? Yúncái gen shuǐ ne?
10. Shànghǎi xià wù búxià? Shénme dìfang cháng xià wù?
11. Zhèige dìfang chūntiande tiānqi zěnmeyàng? Xiàtian zěnmeyàng?
Qiūtian gen dōngtian ne?
12. Zhèige dìfang shénme shíhou cháng xià yǔ?
13. Zhèige dìfang yǒu shíhou xià xuě ma?
14. Zài zhè cháng guā fēng ma?
15. Zhèige dìfang qiūtian, shì qíngtiande shíhou duō háishi yīntiande shíhou duō?
16. Nǐ juéde shénme dìfangde fēngjǐng zuì hǎo? Zěnmè hǎo?
17. Nǐ xǐhuan chūntian ma? Wèi shénme?
18. Nǐ juéde shénme yánshe zuì hǎokàn? Shénme yánshe gen shénme yánshe zài yíkuàir zuì hǎokàn?
19. Zhèige dìfang chūntiande huār dōu shì shénme yánshe?
20. Nǐ shì nǎrde rén? Nǐmen nèige dìfangde tiānqi zěnmeyàng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn nǐ Měiguode tiānqi zěnmeyàng, nǐ shuō shénme?
Nǐ wèn ta shénme?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng wèn, yige dìfangde tiānqi zěnmeyàng, nǐ zěnmè wèn?
3. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō Niūyuēde tiānqi búdà hǎo, nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng?
Nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
4. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn nǐ chūnxiàqiūdōng, shénme shíhou zuì hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?
Yàoshi nǐ wèn, nǐ zěnmè wèn?
5. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng wèn yige dìfangde fēngjǐng, nǐ zěnmè wèn?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 There are some beautiful birds in his backyard.
- 1.2 I take a walk along the bank of the river everyday.
- 1.3 It is always very cloudy in the fall here.
- 1.4 We have a lot of rain in the spring.
- 1.5 Don't you think it is a pretty flower? It certainly is.
- 1.6 What is the color of the grass? It is green.
- 1.7 We had a snow storm last night here.
- 1.8 I never feel good when it is foggy.
- 1.9 She is very talkative, especially when she has been drinking.
- 1.10 The leaves on this tree are very pretty, especially in the fall.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (62) a. I take a walk after supper every day.
- (63) A. Everything in America is high now.
B. Isn't that the truth.
- (64) a. It is much cooler inside than out in the yard.
- (65) a. It's really strange. He can never write this word.
- (67) a. Is it raining hard?
- (68) a. I never feel good when it is cloudy.
- (69) a. We have had much snow this year.
- (71) a. The wind blew after the snow and it was terribly cold.
- (76) a. As soon as the weather gets warm, the flowers bloom.
- (80) a. That person is very interesting, especially when he is talking.
- (81) a. Now the sky is clear.
- (84) a. One has to be very careful when he drives on a foggy day.

DIWŪKE - SUÍBIÀN TÁNTAN

I. Duihuà

Sī Xs. gēn Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. chīwánle zǎofàn, zai kètīngli zuòzhe, chōu yān de chōu yān, hē chá de hē chá. Tāmen yìbiānr hē chá yìbiānr tán huà.

Sī: Zhào Tt., nín fūshang shi shénme dìfang?

Zhào Tt: Wǒ shēngzai Tiānjing, kěshi wǒ shì zai Běipíng zhǎngdàle de.

Sī: Nín jiāli dōu yǒu shénme rén?

Zhào Tt: Wǒ yǒu fùqin, mǔqin, yíge gēge, yíge dìdi, hái yǒu yíge xiǎo mèimei.

Sī: Nínde gēge dìdi dōu jiéhūn le ma?

Zhào Tt: Gēge jiéhūn le. Dìdi suìshu hái xiǎo, hái méi ne. Xiànzài gēge tāmen gēn fùmǔ zai Tiānjing zhù, dìdi mèimei zai Běipíng shàngxué.

Sī: Zīān, nín shi shénme dìfang rén?

Zhào Xs: Wǒ lǎojiā zai Shāndong. Wǒde fùmǔ xiànzài hái zai nèr zhù.

Sī: Nín shi Shāndōngshěng nǐ yíxiàn?

Zhào Xs: Yāntai. Nín tīngshuōguo ba?

Sī: Dāngrán dāngrán! Nà shi yǒumíngde dìfang. Tīngshuō nèr you yìzhǒng píngguǒ, yǒu xiāngjiāo wèir. Shi zhēnde ma?

Zhào Xs: Kě búshì ma! Jiào xiāngjiāo-píngguǒ, zhēn hǎo.

Sī: Nínde dàxué shi zài shénme dìfang shàngde?

Zhào Xs: Wǒ shi Běijīng Dàxué bìyè de.

Sī: Nín shi nǎinián bìde yè?

Zhào Xs: Yījiūsānlíng. Bìle yè, zuòle liǎngnián shì, jiu dao Měiguó qule. Wǒmen yíkuàir zai Yēlǔ Dàxué de shíhou, nà shi yījiūsānji? Nín dēng wǒ xiāngxiang.

Sī: Shì yījiūsānsānniánde qiūtian, duì buduì? Wǒ jìde wǒmen pèngjiānde dièrtian, wǒmen yíkuàir kāi qìchē chūqu kàn hóngyè. Nín xiāngxiang, duì buduì?

Zhào Xs: Yìdiǎnr ye búcuò. Wǒ jìde wǒ gāng dào Yēlǔ Dàxué méi jitiān, jiu pèngjian nín le. Hǎoxiàng shì zài yíge Zhōngguó fànguǎnrli pèngjiānde, shì bushi? Dào xiànzài yǐjīng chàbuduō èrshiduníán le. Rìzi guòde zhēn kuài.

Sī: Nín zai Yēlǔ de shíhou shi yánjiu shèhuìxué, shì bushi?

Zhào Xs: Duìle.

- Sī: (Duì Zhào Tt.) Zīān zai Yēlǚ Dàxué de shíhou, hěn yònggōng, gōngke hǎojíle. Péngyoumen dōu shuō tade xuéwen hǎo.
- Zhào Xs: Nín bié kèqile. Shuō zhēnde, nín dāsuan zai Shànghǎi zhù duōshao rìzi?
- Sī: Hái bù yìdìng. Wǒ xiǎng búhuì tài cháng.
- Zhào Xs: Yǐhòu cháng zhùzai nǎr ne?
- Sī: Yě hái méiyìdìng. Děi děng Měiguó lái xīn zài shuō.
- Zhào Xs: Wǒ xīwang nín neng zai zhèr duō zhù xiē rìzi.
- Sī: Wǒ ye yuànyì duō zhù jìtiān. Kěshi shéi zhīdào ne!
- Zhào Xs: Zai chōu yìzhī yān ba.
- Sī: Hǎo.
- Zhào Tt: Yánghuǒ zai zhèr ne. Wǒ gěi nín diǎn ba.
- Sī: Wǒ lái, wǒ zìjǐ lái.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

86. yān N: tobacco, cigarette (M: -zhī, stick; -gēn, stick; -hé(r), box; -bāo, pack; tiáo(r), carton); smoke
- 86.1 chōu yān VO: smoke
- a. Nín chōu yān buchōu?
87. yìbiānr...yìbiānr... A: on one side...on the other, on one hand...on the other
- a. Tā yìbiānr chī fàn, yìbiānr kàn bào.
b. Nèige fángzi yìbiānr shì fànguǎnr, yìbiānr shì xuéxiào.
88. fūshang IE: home, residence, family (courteous reference to other people's)
- a. Wǒ míngtiān dao nín fūshang qu kàn nín, hǎo buhǎo?
b. Bùgǎndāng. Yǒu gōngfu qǐng dao wǒmen jiā lai wǎnr.
c. A. Nín fūshang zài shénme dìfang?
B. Wǒde jiā zài Shāndong. (or) Wǒ jiu zhùzai xuéxiào qiántou.
d. A. Fūshang dou hǎo?
B. Dōu hǎo, xièxie nín.
89. shēng V: give birth to; be born
- a. Tā mǔqin zuótiān shēngle yige xiǎoháir.
b. Tā shì něinián shēngde?
90. zhǎng V: grow, rise in price
- a. Nèiwei xiǎojie zhǎngde zhēn hǎokàn.
b. Nèige háizi zhèi liangnián zhǎnggāole.
c. Xiànzài chīde dōngxī yòu dōu zhǎngle.

91. jiéhūn VO: marry
 91.1 gēn...jiéhūn get married to
 a. Zhāng Xs. gēn Lǐ Xj. shénme shíhou jiéde hūn?
 b. Tāmen yǐjing jiéhūn sānnián le.
92. shěng N: province
 M: province
 92.1 Shāndōngshěng Shantung province
 a. Nǐ shì nǚshěng rén?
93. xiàn M/N: hsien, county
94. -zhǒng M: kind of, sort of, race
 94.1 zhèizhǒng rén this kind of person
 94.2 huángzhǒngrén yellow race
95. píngguǒ N: apple
96. xiāngjiāo N: banana
97. dàxué N: College, University
 97.1 Yēlǚ Dàxué Yale University
 97.2 Běijīng Dàxué National Peking University
 97.3 shàng dàxué go to college
 97.4 niàn dàxué study in college
 97.5 dàxué yīniánjí freshman
98. bìyè VO: graduate
 a. Tā yǐjing bìyè hǎojinián le.
99. hóngyè N: red leaf
100. pèng V: bump into, run into
 RV: meet by accident
 100.1 pèngjian
 RV: run into
 100.2 pèngshang
 RV: bump into and break
 100.3 pènghuài
 a. Nǐ míngtian pèngdejiàn ta ma?
 b. Liǎngge qìchē pèngshangle.
101. yánjiū V: study, make special investigation or study of
 101.1 yōuyánjiū SV/VO: have specialized knowledge
 101.2 duì...yōuyánjiū have specialized knowledge in...
 a. Zhèijian shìqing wǒ dei hǎohāorde yánjiū yánjiū.
 b. Tā duì Yīngwén hěn yōuyánjiū.
102. shèhuìxué N: sociology
 102.1 shèhuì N: society
103. yònggōng VO: put time and effort into
 SV: work or study hard
 a. Yōude cōngming rén búài yònggōng.

104. gōngkè N: field of learning, course, lessons,
 school work (M: -mén, course)
- a. Nǐ niàn jímén gōngkè?
b. Nǐde gōngkè máng bumáng?
105. xuéwen N: learning, knowledge
105.1 yǒuxuéwen SV: learned
- a. Nèige rén hěn yǒuxuéwen.
106. huì AV: may, would
- a. Tā búhuì bulái ba.
107. láixìn VO: send a letter (here)
107.1 qùxìn VO: send a letter (there)
- a. Jiāli láixìn le méiyǒu?
b. Dào le gei wǒ láixìn!
108. zài shuō A-V: see about it, talk further,
 consider it further
 A: furthermore, moreover
- a. Děng tā lái le zài shuō.
b. Zhèige màozi tài guì, zàishuō yě bùhǎokàn, búyòng mǎile.
109. huǒ N: fire, stove
109.1 yánghuǒ N: matches (M: -gēn for stick; -hé(r) for box;
 bāo for package) -- lit. foreign fire
110. diǎn V: light, ignite, apply a match to
110.1 diǎn yánghuǒ VO: light a match
110.2 diǎn yān VO: light a cigarette
110.3 diǎn huǒ VO: light a fire
110.4 diǎnzhāole RC: lighted
- a. Lǎojià bǎ huǒ diǎnzhāo.
b. Wǒ zìjǐ diǎn ba.
111. wǒ lái IE: let me do it
111.1 wǒ zìjǐ lái IE: let me do it myself

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. VOde VO, VOde VO:

This is one of those expressions which cannot be translated literally. It gives the idea that some are doing this and some are doing that--everybody is engaged in some activity. For instance:

Wǒ jìnqù yíkàn, wūzilide rén chōu yān de chōu yān, hē jiǔ de hē jiǔ.
(As soon as I went in, I saw some people in the room were smoking
and some were drinking.)

1.1 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

1.11 They all have a lot of money. Some of them bought houses and some bought new cars.

1.12 As soon as the teacher leaves the room, some of the students will start chatting, some will go to sleep--none of them will study.

1.13 The children are all grown up now. Some of them got married and some graduated from college.

2. Duō as an Indefinite Number:

The position of duō as an indefinite number is determined by whether it refers to a fractional amount above the definite number or to a whole number within the bracket set by the round number -- shí, bǎi, qiān, wàn, etc.

2.1 Duō always follows the measure when it refers to an indefinite fractional amount above the definite number:

sāngeduō yuè (more than three but less than four months)
shígeduō lǐbài (more than ten but less than eleven weeks)
èrshiwǔkuaiduō qián (more than \$25 but less than \$26)
shíyīdiǎnduō zhōng (past 11:00 but not yet 12:00)
shíwǔniánduō (more than 15 but less than 16 years)

2.2 When duō refers to an indefinite amount within the bracket set by the round number, it follows the round number and precedes the measure if there is any:

sānshidū (ge) yuè (more than thirty but less than forty months)
èrshidū (ge) lǐbài (more than twenty but less than thirty weeks)
liùqiāndū kuai qián (more than \$6000 but less than \$7000)
sībǎidū nián (more than 400 but less than 500 years)
wǔshidū (ge) zhōngtóu (more than 50 but less than 60 hours)

2.3 Now we can see that èrshikuaiduō qián means more than \$20 but less than \$21 while èrshidū kuai qián means more than \$20 but less than \$30. The former is seldom used simply because, in actual life, an indefinite amount is seldom referred to in such an exact manner, and generally is loosely referred to in the latter way.

2.4 When bàn is used in a mixed number such as 1 1/2, 2 1/2, etc., it is preceded by the measure as well as by the whole number:

liǎngkuai**bàn** (qián)
yígebàn zhōngtóu
sāndiǎnbàn (zhōng)
sìwǎnbàn (fàn)
yìzhāngbàn (zhǐ)

2.5 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

a little more than \$32.00	more than \$100.00
more than twenty cents	a little more than an hour
over three sheets of paper	more than 20,000 people
seventy-odd dollars	\$1.50
two and a half days	11:30 P.M.

3. Adverbial Use of Stative Verbs - Many stative verbs may be used as adverbs; others are not so used at all.

Kuàizi	<u>róngyi</u>	yòng	ma?
Zhōngguo huà zhēn	<u>nán</u>	xué.	
Zhōngguo zì	<u>hǎo</u>	xiě	buhǎo xiě?

- 3.1 The most commonly used stative verbs in the adverbial function are:

hǎo	kuài	duō
gòu	màn	shǎo
róngyi	zǎo	
nán	wǎn	

- 3.2 Exercise I - Make sentences using the above stative verbs as adverbs.

- 3.3 Exercise II - Translate into Chinese:

easy to walk	big enough
difficult to say	eat a little more
walk slowly	take one piece less
come early	not fast enough
go to bed late	give him one dollar less
sleep late	bought one hat too many
eat fast	

4. Unusual Relationship of S-V-O: Spoken Chinese and English have certain common patterns, among them the basic structural order: Actor - Action - Receiver, better known to language students as Subject - Verb - Object (S-V-O). "I hit him" in English becomes "Wǒ dǎ ta" in Chinese. But the normal relationship of Actor - Action - Receiver does not hold in every case. Some of the seemingly V-O combinations do not express the relation of Action - Receiver. Lái and qù are among this group:

Lái yige rén!	(Will somebody please come!)
Lái rén le.	(Some one has come.)
Qùle sānge xuésheng.	(Three students went.)
Qùle liǎngjià fēijī.	(Two planes went.)

The "objects" in position are really subjects in meaning in all the above illustrations.

- 4.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 4.11 He gave a party last Saturday and invited more than twenty people. Only eight showed up.
- 4.12 As soon as he arrived there, he sent me a wire.
- 4.13 He has been gone three months already, but there has been no word from him.
- 4.14 Ten planes came to New York this morning.
- 4.15 I would like to go with you, but some guests just came.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. A: Nín fǔshang shì shénme dìfang?
B: Wǒde jiā zài Měiguó.
2. A: Nín cóngqián zài něige dàxué niànshū?
B: Wǒ shì Yēlǚ Dàxué bìyède.
3. A: Nín yánjiu shénme?
B: Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.
4. A: Nín shì zài Zhōngguó shēngde ma?
B: Búshì. Wǒ shì zài Niūyuē shēngde.
5. A: Nín jiéhūnle méiyóu?
B: Wǒ yǐjīng yǒu liǎngge háizi le.
6. A: Nín zěnme zěnme yònggōng?
B: Xuéxiàode gōngkè tài duō.
7. A: Nínde xuéwen tài hǎole.
B: Guòjiǎng guòjiǎng.
8. A: Chōuyān buchōu?
B: Wǒ gāng chōuwán. Děng yihuǐr zài shuō ba.
9. A: Lǎojià, nín yǒu yánghuǒ méiyóu?
B: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ buchōuyān.
10. A: Dào le gěi wǒmen lái xìn.
B: Yídìng, yídìng.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs., Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. chīwánle fàn zuò shénme?
2. Zhào Tt. shì shénme dìfangde rén? Tā shēngzai shénme dìfang? Shì zai shénme dìfang zhāngdàlede?
3. Zhào Zǐān Xs.de lǎojiā zai shénme dìfang? Tā fùmǔ zhùzai shénme dìfang?
4. Zhào Tt. jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
5. Zhào Tt.de gēge dìdi dōu jiéhūn le méiyóu? Tāmen zai shénme dìfang zhù?
6. Zhào Xs. shì zài shénme dìfang shàngde dàxué? Shì něige xuéxiào bìde yè? Shì něinián bìde yè?
7. Tā bìle yè yǐhòu zuò shénme le?
8. Zhào Xs. gen Sī Xs. shì zài shénme dìfang pèngjiānde? Shì něinián pèngjiānde?
9. Zài tāmen pèngjiānde dièrtian tāmen yíkuàir qu zuò shénme?
10. Zhào Xs. zài dàxué de shíhou yánjiu shénme? Tāde gōngkè zěnmeyàng?
11. Sī Xs. dāsuan zai Shànghǎi zhù duōshao rìzi?

12. Sī Xs. yuànyì zài Shànghǎi duō zhǔ xiē rìzì ma? Wèi shénme hái bù yìdǐng?
13. Nǐ fǔshàng shì shénme dìfāng? Shì nǎi yìshèng? Nǎi yìxiàn?
14. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén? Nǐ jiéhūn le méiyǒu?
15. Nǐ zài shénme dìfāng shàngde dàxué? Shì zài nǎige xuéxiào bìde yè?
16. Nǐ zài dàxué de shíhòu yánjiū shénme? Gōngkè yìdǐng hěn hǎo ba?
17. Nǐ shì zài shénme dìfāng shēngde? Shì nǎinián shēngde?
18. Nǐ chōu yān bùchōu? Yìtiān chōu duōshǎo? Nǐ xǐhuan chōu nǎi yìzhǒng yān?
19. Nǐ zuótian pèngjian shéi le?
20. Nèiwei xiānshēng duì shèhuìxué yǒu yánjiū ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng wèn yìge rén tā shì nǎrde rén, nǐ zěnme wèn?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng wèn yìge rén, tā zài nǎr shàngde dàxué, shì zài nǎige dàxué bìde yè, nǐ zěnme wèn?
3. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng wèn yìge rén tā zài xuéxiào de shíhòu xué shénme, nǐ zěnme wèn?
4. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐde péngyou zài nǐ jiā duō zhǔ jìtiān, nǐ zěnme gen tā shuō?
5. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐde xuéwén hěn hǎo, nǐ gen tā shuō shénme?

VII. Bèishū

A: Qǐngzuò, qǐng suíbiàn zuò.
B: Suíbiàn zuò, suíbiàn zuò.

A: Nín qǐng hē yìdiǎnr jiǔ ba.
B: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ búhuì hē jiǔ.

A: Hē yìdiǎnr.
B: Wǒ zhēn bùnéng hē. Xièxie nín.

A: Bié kèqi. Méi shénme cài. Nín chī yìdiǎnr zhèige zhájī.
B: Zhèige càide wèir zhēn hǎo. Shì zěnme zuòde?

A: Jiùshi yòng yóu zháde. Wǒ zài zhá yìqián fàngle yìdiǎnr jiàngyóu.
B: Ou. Zhēnshì tài hǎochīle.

A: Zài chī yìdiǎnr fàn.
B: Wǒ chībǎole, nín mànmanr chī ba.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 How long have you been smoking?
- 1.2 He is sending a letter and sending a telegram at the same time.
- 1.3 I was born in the United States but was brought up in China.
- 1.4 That girl has been getting prettier these last two years.
- 1.5 The price of everything has gone up again.
- 1.6 He has been married for three years.
- 1.7 When did he graduate from college?
- 1.8 I didn't bump into him.
- 1.9 That bus bumped into this car and damaged it.
- 1.10 What's your major?
- 1.11 He has specialized in sociology.
- 1.12 That student worked very hard.
- 1.13 What courses are you taking (in college)?
- 1.14 He's a learned man.
- 1.15 Write us when you arrive.
- 1.16 We'll see about it tomorrow.
- 1.17 I don't have too much to do there; besides, it's raining. I'd better not go.
- 1.18 He doesn't want to come, further more, I don't want to see him. You'd better not ask him to come.
- 1.19 Will you light a match for me?
- 1.20 The wind is too strong, if you cannot light the match, let me do it.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (86) a. Do you smoke?
- (87) a. He reads while he eats.
b. On one side of that house is a restaurant, and on the other, a school.
- (88) a. May I come (to your house) to see you tomorrow?
b. Delighted! Please come when you have time.
c. A. Where do you live?
B. My home is in Shantung. (or) I live just in front of the school.
d. A. Is your family well?
B. All very well, thank you.
- (89) a. His mother had a baby yesterday.
b. What year was he born?
- (90) a. That girl is very pretty.
b. That child has grown tall these last two years.
c. Food prices have gone up again now.
- (91) a. When were Mr. Zhāng and Miss Lǐ married?
b. They have been married for three years.
- (92) a. Which province are you from?
- (98) a. He already graduated several years ago.
- (100) a. Will you be able to meet him tomorrow?
b. Two cars collided.

- (101) a. I have to study this matter very carefully.
b. He is a specialist in English.
- (103) a. There are some brilliant people who don't like to work hard.
- (104) a. How many courses are you taking?
b. Is your (school) work busy or not?
- (105) a. That man is very learned.
- (106) a. He won't fail to show up, will he?
- (107) a. Have you had any word from home?
b. Write me when you arrive.
- (108) a. We'll see about it when he arrives.
b. This hat is too expensive, moreover, it isn't good looking.
Don't buy it.
- (110) a. Please light the fire.
b. Let me light it myself.

DILIÜKE - JÌ XÌN

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. xiěle liǎngfeng xìn, xiǎng jìchuqu, kěshi burènshi yóuzhèngjú zai nǎr. Yìhuìr Zhào Xs. dao ta wūzili láile. Tā jiu gēn Zhào Xs. dǎting:

Sī: Wǒ gāng xiěle liǎngfeng xìn, yao jìchuqu. Zhèr fùjìn yǒu yóuzhèngjú ma?

Zhào: Yǒu. Lí zhér bùyuǎn. Cóng women jiā chūqu wàng dōng zǒu guò liǎng-tiao jiē, zuǒbianr jiu shì. Nín yao wàng nǎr jì? Shì Měiguó ma?

Sī: Yifēng shì Měiguó, yifēng shì Běipíng.

Zhào: Nín dǎsuan jì píngxìn háishi jì hángkōngxìn ne?

Sī: Wǒ yao jì hángkōngxìn. Yīnwei kéyi kuài yidiǎnr. Hángkōngxìn dào Měiguó děi duōshao yóufèi?

Zhào: Wǒ zhīdaode búda qīngchu. Zhèixie rìzi yóufèi cháng zhǎng. Guò jítian, jiu zhǎng yìcì. Wǒde jìxing běnlái jiu bùhǎo. Gāng yíjìzhu, jiu yòu zhǎngle. Xiànzài wǒ ye bújile. Wǒ gen nín dao yóuzhèngjú qu wēnwēn qu ba. Fǎnzhèng ye dei dào nèr qu mǎi yóupiào.

Sī: Hángkōngxìn dao Běipíng zǒu jǐtiān?

Zhào: Dàgài liǎngtian jiu dào. Kuàixìn dei sāntian. Hángkōng-kuàixìn yìtian jiu dào.

Sī: Yàoshi guàhào ne?

Zhào: Guàhào dao mànle. Hángkōng-kuàixìn zuì hǎo. Yòu kuài, yòu diūbuliǎo.

Sī: Dào Měiguode hángkōng-bāoguǒ néng jì bunéng?

Zhào: Wǒ méijìguo, bùzhidào. Wǒ xiǎng chéng.

Sī: Lí wǒmen zher zui jìnde xìntǒng zai nǎr?

Zhào: Yóuzhèngjú qiántoude lí women jiā zuì jìn?

Sī: Zhèr yóuchāi yìtiān sòng jǐci xìn?

Zhào: Liǎngcì. Shàngwǔ yìcì, xiàwǔ yìcì.

Sī: Diànbào jú, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyóu?

Zhào: Yóuzhèngjú guòqu yidiǎnr jiu shì diànbào jú. Yóuzhèngjú, diànbào jú, diànhuà jú dōu zai yikuàir. Diànhuà jú zai dāngzhōng, yìbiānr shì yóuzhèngjú, yìbiānr shì diànbào jú.

Sī: Zai Shànghǎi dǎ diànbào, búdao diànbào jú qu, yòng diànhuà dǎ chéng buchéng?

Zhào: Kǒngpà bùchéng. Wǒ méishìguo.

Sī: Yīngwén diànbào néng dǎ bunéng?

Zhào: Néng. Dàgài bǐ yong Zhōngwén guì yidiǎnr. Nín zheige xīnzhǐ xīnfēng dōu shì cóng Měiguó dàilaide ba? Zhēn hǎokàn.

Sī: Hái bucuò. Jiùshi zhǐ tài hòu. Zhèizhong zhǐ xiě sānzhāng, yàoshi jì hángkōngxìn, jiù guòzhōngle. Nèizhong báode hángkōng-xīnzhǐ hǎo, bǐ zhèizhong qīngduōle. Kéyi xiě bājiǔzhāng. Kěshi wǒ wàngle dàilaile.

Zhào: Wǒ kàn wōman xiànzài jiù dao yóuzhèngjú qù ba.

Sī: Hǎo! Wǒmen zǒu ba.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

112. jì	V: mail, send by mail
112.1 jì xìn	VO: mail letters
112.2 jì dōngxi	VO: mail things
112.3 jìchuqu	RV: mail out
112.4 jìzǒu	RV: mail out
112.5 jìlai	RV: send by mail (here)
112.6 jìqu	RV: send by mail (there)
112.7 jìgei	V: mail to

- Wǒ yídìng děi bǎ zhèifēng xìn jìchuqu.
- Wǒ jìgei wǒ mèimei jìkuai yízi.
- Tā ràng wǒ bǎ zhèibēn shū gěi ta jìqu.

113. -jú	BF: office
113.1 yóuzhèngjú	N: Post Office
113.2 diànbàojú	N: Telegraph Office
113.3 diànhuàjú	N: Telephone Office

114. dǎting V: to inquire or ask about

- Wǒ gēn nín dǎting yidiǎnr shì.

115. fùjìn N: vicinity, near by

116. píngxìn N: ordinary mail (M. -fēng)

117. hángkōngxìn N: air mail (M. -fēng)

118. kuàixìn N: special delivery (M. -fēng)

119. hángkōng-kuàixìn N: air mail special delivery (M. -fēng)

120. yóufèi N: postage

121. jìxing	N: memory
121.1 jì	V: remember, keep in mind
121.2 jìzhù	RV: fix or hold in mind
121.3 jìzhe	V: keep in mind
121.4 jìde	V: remember

- Tā shuōde huà, wǒ dōu méijìzhù.
- Nǐ jìzhe, bié wàngle, wǒmen míngtian sāndiǎn zhōng qu jiē ta.
- Nèige rén wǒmen yìqián cháng gen ta yíkuàir wánr, nǐ hái jìde ta ma?

122. -zhù BF: (denoting firmness or security)
 122.1 zhànzhù RV: stop, stand still
 122.2 nǎzhù RV: take hold of
- a. Wǒde biǎo zhànzhùle.
 b. Nǐ zhèiyàng nǎ, nǎdezhù ma?
123. fǎnzhèng MA: anyway, anyhow
- a. Jīntian xià yǔ ye hǎo, qíng tiān ye hǎo, fǎnzhèng wǒ bùchūqu.
124. yóupiào N: postage stamp (M. -zhāng)
 124.1 sānfēnde yóupiào a three-cent stamp
 124.2 hángkōngyóupiào air mail stamp
125. guàhào VO: register
 125.1 guàhào-xìn N: registered letter (M. -fēng)
- a. Zhèifeng xìn wǒ děi guàhào.
126. dào(shi) A: and yet, on the contrary
- a. Wǒmen dōu méiqián, suǒyì qùbuliǎo. Tā dào(shi) yǒuqián, kěshì tā yǒu yǒu shì, yě bùnéng qù.
127. bāoguǒ N: parcel, parcel post (M. -jiàn, -ge)
 127.1 jǐ bāoguǒ VO: mail parcel post
 127.2 qǔ bāoguǒ VO: get parcel post
128. chéng SV: be O.K., be satisfactory
- a. Zhèige chéng buchéng?
129. xìntǒng (yóutǒng) N: mail box (M. -ge)
 129.1 xìnxiāng (yóuxiāng) N: mail box (M. -ge)
130. yóuchāi N: mail man
131. dāngzhōng PW: the center of, middle of
- a. Nǐ zhànzai zhèibianr, tā zhànzai nèibianr, wǒ zhànzai dāngzhōng.
132. shì V: try
- a. Nǐ shìle zhèijiàn yīshang le ma?
133. Zhōngwén N: Chinese (language)
 133.1 niǎn Zhōngwén VO: study Chinese
 133.2 xué Zhōngwén VO: study Chinese
 133.3 Zhōngwén shū N: Chinese book
 133.4 yòng Zhōngwén xiě Ph: write in Chinese
134. xìnfēng N: envelope
 134.1 hángkōng-xìnfēng N: air mail envelope
135. xìnzhǐ N: letter paper (M. -zhāng)
 135.1 hángkōng-xìnzhǐ N: Air mail letter paper
136. hòu SV: thick (in dimension)
- a. Wǒ zhèijiàn yīshang búgòu hòu.

137. báo SV: thin (in dimension)
 a. Zhèizhāng zhǐ tài báo.
138. zhòng SV: heavy (in weight)
 138.1 guòzhòng SV: overweight, too heavy
 a. Nǐ duó zhòng?
 b. Zhèifēng xīn, méiguòzhòng.
139. qīng SV: light (in weight)
 a. Zhèige zhuōzi bùqīng, yíge rén dàgài bānbushangqù.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Time-Spent Expressions (Continued):

It has been said in Part III of Lesson IV that the time-spent expression generally follows the main verb. However, it may precede the verb in a negative sentence. When the action associated with the time expression is negative, indicating that for a certain length of time something did not happen, the time-spent expression may precede the verb:

Tā sāntian méichīfàn, suóyì bìngle.
 (He didn't eat for three days, so he got sick.)

Rén yàoshi sāntian bùchīfàn, yídìng děi bìng.
 (If people don't eat for three days, they certainly will get sick.)

Tāde bìng sāntian méihǎo.
 (He hasn't recovered after three days of illness.)

- 1.1 When a time-spent expression follows the verb in a negative sentence, the meaning is changed from stressing the time expression to a denial of the whole statement. However, this form is less often used. Compare:

Wǒ sāntian méishuìjiào.
 (For three days I didn't sleep at all.)--as in 1.

Wǒ méishuì sāntian jiào.
 (I didn't sleep for three days.)

- 1.2 Certain NU-M time expressions preceding the verb in a sentence may look like a time-spent expression. But actually, they are time-when expressions with specifiers like zhèi, nèi and měi or verbs which they modify preceding them understood. Here are some of the common forms:

"Wǒ sìtiān dōu zài zhèr." means "Wǒ zhèi sìtiān dōu zài zhèr."
 (I'll be here for these four days.)

"Tā yíge yuè èrbǎikuài qián." means "Tā měi yíge yuè (yuè) èrbǎikuài qián."
 (He spends two hundred dollars every month.)

"Wǒ wǔtiān qù yíci." means "Wǒ měi wǔtiān qù yíci."
 (I go there once every five days.)

"Yíge yuè jiu xíngle." means "Yòng yíge yuè jiu xíngle."
(Only one month will do.)

"Yíge yuè cai xíng ne." means "Yòng yíge yuè cai xíng ne."
(It will take a whole month to do it.)

"Yìtian qù, yìtian búqù." means "Zhèi yìtian qù, nèi yìtian búqù."
or "Yǒu yìtian qù, yǒu yìtian búqù."
(Goes there one day and doesn't the next.)

1.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.31 I haven't bumped into him for almost a month.

1.32 I don't think you can finish that work in one year.

1.33 He can read one book a day.

1.34 I want to try not to smoke for a week.

1.35 It's very strange about his illness. He feels fine one day
and not so well the next day.

1.36 If you don't go to her for one day, you'll see what happens.

1.37 I give him three hundred dollars every month.

1.38 He lives in the United States for one year and in France the
other.

1.39 I don't think three months will be enough.

1.40 He hasn't graduated from college for six years.

2. ...(Dào)shi..., Kěshi (Jiùshi or Búguò)...:

The verb before the dàoshi in the first clause has the sense: "So far as such-and-such is concerned." The same verb is repeated after dàoshi to state the actual situation. A second clause, introduced by an adverb such as kěshi, jiùshi, búguò, introduces an exception to the general pronouncement just made.

Qù (dào)shi yuànyì qù, kěshi wǒ méi qián.
(I'm willing to go all right, but I don't have any money.)

2.1 The verb that follows dàoshi may be negative, in which case it is best translated "It isn't that..." In this usage the verb is usually a stative verb.

Tā hǎokàn dàoshi bùhǎokàn, búguò wǒ xǐhuan tā.
(It isn't that she is good-looking, but I like her.)

Of course literally, it means: "So far as her looks are concerned, she is not good-looking, nevertheless I like her."

2.2 Exercise - Answer the following questions, using the above patterns:

2.21 Nǐ búhuì kāi fēijī ma?

2.22 Nǐ yào gēn wǒmen chūqu yíkuàir wánr ma?

2.23 Nǐ kàn wǒ mǎide zhèizhāng huà piányi bupíányi?

2.24 Tāde nǚpéngyou yídìng hěn yǒu qián ba?

2.25 Nǐ juéde Zhōngwén tài nán ma?

2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.31 He will go all right, but it seems that he is not happy about it.
2.32 It is a little too expensive (all right), but I still think we ought to buy it.
2.33 It isn't that I am afraid of her, but because I love her so much, I just had to buy that hat for her.
2.34 I bought the stamps all right, but I couldn't find the mail box.
2.35 It isn't that my memory is bad, but there are too many new words.

3. Must and Mustn't:

In expressing the idea "must", děi and bìděi are the same in meaning and usage. They are often preceded by yídìng for stress.

Wǒ (yídìng) děi qù.
Tā (bì)děi míngtiān dào cái jiàndezháo wǒ.

However, děi and bìděi generally are not preceded by bù or méi. To express the idea "mustn't", expressions like bié (don't) and qiānwàn bié (by no means) are used instead. The stress word kě may precede either.

Nǐ (kě) qiānwàn bié qù.

3.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 3.11 I think you have to go there by yourself.
3.12 It's getting late. I must go now.
3.13 You mustn't give him that money.
3.14 You should by no means go to see them.
3.15 It mustn't rain tomorrow.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. A: Zhèige bāoguǒ nǐ yào gei shéi jì?
B: Wǒ yào jìgei wo péngyou.
2. A: Wǒ gen nín dǎtīng, yóuzhèng jú zai nǎr?
B: Zai diànbào jū fùjīn.
3. A: Hángkōngxīnde yóufèi děi duōshao?
B: Wǒ bú jìde le.
4. A: Zhèime duōde zì, nǐ jìdezhù ma?
B: Jìdezhù. Wǒde jìxing búhuài.
5. A: Yàoshi xià yǔ, nǐ hái qù ma?
B: Bùguǎn xià yǔ búxià, fǎnzhèng wǒ děi qù.
6. A: Zhèizhǒng xīnzhǐ xīnfēng guì búguì?
B: Guì dào shì búguì, kěshì mǎibuzháo.
7. A: Zhōngwén bùnánxué ba?
B: Nǐ xuéxue shìshi, jiu zhīdaole.

8. A: Nǐ kàn zhèifēng xìn guòzhòng búguò?
B: Wǒ xiǎng méiguó. Nǐ shuō ne?
9. A: Zhèige zhuōzi zhēn bùqīng a!
B: Nèige bǐ zhèige hái zhòng.
10. A: Zhèizhāng zhǐ tài hòule ba?
B: Búyaojīn, wǒ hái yǒu báode.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. yào jì xìn, tā zhīdao buzhidào yóuzhèngjú zai shénme dìfang? Tā gen shéi dǎting?
2. Zhàojiade fùjìn yǒu yóuzhèngjú ma? Zài shénme dìfang?
3. Sī Xs.de xìn shì yao wàng shénme dìfang jì? Tā yao jì píngxìn háishi hángkōngxìn?
4. Hángkōngxìn dào Měiguó de yóufèi duōshao? Zhào Xs. zhīdao buzhidào?
5. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme jìbuzhù yóufèi duōshao qián?
6. Tāmen buzhidào yóufèi duōshao, zěnme bàn?
7. Hángkōngxìn cóng Shànghǎi dao Běipíng zǒu jítian? Kuàixìn ne? Hángkōng-kuàixìn ne? Guàhào ne?
8. Wèi shénme hángkōngkuàixìn zuì hǎo?
9. Zài Měiguó néng wàng wàiguó jì hángkōng-bāoguǒ bùnéng?
10. Zhàojia fùjìn yǒu diànbàojú meiyou? Zài shénme dìfang? Yǒu diànhuàjú meiyou?
11. Zài Shànghǎi dǎ diànbào, búdao diànbàojú qu, yòng diànhuà dǎ, xíng bu-xíng? Zhào Xs. shìguo meiyou?
12. Zài Shànghǎi dǎ Yīngwén diànbào bǐ Zhōngwén diànbào guì ma?
13. Jì hángkōngxìn, yídìng děi yòng hángkōng-xìnzhǐ hángkōng-xìnfēng ma? Wèi shénme?
14. Yòng hángkōng-xìnzhǐ xiě xìn, yìfēng xìn xiě jǐzhāng, kéyi búguòzhòng?
15. Jìxìn yídìng děi dào yóuzhèngjú qù ma? Búdao yóuzhèngjú qù zěnme bàn?
16. Zài Měiguó dà chéng lǐtou, yóuchāi yìtian sòng jǐcì xìn?
17. Zài Měiguó, píngxìn, hángkōngxìn, kuàixìn, guàhàoxìn, yóufèi dou shì duōshao? Nǐ jìde ma?
18. Zài Měiguó dǎ diànbào, kéyi búdao diànbàojú qù ma?
19. Zài Měiguó dǎ diànbào yòng Zhōngwén chéng buchéng?
20. Lí zhèr zuì jìnde xìntǒng zài shénme dìfang?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ bùzhidào yóuzhèngjú zai nǎr, xiǎng gēn biéren dǎting, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
2. Yàoshi nǐ dào le yóuzhèngjú qu jì xìn, xiǎng wèn wèn yóufèi duōshao, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Zài yóuzhèngjú mǎi yóupiào, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
4. Yàoshi zài diànbào jú lǐtōu, nǐ xiǎng dǎting duōshao qián yíge zì, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ qu mǎi xìnzhǐ xìn fēng, nǐ xiǎng yào bǎo yìdiǎnrde, nǐ zěnmē shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 I mailed him a parcel post package, but he said he didn't receive it. Next time I will register it.
- 1.2 This air mail letter has to be mailed today.
- 1.3 May I inquire if there is a post office in the vicinity of the school?
- 1.4 He has a very good memory.
- 1.5 Do you still remember how much air mail special delivery postage to China is? No, I don't. I tried to recall it but didn't succeed.
- 1.6 Be sure to remember what I told you. Don't forget.
- 1.7 Can you remember all the things he asked you to do?
- 1.8 I don't care whether it is expensive or not, I am going to buy one anyway.
- 1.9 Will you buy me ten six-cent air-mail stamps?
- 1.10 You can mail it by parcel post all right, but you can't be sure he will get it.
- 1.11 I have tried this kind of soap several times, but it isn't very satisfactory.
- 1.12 Can you telegraph him in Chinese?
- 1.13 How do you like my stationery?

1.14 This letter paper is too thick.

1.15 I want some lighter clothing.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (112) a. I have to mail this letter today.
b. I mailed my younger sister several cakes of soap.
c. He asked me to mail him this book.
- (114) a. I want to ask you about something.
- (121) a. I don't remember a word of what he said.
b. Keep it in mind and don't forget. We are going to meet him at three o'clock tomorrow.
c. We used to play with him frequently. Do you still remember him?
- (122) a. My watch stopped.
b. Can you hold it securely this way?
- (123) a. It may rain or shine, for all I care; I am not going out today anyway.
- (125) a. I have to register this letter.
- (126) a. None of us has any money, so we can't go. He has money, all right, but he is busy, so he can't go either.
- (128) a. Will this do?
- (131) a. You stand over here, let him stand over there, and I'll stand in between.
- (132) a. Did you try this suit on?
- (136) a. This coat of mine is not heavy enough.
- (137) a. This paper is too thin.
- (138) a. How much do you weigh?
- (139) a. This table is not light. One person probably can't move it up there.

DIQÍKE - MǎI XIÉ

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. xiǎng qū mǎi xié. Dao Zhào Xs. wūzili lai gēn
Zhào Xs. shuō:

Sī: Zǐān, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín gen wo qu mǎi diǎnr dōngxi, nín you gōngfu ma?

Zhào: Nín dāsuan shénme shíhou qù?

Sī: Sāndian zhōng chéng buchéng?

Zhào: Nín děng wo kànkān. Xiànzài shì yìdiǎnbàn. Xíng. Sāndian zhōng
nín dao wǒ zhèr lái, wǒ gen nín yíkuàir qù.

(Dào le xiépù, huǒji guòlai shuō:)

Huǒji: Nín lái le. Qǐngzuò, qǐngzuò.

Zhào: Zhèiwèi xiānsheng yao mǎi yishuāng xié.

Huǒji: Shì yao píde, háishi yao bùde?

Sī: Wǒ yao yishuāng píxié, yao huángde.

Huǒji: Nín chuān jǐhàorde?

Sī: Dàgài shì báhaòrbàn. Wǒ jìbùqīngchule. Nǐ liángliang ba.

(Huǒji liángwánle, bǎ xié náchulai shuō:)

Huǒji: Nín shìshì zhèishuāng. Xiān kànkān dàxiǎo héshì buhéshì?

(Sī Xs. chuānshang xié, shìle shì, shuō:)

Sī: Chángduǎn chàbuduō. Kuānzhǎi hǎoxiàng xiǎo yìdiǎnr. Wǒde jiǎo
tài kuān. Zhèige yàngzi wo ye búdá xǐhuan.

(Huǒji gǎnjǐn shuō:)

Huǒji: Búyào jǐn, yǒu biéde yàngzide. (Tā shuōzhe jiu yòu náchu yishuāng
lai.) Nín kàn zhèishuāng zěnmeyàng? Pízi zhēn hǎo.

Sī: Zhèishuāng búcuò. Jiùshì yánshe qiǎn yìdiǎnr. Yǒu shēn yánshe
meiyóu?

Huǒji: Qiǎn yánshe piàoliang. Nín zhèige piàoliang rén, yīnggāi chuān
piàoliang xié.

Sī: Qiǎn yánshe róngyi zāng. Zǐān, nín kàn zhèishuāng zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Zhèishuāng yàngzi búcuò.

Sī: Duōshao qián?

Huǒji: Shíèrkuài-èrmáowǔ.

Sī: Hē! Zěnme zěnme guì a?

Huǒji: Dōngxi hǎo. Wǒmen zhèrde xié tèbié jiěshi. Nín zhīdao mǎi dōngxi shì "guìde búguì, jiànde bújiàn". Zàishuo jiàqian yě bùbǐ biéde pùzi guì.

Sī: Hǎo. Wǒ jiù mǎi zhèishuāng ba. Lǎojià, gěi wǒ bāoshang ba.

Huǒji: Wǒmen yǒu hézi. Gěi nín zhuāngqilai ba. Wǒmen yǒu hǎo wǎzi, nín yào liangshuāng hǎo buhǎo? Wú máowǔ yìshuāng. Zhēn piányi.

Sī: Wǒ kànkàn. Hǎo. Gěi wǒ ná bàndá ba. Dōu zhuāngzai nèige hézili, zhuāngdexià zhuāngbuxià?

Huǒji: Zhuāngdexià. Nín hái yào yòng diǎnr shénme?

Sī: Búyào shenme le. Guò liǎngtiān zài shuō ba. Zhè shì èrshikuài qian.

Huǒji: Xièxie nín. Zháogei nín sīkuai-sì máowǔ.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

140. xié
140.1 xiépù
N: shoe (M: -shuāng for pair, -zhī for one of a pair)
N: shoe store
141. huǒji
N: waiter, clerk (in stores)
142. -shuāng
M: pair (for shoes, socks, gloves, chopsticks, etc.)
143. pí
143.1 pízi
143.2 píxié
143.3 píbāo
143.4 pízi zuòde
N: skin, fur, leather, hide (M: -kuài, zhāng)
N: fur, leather, hide
N: leather shoes
N: hand bag, brief case, suit case made of leather
144. bù
144.1 bùyīshang
144.2 bùxié
144.3 zhuōbù
144.4 bù zuòde
N: cotton cloth (M: -pǐ, bolt; -mǎ, yard; -chǐ, foot; cùn, inch)
N: cotton garment
N: cotton shoes
N: table cloth made of cloth
145. -hào(r)
M: number, size
a. Nín dài jǐhào màozi?
b. Nín diànhuà duōshao hào?
146. liáng
V: measure
a. Nǐ liángliang zhèige zhuōzi yǒu duōshao chǐ?
147. kuān
SV: be wide, broad
a. Zhèige chuānghu yǒu sānchǐ kuān, liùchǐ gāo.
148. zhǎi
SV: be narrow
a. Zhèitiáo jiē tài zhǎi.

149. dàxiǎo N: size
150. chángduǎn N: length
151. kuānzhǎi N: width
152. jiǎo N: foot (of a person)
153. héshì SV: be suitable, fit
153.1 zhèng héshì just right
- a. Zhèijian yīshang, wǒ chuānzhe bùhéshì.
 b. Zhèige zhuōzi fāngzai nèr zhèng héshì.
154. gǎnjīn A: hurriedly, at once, promptly
- a. Tā yíjiào wo, wǒ jiu gǎnjīn guòqule.
155. qiǎn SV: be light (in color), shallow (of water, thought)
- 155.1 qiǎnlán N: light blue
155.2 qiǎnhóng N: light red
- a. Wǒ búyuànyi chuān qiǎn yánshe de yīshang.
 b. Nèitiáo hé, shuǐ hěn qiǎn.
156. shēn SV: be deep (color, water, thought)
- 156.1 shēnlǜ N: deep green
156.2 shēnhuáng N: deep yellow
- a. Zhèige zhuōzide huáng yánshe tài shēn.
157. piàoliang SV: be attractive, smart looking
- a. Nèige rénde yīshang zhen piàoliang.
158. yīnggāi A: ought to (interchangeable with yīngdāng)
- a. Nǐ yīnggāi gào song ta.
159. jiēshi SV: be strong, durable, sturdy
- a. Nèige fángzi jiēshijíle.
 b. Tāde háizi zhǎngde zhēn jiēshi.
160. jiàn SV: be cheap
- a. "Guǐde búguì, jiànde bújiàn."
161. jiàqian N: price, cost
- 161.1 jiàqian guì expensive
161.2 jiàqian gāo high priced
161.3 jiàqian dī low priced
161.4 jiàqian piányi inexpensive, cheap in price
161.5 jiàqian hǎo priced right
- a. Měiguó shū, zai Zhōngguó, kěyi mài hěn hǎode jiàqian.

162. bāo V/M: wrap/package, parcel
 162.1 yìbāo dōngxì N: a package of something
 162.2 yìbāo yān N: a package of cigarettes
 162.3 bāoqilai RV: wrap up
 162.4 bāoshang RV: wrap up

a. Qǐng ni bǎ zhèige dōngxì gei wo bāoshang.

163. hézi N: box (small)
 163.1 -hé(r) M: a box of
 164. zhuāng V: pack, load
 164.1 zhuāngshang RV: pack up
 164.2 zhuāngqilai RV: pack up

a. Wǒ bǎ yīshang dou zhuāngzai píbāoli le.

b. Qǐng ni bǎ zhèixie dōngxì zhuāngqilai.

165. wàzi N: sock, stocking (M: -shuāng, for pair;
 -zhī for one of a pair)
 165.1 cháng wàzi stocking
 165.2 duǎn wàzi socks

a. Wǒ děi qu mǎi liǎngshuāng wàzi.

166. -dá M: dozen
 167. -xià BF: (RV-ending indicating downward motion
 or capacity)
 167.1 fàngxia RV: put down
 167.2 zuòbuxià RV: will not seat
 168. zhǎo(qián) V(O): make change

a. Tā hái méizhǎo wo qián ne.

b. Zhèi shì wǔkuai qián, qǐng nǐ zháogei wo.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Placewords as Objects:

Cóng, dào and zài may take only a placeword as object, not just any noun. Most nouns can be made into a PW by adding a localizer. In English we say "come to me" and "go to him", but in Chinese the literal equivalents "dào wǒ lái" and "dào tā qù" are not possible. To turn the pronouns wǒ and tā into PW, we may add such a PW as zhèr and nèr to them. Thus: Dào wǒ zhèr lái and dào tā nèr qù.

1.1 The PW most commonly added to pronouns are:

zhèr (zhèli)	Nǐde shū méizai wǒ zhèr.
nèr (nàli)	Qǐng nǐ dao chuānghu nèr qù.
zhèibianr	Nǐ dao zhèibianr lai.
nèibianr	Bié dao nèibianr qu.
zhèige dìfang	Wǒ zheige dìfang méiyóu duōshao rén.
nèige dìfang	Zai tāmen nèige dìfang yǒu fànguǎnr.
qiántou	Qǐng nǐ bié zhànzai wǒ qiántou.
hòutou	Bǎ zhèige yīzi fàngzai tā hòutou.
qiánbianr	Wǒ kéyi bukéyi zuòzai nǐ qiánbianr?
hòubianr	Nǐ kě qiánwàn bié cóng ta hòubianr guòqu.

zuǒbianr
yòubianr

Tā búyuànyì zuòzài wǒ zuǒbianr.
Dào wǒ yòubianr lái.

- 1.2 All the above placewords may also be added to nouns. In addition, there are certain localizers which can only be added to nouns but not to pronouns:

lǐtōu	Wǒ zhùzài chéng lítōu.
wàitōu	Wǒ dao wūzi wàitōu qù yihuǐr.
shàngtōu	(Zai) qìchē shàngtōu yǒu yige rén.
xiàtōu	Wǒde míngzi zài tā míngzi xiàtōu.
lǐbianr	Háishì zài wūzi lǐbianr chī hǎo yidiǎnr.
wàibianr	Zài lóu wàibianr yǒu hěn duō shù.
shàngbianr	Qǐng nǐ zài huà shàngbianr xiě jige zì.
xiàbianr	Bié xiězài huà xiàbianr.
dǐxia	Zuìhǎo bǎ yīshang fàngzài zhuōzi dǐxia.
-li	Nǐ zěnmē bǎ wǒde qiǎn dōu zhuāngzài nǐde kǒudairli le.
-shang	Tā yào dào jiēshang qu mǎi yidiǎnr dōngxi.

- 1.3 All proper nouns which are the names of places are PW. In addition, there are certain common nouns which are treated as PW and do not require a localizer when used after cóng, dào and zài. They generally are common nouns which indicate a place:

jiā	kètīng	chúfáng
xuéxiào	fàntīng	fēijīchǎng
pùzi	shūfáng	diànhuàjù
fànguǎnr	yóuzhèngjù	huǒchēzhàn

- 1.4 There are other nouns which should from the point of view of meaning be considered PW, but which do not so function; i.e., they cannot stand as the object of a coverb of motion without the addition of a localizer:

hé	shān	jiē
hú	lù	
hǎi	chéng	

- 1.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.51 Please go to the table.

1.52 Please come to me.

1.53 Have you come from Shànghǎi?

1.54 Aren't you eating at the restaurant?

1.55 Haven't you lived at your friend's?

- 1.6 Exercise - Let one person ask one of the following questions; let a second person answer it with a complete statement:

1.61 Nǐ yào dào wǒ zhebianr lái ma?

1.62 Nǐ búyuànyì dào tā nàr qù ma?

1.63 Tāmen dōu shì cóng Zhào Xs. nàr lái de ma?

1.64 Nǐde fēijī zài shénme dìfang ne?

1.65 Qǐng nǐ dào chuānghu zher lái ba.

2. Generalizations of Quantity, Quality and Degree:

In English there are certain generalizations of quantity, quality and degree such as height, weight, width, thick-ness, shade (of color), etc. In Chinese, one of the ways to express these ideas is to combine as opposite pair of stative verbs. The most commonly used ones are:

chángduǎn	(length)
dàxiǎo	(size)
gāoǎi	(height)
shēnqiǎn	(depth; shade of color)
kuàimàn	(speed)
lěngrè	(temperature)
yuǎnjìn	(distance)
kuānzhǎi	(width)
hǎohuài	(quality - of things and people)
báohòu	(thickness)
guìjiàn	(price)
qīngzhòng	(weight)
duōshǎo	(quantity)

2.1 Exercise - Make sentences using the nouns listed above.

3. Resultative Verb Endings:

Many stative verbs can be used as resultative verb endings. For example:

zhǎngdedà	Zhèige huār zhǎngdedà ma?
chībuhǎo	Tā zuòde fàn tài shǎo, wǒ lǎoshi chībuhǎo.
bànbuhǎo	Zhèijian shì tài nán, wǒ bànbuhǎo.

Lái and qù and their combinations are also common resultative verb endings:

shàngbulái	Tā yǒu bìng, kǒngpà yíge rén shàngbulái.
huídeqù	Nǐ yìtiān huídeqù ma?
bāndeshànglái	Wǒ bāndeshànglái zhèige zhuōzi.

3.1 Certain functive verbs when used as resultative verb endings suffer modification of meaning. Even as RV endings they may have more than one meaning. Four of the most common endings in this group are:

-jiàn -zháo -shàng -xià

(Four more will be discussed in the next lesson.)

3.11 -jiàn indicates perception of what is seen, heard, smelled, etc. Eg:

kànjian	Wǒ zuótian méikànjian tā.
tīngjian	Nǐ tīngdejian tā chàng gē ma?
wénjian	Wǒmen dōu wénbujian wūzili yǒu shenme wèir.
pèngjian	Qiánjitiān wǒ zai jiēshang pèngjianle yige lǎopéngyou.

3.12 The RV ending -zháo indicates success in attaining the object of the action. Here are the most common combinations:

shuìzháo	Wǒ shuìle bàntiān méishuìzháo.
zhǎozháo	Nǐ zhǎozhǎole nèiben shū le ma?

jiànzháo	Nǐ míngtiān qù yí dìng jiàn bù zháo tā.
jiēzháo	Tā zhèi liángtiān yì fēng xīn yē méi jiē zháo.
diǎnzháo	Diǎn de zháo diǎn bù zháo dōu bú yào jǐn.
mǎizháo	Wǒ mǎizháo le nǐ shuō de nèi ge bǐ le.
yòngzháo	Běn lái wǒ xiǎng yòng bù zháo nèi ge dōng xi, suǒ yì shǒu qī lái le. Shéi zhī dào xiàn zài zhēn yòng zháo le.
chīzháo	Yǒu duō shǎo qián yē chī bù zháo zèn me hǎo de fàn.

Note that in the two potential forms and the negative actual form, the ending zháo always gets stress, but in the affirmative actual form, it is sometimes stressed and sometimes not.

- 3.13 -Shàng as an RV ending generally indicates the accomplishment of the action. Some of the most common combinations are:

guānshang	Wǒ guān bù shàng zhèi ge chuāng hu.
zhùshang	Tā xiàn zài yǒu qián le. Zhù shàng le xīn fáng zi le.
chuānshang	Yī shàng tài xiǎo. Wǒ chuān le bàn tiān méi chuān shàng.
bāoshang	Zhèi zhāng zhǐ tài xiǎo, kǒng pà bāo bù shàng.
zhuāngshang	Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèi xiē yī shàng zhuāng shàng.

Sometimes the -shàng ending may be interpreted as "onto" in chuānshang above, or in the following illustration:

xiěshang Zhèi zhāng zhǐ bù hǎo, xiě bù shàng zì.

- 3.14 The RV ending -xià indicates either the downward motion of the action or the capacity of the topic as to extent of room, space or content. In its first meaning, the RV is usually in the two actual forms:

fàngxia	Wǒ qǐng tā fàng xià, tā méi fàng xià. Hái nǎ zhe ne.
tǎngxia	Tā yí lèi jiù tǎng xià xiū xi yì huìr.
zuòxia	Zuò xià ba. Bié zhàn zhe le.

But in its second meaning, the RV may be in any of the four actual and potential forms:

fàngxia	Kǒu dǎi rì li fàng bù xià zèn me duō qián.
tǎngxia	Zhèi ge chuáng tǎng de xià sāng e rén.
zuòxia	Zhèi jian wū zi zhēn zuò de xià le wǒ shì rén.

(The student is advised to learn only the combinations given in the text and not to attempt making up their own combinations without confirmation.)

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

- A: Wǒ yào mǎi yì shuāng pǐ xié.
B: Yào huáng de yào hēi de?
- A: Zhèi ge shì yòng shén me zuò de?
B: Wǒ xiǎng shì yòng pǐ zi zuò de.
- A: Tā de diàn huà duō shǎo hào?
B: Wǒ jì bù qǐng chū le. Nǐ wèn Lǎo Lǐ ba.
- A: Nǐ liáng liang zhèi ge zhuō zi duó cháng?
B: Duì bu qǐ, wǒ méi yǒu chǐ.

5. A: Nǐ shénme shíhou huíde jiā?
B: Wǒ yītīngshuō, jiù gǎnjīn huíqule.
6. A: Zhèishuāng xié zhēn piàoliang.
B: Piàoliang shi piàoliang, kěshi bùjiěshi.
7. A: Wǒ bǎ zhèige bǐ zhuāngzai hézili ba.
B: Búyong. Bāoshang jiu xínglě.
8. A: Zhèige dìfang, yānde jiàqian zěnmeyàng?
B: Liǎngmáowǔ yībāo.
9. A: Tā méizhǎoge ni qián ma?
B: Zhǎo shi zhǎole, kěshi zhǎocuòle.
10. A: Nǐ kàn zhèige zhuōzi, kuānzhǎi héshì bù?
B: Kuānzhǎi héshì, kěshi chángduǎn bùhéshì.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. yào jiao Zhào Xs. gēn ta zuò shénme qu? Tā dǎsuan shénme shíhou qù?
2. Sī Xs. yào mǎi shénmeyàngrde xié?
3. Sī Xs. chuān jǐhàorde xié? Tā jǐde ma?
4. Sī Xs. bùzhidào tā zìjǐ chuān duó dāde xié, zěnde bàn?
5. Huǒji gěi Sī Xs. náchulaide xié, tā chuānzhe héshì bùhéshì? Nèige yàngzi tā xǐhuan buxǐhuan?
6. Dièrshuāng xié, Sī Xs. juéde zěnmeyàng?
7. Huǒji shuō qiǎn yánshe zěnde hǎo? Sī Xs. shuō qiǎn yánshe zěnde bùhǎo?
8. Zhào Xs. juéde nèishuāng xié hǎo buhǎo?
9. Nèishuāng xiéde jiàqian zěnmeyàng? Sī Xs. juéde piányi bupíányi?
10. Huǒji shuō nèishuāng xié zěnde hǎo?
11. "Guǐde búguì, jiànde bújiàn" shi shénme yìsi?
12. Huǒji bǎ nèishuāng xié bāoshangle ma?
13. Sī Xs. mǎi wàzi le meiyou?
14. Nǐ xǐhuan chuān shénmeyàngrde xié? Shi píde shi bùde? Shi hēide shi huángde?
15. Nǐ chuān duó dāde xié? Jǐhàor?
16. Nǐ juéde shénme yánshe zuì piàoliang? Shì shēn yánshe shi qiǎn yánshe?
17. Jiàqian guǐde xié dōu jiěshi ma?

18. Zhèige wūzide chángduǎn, kuānzhǎi zěnmeyàng? Nǐ liángguo meiyou?
19. Zài Měiguó xiépù mǎi xié, huǒji shì bǎ xié zhuāngzài hézili, háishi yòng zhǐ bāoshang?
20. Yàoshi nǐ mǎi yishuāng xié, shì shíèrkuai-èrmáowǔ. Nǐ gěi ta shíwǔkuài qián, tā zhǎo nǐ duōshao qián?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐde péngyou gēn nǐ qu mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxì, nǐ zěnmegēn tā shuō?
2. Nǐ dào pùzili qu kànkàn, huǒji wèn nǐ mǎi shénme; kěshì nǐ bùxiǎng mǎi shénme, nǐ zěnmegēn tā shuō?
3. Nǐ dào le xiépùli, shìle jìshuāng xié, yǒude bùhéshì, yǒude nǐ bùxǐhuan, kěshì huǒji yídìng xiǎng ràng nǐ mǎi, nǐ zěnmegēn tā shuō?
4. Nǐ zài pùzili mǎile yìyàng dōngxì, huǒji yòu yào ràng nǐ mǎi biéde, nǐ bùxiǎng mǎi, nǐ shuō shénme?
5. Yàoshi nǐ gēn nǐde péngyou yìkuàir qù mǎi dōngxì, nǐ xiǎng wèn wèn nǐ péngyoude yìsì zěnmeyàng, nǐ zěnmegēn tā shuō?

VII. Bèishū

A: Jīntian tiānqi búcuò.

B: Zhēn hǎo. Zhēn shì chūntian le.

A: Kě búshì ma! Cǎo yě lǜle, huār yě kāile. Shùde yánshe xiàng huàde shìde.

B: Nuǎnhuòle, zài wàitou sànsan bù zhen shūfu. Zhèi yìdōngtiān, búshì xià xuě jiùshì guā fēng, yòu tèbié lěng.

A: Rén dōu xǐhuan chūntian. Kěshì zhèrde chūntian tài duǎn. Hǎoxiàng yìhuìr jiù guòqule.

B: Shì a! Suǒyì wǒmen yīngdāng zài tiānqi hǎode shíhou chūlai wǎnrwanr.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 I sent him a pair of socks by air mail.

1.2 This is made of leather.

1.3 Will you please measure it for me and tell me the length.

1.4 This kind of paper is just the right thickness.

1.5 As soon as I heard what he said, I promptly wired my wife.

1.6 It's smart-looking all right, but it doesn't fit me.

1.7 This pair of shoes is good looking and will wear well. What's more, the price is right. However, they don't fit me well.

1.8 The price of this kind of cigarettes ought to be cheaper now.

1.9 I will pack these brushes in a box.

1.10 I gave him twenty dollars, and he gave me back two and a quarter in change.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(145) a. What size hat do you wear?
b. What's your telephone number?

(146) a. Will you measure this table and see how many feet long it is?

(147) a. This window is three feet wide by six feet high.

(148) a. This street is too narrow.

(152) a. This suit doesn't fit me.
b. Placed there the table is just right.

(153) a. As soon as he called me, I went over at once.

(154) a. I don't like to wear light colored clothes.
b. That river is very shallow.

(155) a. This table is too dark a brown.

(156) a. That man's clothes are very smart looking.

(157) a. You ought to tell him.

(158) a. That house is extremely well-built.

(159) a. "Expensive things are (in the end) not expensive, while cheap ones are (really) not cheap."

(160) a. American books can sell for very good prices in China.

(161) a. Please wrap this article for me.

(163) a. I packed all the clothes in the suitcase.
b. Please pack these things away.

(164) a. I have to go and buy two pairs of socks.

(165) a. He hasn't given me the change yet.
b. Here is five dollars. Please give me the change.

DIBÁKE - ZŪ FÁNG

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. jiēzhào yīfēng cōng Měiguó láide xìn. Ràng Sī Xs. zài Shànghǎi zhū yīnián. Sī Xs. xiǎng bènghēng zài Zhàojiā zhù nēme jiǔ. Suǒyì tā dēi zhǎo fáng bān jiā. Yǒu yìtiān, tā zài bàoshàng kànjiàn yìge guǎnggào, yǒu yìsuǒ fángzi chūzū. Tā jiù dào nēige fángzi nēr qūle. Sī Xs. jiànzhào fángdōng, gēn fángdōng shuō:

Sī: Wǒ zài bàoshàng kànjiàn nín dēngde guǎnggào. Nín yào chūzūde shì shénme yàngde fángzi?

Fángdōng: Wǒ yǒu wǔjiàn fángzi chūzū. Kètīng, fàntīng, wòfáng, chúfáng, zǎofáng, yìyàng yìjiān. Diàndēng, diànhuà, zìláishuǐ dōu yǒu.

Sī: Nín dài wǒ kànkàn, kéyì ma?

Fángdōng: Kéyì. Nín děng wǒ suǒshàng mén, wǒ gēn nín yìkuàir qù.

Sī: Zài nǎr a?

Fángdōng: Bùyuǎn. Jiù shì nēibiānr sānshiwǔhào. Hǎo! Wǒmen zǒu ba.

(Dào le sānshiwǔhào, fángdōng nà yàoshi bǎ mén kāikāi, shuō:)

Fángdōng: Nín qǐng jìnlai. Nín kàn, zhè shì kètīng. Qiáng dìbǎn, dōu hěn gǎnjīng.

Sī: Hěn hǎo! Fàntīng zài nēibiānr ba?

Fángdōng: Nín qǐng guòlai. Zhèjiàn shì fàntīng, cóng zhèige mén, kéyì dào chúfáng qu.

Sī: Chúfángli yǒu lúzi ma?

Fángdōng: Yǒu. Nín lái kànkàn. Dìfang hěn dà.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Wòfáng zài nǎr?

Fángdōng: Zhèjiàn jiù shì wòfáng. Nín kàn, yǒu sāngē chuānghu, hěn liàng. Zǎofáng jiù zài lǐtōu. Liǎnpén, zǎopén, dōu shì xīn huànde. Guǎnzi yě shì xīn shòushide. Rèshuǐ yě hěn fāngbiān.

Sī: Diànmén zài nǎr?

Fángdōng: Diànmén zài zhèr.

Sī: Fángzū shì àn yuè suàn, shì àn lǐbài suàn?

Fángdōng: Àn yuè suàn. Wǔshiwǔkuai qián, yìge yuè.

Sī: Diàn, shuǐ dōu zài lǐtōu ma?

Fángdōng: Diàn, shuǐ, wǒmen bùguǎn.

Sī: Hǎo. Děng wǒ huíqu xiāngxiang. Guò yìliàngtiān wǒ zài lái gēn nín tán ba.

Fángdōng: Nín zuìhǎo shì zǎo yidiǎnr juédìng. Jīntian zǎoshang yǐjing yǒu jiwèi lai kànguole.

Sī: Nème wǒ xiān gěi nín yidiǎnr dìngqian. Nín gei wo liú sāntian chéng buchéng?

Fángdōng: Nín dǎsuan gei duōshao qián ne?

Sī: Shíkui qián, hǎo buhǎo?

Fángdōng: Hǎo. Jiù nème bàn ba. Cóng míngtian suàn. Jīntian shì èrshiliùhào. Míngtian èrshiqī, hòutian èrshibā, dàhòutian èrshijiǔ. Wǒ gei nín liúdao èrshijiǔde wǎnshang. Xīwang nín zai sānshihào yìqián gào song wǒ nín yào buyào.

Sī: Hǎo. Yídìng. Zhèr shì shíkui qián.

Fángdōng: Wǒ gei nín xiě yige shōutiáo.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

169. zū

V: rent

169.1 zū fáng

VO: rent a house

169.2 zūchuqu

RC: rent out

169.3 zūqian

N: rental

169.4 fángzū

N: house rent

169.5 chūzū

V: for rent

a. Zhèige fángzi búshi wǒ zìjǐde, shì zūde.

b. Zhèisuǒ fáng, chūzū ma?

c. Zhèisuǒ fáng, yǐjing zūchuqule.

170. -jiǔ

SV: long (of time)

170.1 hěnjiǔ méijiàn

Ph: haven't seen you for a long time

a. Nǐ zai zhèr zhùle duójiǔle?

171. guǎnggào

N: advertisement

172. dēng

V: insert (an advertisement, notice, etc.)

172.1 dēng bào

VO: put in the paper

172.2 dēng guǎnggào

VO: put an advertisement in the paper, magazine, etc.

a. Tā yao mài tade qìchē, suǒyi zai bàoshang dēngle yige guǎnggào.

173. -suǒ(r)

M: for houses

a. Zhèisuǒ fángzi shì tāde.

174. fángdōng

N: landlord, landlady

175. wòfáng

N: bedroom (M: -jiǎn)

176. dēng

N: lamp, light

176.1 diàndēng

N: electric light

176.2 shǒu diàndēng

N: flash light

177. zìláishuǐ N: running water
 177.1 zìláishuǐbǐ N: fountain pen
178. suǒ V/N: lock (M: -bǎ)
 178.1 suǒshàng RV: lock up (doors, locks)
 178.2 suǒqílái RV: lock up (things, people)
- a. Zhèige suǒ huàile. Suǒbúshàngle.
179. yàoshi N: key (M: -bǎ)
180. qiáng N: wall
181. dìbǎn N: floor
182. lúzi N: stove, range, heater, furnace
 182.1 shēng lúzi VO: start a fire in the stove; light the furnace
- a. Nǐmen jiā shēng lúzi le meiyou?
183. pén N: basin, tub
 183.1 (xǐ)zǎopén N: bath tub
 183.2 (xǐ)liǎnpén N: wash basin
184. huàn V: exchange, change
 184.1 huàn qián exchange money
 184.2 huàn yīshàng change clothes
 184.3 huàn dōngxi exchange something
- a. Zhèige hongde wǒ búdá xǐhuan, qǐng ni gei wo huàn yige lǚde, xíng buxíng?
 b. Tiān tài lěng, yàoshi chūqu, nǐ děi huàn yìjiàn yīshàng.
185. guǎnzi N: tube, pipe (M: -gēn)
 185.1 shuǐ guǎnzi N: water pipe
186. diànmén N: switch (electric)
187. àn(zhe) CV: according to
- a. Wǒmen jiu ànzhe tā shuōde bàn ba.
 b. Àn wǒde yìsi, wǒmen shì búqu, nǐ shuō ne?
188. suàn V: reckon, calculate, add, count
 188.1 suànchulai RV: figure out
 188.2 suànshàng RV: include in, add, count in
 188.3 búsuàn doesn't count, not reckoned as, not considered
- a. Nǐmen qù ba, bié suàn wǒ.
 b. Zhèige biǎo, wúshikuai qián, búsuàn tài guì.
189. dīng V: fix, order
 189.1 dīng shíhou VO: make an appointment, set a time
 189.2 dīng dìfang VO: agree on a place, reserve a place
 189.3 dīnghǎole RV: settled
 189.4 dīngqian N: deposit (on purchase or rent)
- a. Wǒ gēn ta dīnghǎole, míngtian sāndiǎn zhōng jiàn.
 b. Wǒ děi gēn ta dīng yige shíhou tán yitán.

190. juéding V: decide
 a. Wǒ juédingle, míngtian búqù.
 b. Nǐ shì zěnmē juédingde?
191. liú V: keep, set aside, detain, save
 191.1 liú tiáor VO: leave a message
 191.2 liúxia RV: leave it here
 191.3 liúqilai RV: put away
- a. Chīfànde shíhou tā méihuílai, wǒ gěi ta liúle yìdiǎnr cài.
 b. Wǒ liú ta zai jiāli chīfàn.
 c. Tā yíding yao zǒu, wǒ bǎ ta liúxiāle.
192. jiù nēme bàn IE: Good, let's do it that way.
 A: Míngtian wǒ gēn ni dao nǐmen xuéxiào qu kànkān qu.
 B: Hǎo. Jiù nēme bàn.
193. dānhòutiān TW: three days from today
 193.1 dàqiántian TW: three days ago
194. tiáor N: brief note, short message
 194.1 shōutiáor N: receipt

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Resultative Verb Endings (continued):

It has been said in the last lesson that certain functive verbs, when used as RV endings, suffer a change of meaning. Four of these most common ones have been introduced. Here are four more:

-liǎo -qǐ -zhù -kǎi

- 1.1 -Liǎo as an RV ending indicates capacity either for doing something, like:

zuòbuliǎo Zhèijian shì tài nán. Wǒ zuòbuliǎo.
 bàndeliǎo Nǐ yíge rén bàndeliǎo zěnmē duō shì ma?
 méiláliǎo Tā zuótian yào lái méiláliǎo.

or for carrying it through completion, like:

chībuliǎo Fàn tài duō. Wǒ kǒngpà chībuliǎo.
 yòngdeliǎo Yíge rén yíge yuè yòngdeliǎo sānbǎikuai qián ma?
 méináliǎo Wǒ yíge rén méináliǎo nēme duō dōngxi.

Note that RV with a -liǎo ending seldom takes the affirmative actual form.

- 1.2 -Qǐ as an RV ending carries the meaning of (1) high up either in opinion or in position (2) able to afford (in a financial sense).

Some of the most common ones that carry the first meaning are:

kàndeqǐ (to have a high opinion of...)
 Wǒmen dōu hěn kàndeqǐ ta.

kànbuqǐ (to have a low opinion of...)
Bié kànbuqǐ rén.

duìdeqǐ (able to look someone in the face)
Zhèijian shì, wǒ hěn duìdeqǐ ta. Tā wèi shénme hái bùgāoxìng?

duìbuqǐ (unable to face a person due to some fault, etc.,
hence, a form of apology--"Excuse me!")
Tā hěn duìbuqǐ wo. (He owes me an apology.)
Duìbuqǐ, zuótiān wǒ méilái. (Excuse me for not being here
yesterday.)

Some of those which carry the second meaning are:

mǎideqǐ Zhèige qìchē, wǒ mǎibuqǐ, tā mǎideqǐ.
zhùbuqǐ Zhèige dìfang wǒ kě zhùbuqǐ.
chībuqǐ Wǒmen chībuqǐ nème hǎode dōngxī.
kànbuqǐ Diànyīng r tǎi guì. Wǒ kànbuqǐ.

RV with a -qǐ ending do not take the actual forms. Note that the combinations kànde qǐ and kànbu qǐ may carry either of the two meanings, the interpretation depending on the context.

- 1.3 The RV ending -zhù indicates (1) firmness and security; (2) to stop or stump. It carries the first meaning in the following common combinations:

názhu Nǐ yìzhī shǒu kǒngpà nábuzhù.
jìzhu Zhèi yìkè wǒ niǎnle sānshiduō cì hái shì méijìzhù.
zhànzhu Wǒde bìng hái méihǎo, zhàn buzhù. Wǒ kěyì zuòxia ma?

The following common combinations carry the second meaning of -zhù:

tíngzhu Chē kāide yàoshi tài kuài, jiù bùnéng lìkè tíngzhu.
wènzhu Zhèige wèntí tài nán, bǎ wǒ gei wènzhu.
nánzhu Tā shénme dōu dǒng. Nǐ yídìng nán buzhù ta.
zhànzhu Wǒde biǎo zhànzhule.

Note that zhànzhu has been listed in both groups. Its meaning depends on the context.

- 1.4 -kāi as an RV ending carries the meaning of separation, "away" and "off".

kāikai Nǐ kāidekāi zhèige hézi ma?
líkai Tāmen liǎngge rén tiāntiān zài yíkuàir, jiǎnzhide líbukāile.
nákai Kuài bǎ zhèige nákai. Yǒu wèir le.
zǒukai Zhèrde shìqing mángjile. Wǒ yìliǎngtiānli zǒubukāi.

The student is again warned not to attempt to make up his own combinations with these RV endings.

- 1.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.51 It is very difficult for me to leave this place.

1.52 Please hold this box for me. Have you really got hold of it?

1.53 Stop! Don't go any further.

1.54 The child is too small to be away from his mother.

1.55 I don't have much money. I cannot afford to go to New York everyday

- 1.56 I think he looks down on me. Therefore I won't talk to him.
- 1.57 This is too difficult. I don't think I can do it.
- 1.58 It's going to rain shortly. I am afraid we cannot go.
- 1.59 You prepared too much food. We certainly won't be able to finish it.
- 1.60 Don't do anything to people that will make you unable to look them in the face.

2. Various Uses of Suàn: Suàn has several uses with varying meaning:

suàn.....to calculate, figure out
suànchulai.....to calculate, figure out
suànhǎole.....finished calculating

suànshang.....to count in, include
suànzai yikuàir same
suànzai litou same

suàn(shi).....to count as being, be considered as, be classed as.
(followed by a descriptive expression)

suànle.....forget it, let the matter drop, call it quits

2.1 Examples of the various uses of suàn:

2.11 To calculate

Yígòng yǒu duōshao qián, qǐng nǐ suàn yisùan.
(Please figure out how much it is altogether.)

Yòng zhèige fázi yísuàn jiu kéyi suànchulaile.
(With this method you can figure it out at a glance.)

2.12 To include

Nǐmen qu chīfàn, bié wàngle bǎ wǒ suànshang.
(When you go out to eat, don't forget to count me in.)

Suànshang jīntian yòngde qián, yě búguò bāshiwǔkuài.
(Including what was spent today, it still doesn't exceed \$85.00.)

2.13 Be considered

Yàoshi tā yǐjīng bùtóténgle, tā neige bìng jiu suàn hǎole.
(If his headache has stopped, then his ailment can be regarded as cured.)

Nǐmen liangge rénde yìsi bùyiyàng, kěshi nà bunéng suànshi tā cuòle.
(You two don't hold the same opinion, but that doesn't mean that he is wrong.)

2.14 Forget it!

Yàoshi tā bukěn, jiu suànle.
(If he isn't willing to do it, let the matter drop.)

Suànle ba! Xià yǔ bunéng qùle.
(Let's drop the matter. It's raining so we can't go anyway.)

Wǒ kàn nǐ suànle ba; méi qián, qù yǒu shénme yìsi?
(I think you'd better let the matter drop; we haven't any money,
so there's no point in going.)

2.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.21 That plan of yours is fine, but first do a little figuring as to how much money it's going to take.
- 2.22 If you count me in too, there will be thirty-one people.
- 2.23 If you two can't agree, just call it quits.
- 2.24 How much did it cost the three of us to eat last night?
Well, not counting the tip, it was \$7.65.
- 2.25 I haven't yet finished figuring; when I have, I'll tell you.
- 2.26 Including these of mine, there are two hundred and forty-five in all.
- 2.27 If no one claims this money by tomorrow noon, I shall consider it mine.
- 2.28 When we were figuring out how much food to take along, we didn't count those two fellows in.
- 2.29 Have you figured out how many miles an hour that type of plane travels?
- 2.30 Have you finished figuring out that problem I asked you to figure?

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Nǐ nèisuǒr fáng zūchuqule ma? Nèisuǒr fáng zūbuchūqù.
2. Hěn jiǔ méijiàn, hǎo ba? Hěn hǎo. Nín tàitai hǎo?
3. Wǒde fáng, zěnme néng zūchuqu ne? Nǐ děi dēng yige guǎnggào.
4. Zìláishuǐ guǎnzi shì xīn huànde ma? Búshi. Shì xīn shōushide.
5. Nǐde fángzū shì àn yuè suàn ma? Duìle. Měiyuè liùshikuai qián.
Búsuàn shuǐ diàn.
6. Zhèizhǒng zhǐ jiēshi ma? Búsuàn bùjiēshi.
7. Nǐ qǐng kè de shìqing juédìngle ma? Rìzi dīnghǎole, dìfang hai méidìng ne.
8. Nǐ liú ta zai jiālì chīfàn le ma? Wǒ liú ta le. Kěshi ta yídìng yao zǒu.
9. Nǐ gěi ta dǎ diànhuà le ma? Dǎle. Tā méizai jiā.
10. Cài tai duō, chībuliǎo zěnme bàn? Kéyi liúqilai.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. jiēzhaode xìn, shì cóng shénme dìfang láide? Xīnli shuō shénme?
2. Sī Xs. wèi shénme yào zū fáng?
3. Sī Xs. zhǎo fáng zěnme zhǎo?
4. Tā jiànzhao fángdōng gen fángdōng shuō shénme?
5. Tā zhǎode fángzi shì shénmeyàngrde fángzi? Yígòng jǐjiān? Yǒu diàndēng diànhuà zìláishuǐ meiyǒu?
6. Nèige fángzi zài shénme dìfang? Dàmén suǒzhe meiyǒu?
7. Nèige fángzi hǎo bùhǎo? Kètīng zěnmeyàng?
8. Cóng fàntīng dào chūfáng yǒu mén meiyǒu?
9. Chūfángli yǒu lúzi ma? Chūfángde dìfang dà budà?
10. Wòfáng zěnmeyàng? Zǎofáng ne?
11. Fángzū zěnme suàn? Shì àn yuè suàn, shì àn lǐbài suàn? Diàn shuǐ, fángdōng guǎn buguǎn?
12. Fángdōng wèi shénme jiao Sī Xs. zǎo yidiǎnr juédìng?
13. Sī Xs. wèi shénme yào gěi dìngqian? Tā yào gěi duōshao dìngqian?
14. Yàoshi Sī Xs. sāntian yǐhòu búyuànyì zū nèisuǒr fáng, tā gěide dìngqian zěnme bàn?
15. Nèitian shì jǐhào? Fángdōng xīwàng shénme shíhou zhīdao Sī Xs. yào buyào zū nèisuǒr fángzi?
16. Fángdōng gěi Sī Xs. xiě shōutiáor le meiyǒu?
17. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zhǎo fáng, nǐ zěnme zhǎo?
18. Nǐ xiànzài zhùde fángzi shì shénmeyàngrde fángzi? Yígòng jǐjiān? Yǒu fàntīng meiyǒu? Fángzū guì buguì?
19. Nǐde wòfáng dà budà? Yǒu jǐge chuānghu? Wòfángli yǒu xǐliǎnpén meiyǒu?
20. Nǐ shénme shíhou gei rén xiě shōutiáor? Shénme shíhou liú tiáor?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zūfáng, nǐ kànjian fángdōng nǐ zěnme wèn tā?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐde péngyou tì nǐ zhǎo fáng, nǐde péngyou wèn nǐ yào shénme yàngrde fángzi, nǐ zěnme shuō?
3. Nǐ xiànzài zhùde fángzi yǒu jǐjiān? Dōu shì shénme fángzi? Nǐ shuō yìshuō.

4. Yàoshi nǐ kànle yìsuǒ fángzi , nǐ bunéng juédìng zū buzū, nǐ xiǎng dièrtian zài gào song tā yào buyào, nǐ zěnme gen tā shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ juédìng zū nèisuǒ fáng 1e, nǐ děi gēn fángdōng shuō shénme?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 I want to rent this house, but I don't know what the rent is.
- 1.2 The rent he asked was too high. I don't think he can rent it. Do you?
- 1.3 How long have you been studying Chinese? Not very long.
- 1.4 He did put an advertisement in the paper, but nobody called.
- 1.5 The landlady said: "It is a ten-room house: two each of living rooms, dining rooms, kitchens, bed rooms and bath rooms."
- 1.6 Everything in this house - such as lamps, switches, heater, bath tub, flooring, water pipes, even the locks, has been changed recently.
- 1.7 The rent of this house is fifty dollars, not including electricity and water.
- 1.8 This key doesn't fit this lock. You cannot open the door with it. If you don't believe me, try it.
- 1.9 The furnace has been repaired lately.
- 1.10 Do you want to change with me?
- 1.11 According to my opinion, it is not satisfactory.
- 1.12 Will you figure out how much it is altogether?
- 1.13 Five dollars cannot be considered cheap for this kind of pen.
- 1.14 We have set a time to have lunch together.
- 1.15 He and I decided that we will go to New York together by the three-o'clock train.
- 1.16 I have not decided yet whether I am going to rent the house or not.
- 1.17 I saved a piece of candy for him.
- 1.18 Will you please hold this room for a couple days? I'll give you five dollars deposit on it.

1.19 I have set aside some stationery for him, but I can't be sure he will come for it.

1.20 May I leave five dollars for him?

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(169) a. This house isn't mine. It's rented.
b. Is this house for rent?
c. This house has already been rented.

(170) a. How long have you been living here?

(172) a. He wants to sell his car, so he put an advertisement in the paper.

(173) a. This house is his.

(182) a. Have you started the furnace in your house?

(184) a. I don't like this red one very well. Will you please change it for a green one?
b. It's too cold. If you go out, you must change your clothes.

(187) a. Let's do what he says.
b. In my opinion, we are not going. What do you say?

(188) a. You go ahead. Don't count me in.
b. Fifty dollars can't be considered too much for this watch.

(189) a. He and I decided that we'll meet at 3:00 tomorrow.
b. I have to set a time to have a chat with him.

(191) a. He didn't come back in time for supper, so I saved some food for him.
b. I kept him for supper.
c. He insisted on going, but I persuaded him to stay.

(192) A: Tomorrow I'll go with you to visit your school.
B: O.K. let's do that.

DIJIŪKE - JIÈ JIĀJÙ

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. kànle fáng, huídao Zhàojia, zhǎo Zhào Tt. qu shāngliang.

Zhào Tt: Nín huílaile. Fángzi zhǎohǎole meiyou?

Sī: Kànle yisuǒr, gěile shíkuai qiánde dīngqian. Kěshi wǒ hái méijuéding ne. Wǒ xiǎng gen nín shāngliangshāngliang.

Zhào Tt: Zài nǎr a?

Sī: Dàxīlù sānshiwǔhào. Wǔjiān fáng.

Zhào Tt: Shì shénme yàngrde fángzi?

Sī: Shì xīshì. Kètīng, fàntīng, wòfáng, cháfáng, zǎofáng, yíyàngr yìjiān.

Zhào Tt: Fángzū duōshao qián?

Sī: Yíge yuè wǔshiwǔkuai qián, diàn shuǐ lìngwài suàn.

Zhào Tt: Zhēn piányi. Xiànzài zhèiyàngrde fángzi kě zhēn bùróngyi zhǎo. Búdài jiāju ba?

Sī: Duìle, búdài. Jiùshi yīnwei búdài jiāju, suóyi wǒ méijuéding.

Zhào Tt: Zhèiyàngrde fángzi xiànzài hěn nán zhǎo. Dìfang búcuò. Fángzū ye búguì. Wǒ kàn, nín jiu zū zhèisuǒr ba. Jiāju, wǒmen kéyi jiègei nín jijiàn. Dēng nín zǒude shíhou zai huángēi wǒmen.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Jiù nème bàn ba. Nín néng jiègei wo shénme jiāju ne?

Zhào Tt: Wǒmen yǒu yitào shāfā, kéyi yòng. Hái you yīguì, shūjià, chuáng, zhuōzi, yǐzi shénmede. Yǒude yěxǔ děi shǒushíle. Nín zuìhǎo xiān kànkàn néng yòng buneng.

Sī: Wǒ xiǎng dōu néng yòng. Wǒ bùjiǎngjiu. Fǎnzhèng wǒ jiùshi zhànshí yòng jǐge yuè. Cháfángli yòngde dōngxi xiàng pánzi, wǎn dou zai nǎr mǎi?

Zhào Tt: Zhèixiē dōngxi, nín zuìhǎo shì dēng zhǎole chúzi yǐhòu, jiao chúzi gei nín mǎi. Wǒmen xiān shuō kètīng ba. Shāfā, shūjià dōu yǒu. Yěxǔ dei mǎi yige xiǎo zhuōzi gēn yige dēng, jiu xíngle.

Sī: Dìtǎn nín yǒu ma?

Zhào Tt: Ò, duìle. Yǒu, jiùshi jiù yidiǎnr, kěshi ye búsuàn tài jiù. Nín kéyi kànkàn. Bùxíng zài shuō.

Sī: Nème wòfáng ne?

Zhào Tt: Wòfángde chuáng, yīguì, yǐzi dōu yǒu. Kàn nín hái xūyào shénme?

Sī: Wǒ xiǎng chuángdānzi, tǎnzi, zhěntou, zhěntoutào, háiyǒu chuānghu-
liánzi, dōu děi mǎi.

Zhào Tt: Duìle. Zhèixie dōngxī dàgài fēi mǎi bùkě. Fàntīngde dōngxī
kǒngpà yě dōu dei mǎi. Wǒ jiu yǒu yíge wǎngui, yěxǔ hái bùnéng
yòng. Línglingsuǐsude xiàng shǒujīn, yízi shénmede, yǒude nín
yǒu, jiu búyong mǎile. Méiyǒude děng yǐhòu xūyào shíhou, zai
yìdiǎnyìdiǎnrde mǎi ba. Nín shénme shíhou yǒu gōngfu, wǒ dài
nín xiān qu kànkān hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Dōu zai nǎr ne?

Zhào Tt: Jiù zài hòutou wūzili ne. Yàoshi nín méi shì, wǒ xiànzài jiu
gēn nín qù.

Sī: Hǎo. Wǒ méi shì. Qù kànkān qu ba.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

195. jiè	V: borrow, lend, loan
195.1 jiè(gei)	V: lend to
195.2 gēn...jiè	CV..V: borrow from
195.3 jiè qián	VO: borrow money, lend money

- Wǒ gēn ta jièle wǔkuai qián.
- Tā jiègei wo wǔkuai qián.
- Wǒ xiǎng jiè ni nèiběn shū kànkān.

196. jiāju	N: furniture (M: -jiàn, -tào)
196.1 dài jiāju	VO: be furnished, include furniture

- Nǐ zūde nèige fángzi, dài jiāju búdài?

197. shāngliang	V: discuss, talk over
-----------------	-----------------------

- Nèijian shìqing yòngbuzhào gēn ta shāngliang.

198. -shì	N: style, pattern fashion
198.1 xīshì	western style or fashion
198.2 Zhōngshì	Chinese style
198.3 xīnshì	modern style
198.4 jiùshì	old style
198.5 xīshì fángzi	western style house
198.6 xīshì jiāju	western style furniture
198.7 nánshì zhājī	southern fried chicken

199. lìngwài	A: besides, in addition to
	SP: other

- Wǒ hái lìngwài niàn yìdiǎnr biéde gōngkè.
- Búshì zhèige péngyou shuōde, shì lìngwài yíge (biéde) péngyou shuōde.

200. huán(gei)	V: return (borrowed money or things)
----------------	--------------------------------------

- Tā qùnián gēn wo jiède qián, hái méihuán wo ne, xiànzài yòu yao jiè.

201. -tào M: set of, suit of
 201.1 yítào jiāju set of furniture
 201.2 yítào yīshang suit of clothes
 201.3 yítào pánzi wǎn set of dishes
 201.4 yítào shū set of books
202. shāfā N: sofa (M: -gè, -tào)
203. guì(zi) N: chest, cabinet
 203.1 yī(shang)guì N: wardrobe, chest of drawers
 203.2 shūguì N: book shelf
 203.3 wǎnguì N: cupboard
204. jiàzi N: rack, shelf, frame
 204.1 shūjià(zi) N: book shelf, book case
 204.2 yīshangjià(zi) N: frame for hanging clothes, clothes hanger, clothes tree, clothes rack
205. shénmede N: and so on
 205.1 xiàng...shénmede such as...etc.
 a. Wǒ děi mǎi yidiǎnr yīzi, shǒujīn, yáshuā, yágāo shénmede.
 b. Xiàng zhuōzi, yīzi shénmede, nēige pùzi dōu hěn piányi.
206. jiǎngjiu SV: be meticulous, particular
 V: be meticulous or particular about;
 care a great deal about
 a. Tāmen jiālide jiāju, jiǎngjiujié.
 b. Tā nēige rén hěn jiǎngjiu chī.
207. zhànshí A: temporarily, for the time being
 a. Xīn qìchē tài guì. Wǒ zhànshí yòng zhèige jiùde ba.
208. -pán M: plate of, platter of
 208.1 yípán cài a dish of food
 208.2 pánzi... N: plate, platter, tray
 208.3 chápánzi tea tray
209. chúzi N: cook
210. dītǎn N: rug, carpet (M: -kuài, -zhāng)
211. xūyào V: need
 N: need
 a. Nǐ xūyào shénme dōngxì, gào sòng wǒ, wǒ gei nǐ mǎi.
 b. Nǐ yǒu shénme xūyào de shíhòu, qǐng biē kèqì.
212. chuángdānzi N: sheet
213. tǎnzi N: blanket (M: -kuài)
214. zhěntou N: pillow
215. liánzi N: curtain
 215.1 chuāng(hu)-liánzi N: drapes, shades, curtains

216. fēi...bùkě IE: must, it won't do otherwise

- a. Wǒ fēi dao Zhōngguo qu bùkě.
- b. Zhèijian shì, fēi tā bàn bùkě.

217. língsuì SV: odds and ends of, sundry
217.1 língqián N: small change
217.2 língsuì(de) shìqing sundry affairs
217.3 língsuì(de) dōngxì odds and ends, sundry articles
217.4 línglíngsuìsuìde sundries

- a. Wǒ jiù bǎ dà dōngxì bānzǒule. Língsuìde xiǎo dōngxì, wǒ dou méibān.
- b. Bānjiāde shíhou línglíngsuìsuìde dōngxì zuì máfan.

218. yìdiǎnyìdiǎnr(de) A: little by little

- a. Tā yìdiǎnyìdiǎnrde bǎ língsuìde shìqing dou zuòwánle.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Lend and Borrow:

In English, the difference between lending and borrowing is made clear by using different verbs to indicate these two actions. But in Chinese, the word jiè may mean either to borrow or to lend:

Wǒ jièle ta wǔkuai qián. (I borrowed \$5.00 from him.) or
(I lent him \$5.00.)

Although the meaning of jiè may be clear from the context, it is advisable to use distinctive forms to avoid possible ambiguity. For lending, the two following forms are most often used:

jiègei Wǒ jiègei ta wǔkuai qián. (I lent him \$5.00.)
jièchuqu Wǒ jièchuqu wǔkuai qián. (I lent out \$5.00.)

For borrowing, the most commonly used form is:

gēn.....jiè Wǒ gēn ta jièle wǔkuai qián.
(I borrowed \$5.00 from him.)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.11 My friend loaned me his car for a week.
- 1.12 He wanted to borrow \$5.00 from me, but I refused.
- 1.13 I don't own this book. I borrowed it from Mr. Wang.
- 1.14 If I were you, I wouldn't lend him that much money.
- 1.15 May I borrow your boat tomorrow?

2. The Use of Língwài:

Língwài is most commonly used as a movable adverb and as a specifier.

2.1 As a movable adverb it means "besides", "in addition".

(Língwài) Tā (língwài) gěile wǒ wǔkuai qián.
(In addition, he gave me \$5.00.)

(Lìngwài) Wǒ (lìngwài) yǒu yige hǎo biǎo.
(I have a good watch besides this one.)

2.2 As a specifier it means "another":

Nà shì lìngwài yìjiàn shìqing.
(That's quite another matter.)

Wǒ yào dào lìngwài yige dìfāng qù zhù jǐtiān.
(I'm going elsewhere to spend a few days.)

2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.31 I have another blanket like this.

2.32 I bought a watch for him besides (this one).

2.33 He didn't come here last Friday. It was another day he came.

2.34 That student has spent all of the \$500 he borrowed last month.
Now he borrowed another \$500.

2.35 It was another friend of mine who gave me that bookshelf.

3. Duó(me), Zěnmē, Zhènmē (Zěnmē) and Nènmē:

These are all adverbs, some of which are movable and some fixed.

3.1 The interchangeable forms duó and duómē are both fixed adverbs which immediately precede a stative verb only. They carry the two meanings of "how"--interrogative and exclamatory. Therefore, the sentence "Tā duómē gāo a" may be punctuated:

Tā duómē gāo a! (How tall he is!) or
Tā duómē gāo a? (How tall is he?)

depending on the intent and the context.

3.2 Zěnmē, when used as a fixed adverb immediately preceding a functionive verb, carries the meaning "in what way" and is generally stressed:

Nǐ zěnmē qù? (How are you going?)

But when used as a movable adverb, it means "why" or "how is it that", usually stressing the subject of the verb that it precedes or follows:

Zěnmē nǐ qù? (How is it that you are going?)
Nǐ zěnmē qù?

3.21 Zěnmē sometimes has the function of a verb. It usually appears in these forms:

Nǐ zěnmēle? (What is the matter with you?)

(Wǒ) méizěnmē. (Nothing.)

Nǐ shuō zěnmē(zhe) cai hǎo ne?
(What do you think should be done?)

3.22 Sometimes zěnme can also be used as a specifier:

Tā shì zěnme yige rén?
(What kind of a person is he?)

Zhè shì zěnme (yi)huí shì? (What happened?)

3.3 Zhème or zènme carries the meaning "so...", "like this", "in this way" and is a fixed adverb which immediately precedes the FV or the SV:

Wǒmen děi zhème bàn.
(We must handle the matter like this.)

Nǐ zěnme qùle zènme duō tiān ne?
(Why have you been gone for so many days?)

3.4 Nème has the meaning "so...", "like that", "in that way", when used as a fixed adverb:

Zhème bàn méiyóu nème bàn hǎo.
(Doing it this way is not as good as doing it that way.)

Tā zuò fàn zuòde nème hǎo, wǒ méi fázi gēn ta bǐ.
(Her cooking is so good that I cannot possibly compete with her.)

Nème, when used as a movable adverb, means "in that case":

(Nème) wǒ (nème) jiu búqùle.
(In that case, I will not go.)

Note that zhème and nème both mean "so..." in English. The difference is when "so good" means "this good---as good as this", "zhème hǎo" should be used; when "so good" means "that good--as good as that", "nème hǎo" should be used.

3.5 Like zěnme, zhème and nème sometimes have the function of a verb. In like manner, they are usually followed by (zhe):

Zhème(zhe) nǎr xíng a!
(This will never do!)

Nǐ yàoshi nème(zhe), wǒ jiu bùxǐhuan nǐ le.
(If you behave like that, I won't like you any more.)

3.6 Since duóme and zěnme are both question words, they can be used as indefinites too:

Bùzěnme hǎo.
(Not so good.)

Wǒ zěnme(zhe) tā dōu bùgāoxìng.
(She is displeased no matter what I do.)

Zhèige rén méiduó(me) gāo.
(This person isn't very tall.)

Duó(me) hǎo ye méiyòng.
(It's useless no matter how excellent it is.)

3.7 Zěnme can be combined with zhème or nème and together they mean "why is it that N is so..."

Zhèige zhuōzi zěnme zhème cháng a?
(Why is it that the table is so long?)

Tā zěnme nème huài a?
(Why is it that he is so bad?)

3.8 The use of duóme, zěnme, zhème and nème can best be illustrated in the form of questions and answers:

Zěnme xiě?	Zènme xiě.
Zěnme bàn?	Háishi nèmeyàng(r) bàn hǎo.
Duóme gāo?	Zhème gāo.
Zěnme(zhe) cai xíng ne?	Nème(zhe) jiu xíngle.
Zhè shì zěnme (yi)huí shì?	Shì zènme (yi)huí shì.
Tā shì zěnme yige rén?	Shì zhème yige rén.

3.9 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

3.91 Look, how beautiful she is!

3.92 Why is he so stupid?

3.93 I think he would be angry if we did it like this.

3.94 Why can't he rent out his house?

3.95 Why should we do it as he said?

3.96 No matter how he describes his house, I still wouldn't rent it.

3.97 A bathroom as good as this might cost one thousand dollars

3.98 Why haven't you decided yet?

3.99 I don't understand what this is all about.

4.00 If you do like this, it stops. If you do like that, it goes.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Nǐ dāsuan gēn ta jiè shénme?
Wǒ yao gēn ta jiè yige shùjiàzi.
2. Nǐ wèi shénme jiè tade qìchē.
Wǒ méigen ta jiè, shì ta yao jiègei wo de.
3. Nèijian shì, nǐ gen Zhāng Xs. shāngliangle ma?
Méiyou. Kěshi wǒ gen língwài yige péngyou shāngliangle.
4. Nǐ zhèikuai dìtǎn zhēn hǎo.
Zhèikuai búsuàn tài hǎo. Wǒ língwài yǒu yíkuai hǎode.
5. Tā jiè nǐde qián, huánle meiyou?
Huánle yidiǎnr. Hǎi méihuánwán ne.
6. Tā yòngde dōngxi dou jiǎngjiujǐle.
Zhēnde ma? Wèi shénme yao nème jiǎngjiu?

7. Nǐ xūyào de dōngxi dou mǎile ma?
Chàbùduō dou mǎile.
8. Nǐ wèi shénme fēi niàn Zhōngwén bùkě?
Wǒ yuànyì niàn.
9. Nǐ yǒu língqián meiyǒu?
Wǒ jiù yǒu jímào qián. Nǐ yào duōshao?
10. Yǒu shì chūntiān le.
Rìzi yìtiān yìtiān de guò de zhēn kuài.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. kànle fáng yǐhòu, hái méijuédìng zū bùzū de shíhou, tā qu zhǎo shéi shāngliang qule?
2. Zhào Tt. wèn Sī Xs. shénme? Tā gào song Zhào Tt. shénme?
3. Tā zūde fángzi dài jiāju búdài?
4. Zhào Tt. shuō nège fángzi zěnmeyàng? Piányi bùpiányi? Nèiyàngde fángzi róngyi zhǎo buróngyi zhǎo?
5. Zhào Tt. juéde tā yīngdāng zū nèisuǒr fángzi ma?
6. Nège fángzi búdài jiāju, Zhào Tt. shuō zěnmè bàn?
7. Zhào Tt. néng jiègei ta shénme jiāju ne? Jiède jiāju shénme shíhou huán ne?
8. Zhào Tt. yào jiègei ta de jiāju dōu shì xīnde ma?
9. Sī Xs. de kètīngli dou xūyào shénme jiāju? Wǒfáng ne? Fàntīng ne? Zǎofáng ne?
10. Sī Xs. děi yòng jiǎngjiude jiāju ma? Tā dei yòng duōshao rìzi?
11. Chúfángli yòngde dōngxi, tā yě jiè ma? Chúfángli dou xūyào shénme dōngxi?
12. Chúfángli yòngde dōngxi wèi shénme yào jiào chúzi mǎi?
13. Kètīnglide dōngxi, Zhào Tt. shuō tā yǒu shénme? Dōu děi mǎi shénme?
14. Zhào Tt. yǒu dìtǎn meiyǒu?
15. Wǒfánglide dōngxi, Zhào Tt. néng jiègei ta shénme? Tā hái děi mǎi shénme?
16. Fàntīnglide dōngxi, Zhào Tt. néng jiègei tā shénme? Nǐ xiǎng tā hái děi mǎi shénme?
17. Zhào Tt. shuō línglingsuǐsuǐde dōngxi zěnmè bàn?
18. Zhào Tt. yào jiègei ta de jiāju dou zài nǎr fàngzhe ne? Tāmen qu kànle ma?
19. Nǐ xiànzài zhùde fángzi shì zūde shì zìjǐde? Nǐ jiāli dōu yǒu shénme jiāju?
20. Nǐ xiànzài yòngde jiāju shì jiède shì zìjǐde? Háishi zūde? Dōu shì xīnshìde ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gēn nǐde péngyou jiè yiběn shū, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
2. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ jiè dōngxì, nǐ bùnéng jiègei tā, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
3. Nǐde péngyou xiǎng mǎi yiyàng dōngxì, nǐ yǒu nèige dōngxì, yuànyì jiègei tā. Nǐ zěnmē gēn ta shuō?
4. Nǐ kéyì bǎ nǐ jiālìde jiājù shuō yìshuō ma?
5. Yǒu rén gēn nǐ dǎtíng, dào Zhōngguó qù, dōu děi dài shénme jiājù, nǐ shuō shénme?

VII. Bèishū

A: Qǐng nín kànkàn zhèifēng xìn, guòzhòng búguò?

B: Shì jì píngxìn, shì jì hángkōngxìn?

A: Hángkōng xìn.

B: Guòle.

A: Děi duōshao yóufèi?

B: Yìmáoèr.

A: Qǐngwèn, dào Zhōngguode bāoguǒ néng jì bùnéng?

B: Nín děng wǒ kànkàn. Bùxíng.

A: Nín gěi wǒ shíge liùfēnde hángkōng yóupiào, shíge sānfēnde.

B: Hǎo. Yígòng jiǔmáo qián.

A: Zhèi shì jiǔmáo qián.

B: Xièxie.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 May I borrow the car you just bought?

1.2 I want to borrow some stamps from you.

1.3 I loaned him a curtain and some odds and ends.

1.4 He has not yet returned the blanket he borrowed. Now he wants to borrow some money.

1.5 I want to discuss this matter with him. Maybe he can help me out.

1.6 This is a modern-style house.

- 1.7 This watch is not fast but another watch of mine is.
- 1.8 I want to buy some other things too.
- 1.9 He's meticulous about his clothes.
- 1.10 I will use this old one temporarily.
- 1.11 He's a good cook.
- 1.12 Tell me what your need is.
- 1.13 Wait until I have sold these odds and ends.
- 1.14 I will handle those odds and ends, you don't have to bother.
- 1.15 We learned it little by little.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (195) a. I borrowed five dollars from him.
b. He loaned me five dollars.
c. I want to borrow that book of yours to read.
- (196) a. Is the house you rented furnished?
- (197) a. You don't have to discuss the matter with him.
- (199) a. I am taking some other courses too.
b. It wasn't this friend who said it, but another one.
- (200) a. He hasn't yet returned the money he borrowed from me last year. Now he wants to borrow some more.
- (205) a. I have to buy soap, towel, toothbrush, toothpaste, etc.
b. Things like tables and chairs, (etc.) are very cheap in that store.
- (206) a. Their home is very nicely furnished.
b. He is very particular about what he eats.
- (207) a. New cars are very expensive. I'd better use this old one temporarily.
- (211) a. Tell me what you need and I'll buy it for you.
b. Whenever you are in need of anything, please don't hesitate to let me know.
- (216) a. I simply must go to China.
b. Only he can handle this affair.
- (217) a. I moved out only the big things. I didn't touch any of the little odds and ends.
b. When you are moving, the odds and ends are most troublesome.
- (218) a. He finished all the odds and ends little by little.

DÌSHÍKÈ - GÙ CHÚZI

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. cóng Zhào jia bānchulai, xūyào yíge chúzi gěi ta zuòfàn. Tā yao qǐng Zhào Ziān Xs. gei ta jièshào yíge. Yǒu yítiān, Sī Xs. dao Zhào jia láiile. Dào le ménkǒu Zhào Xs. zhèng cóng mén litou chūlai.

Zhào: Ai! Sī Xs. cóng nǎr lái a?

Sī: Cóng jiā lái. Nín yào chūqu ma?

Zhào: Duìle. Búyào jìn, wǒ méi shenme yào jǐnde shì. Qǐng jìnlai zuò yihuǐr ba.

Sī: Búyòngle. Nín yǒu shì, nín zǒu ba. Wǒ míngtiān zài lái.

Zhào: Nín qǐng jìnlai ba. Wǒ bù máng.

Sī: Búyòng jìngule. Wǒ jiù yǒu yìliǎngju huà. Jiù zài zhèr shuō ba. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín gei wǒ jièshào yíge chúzi. Nín yǒu rènshide méiyǒu?

Zhào: Nín děng wǒ xiǎngxiǎng. Yǒu yíge xìng Lǐ de. Tǐng qínjin, yě chéngshì. Wǒ jiào ta míngtiān dào nín nǎr qu jiànjian nín qu ba. Nín kànkan ta chéng buchéng.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Wǒ míngtiān xiàwǔ buchūqu. Nín jiào ta qù ba. Hǎo! Wǒ zǒule. Míngtiān jiàn. Xièxie nín.

Zhào: Duìbuqǐ. Yě méi jìnlai hē diǎnr chá.

(Dièrtiān chúzi dao Sī Xs. jiā láiile.)

Sī: Nǐ xìng shénme?

Chúzi: Xìng Lǐ.

Sī: Nǐde míngzi jiào shénme?

Chúzi: Wǒ jiao Lǐ Yǒucái.

Sī: Nǐ shì zuò nánfang cài, hái shì běifang cài?

Chúzi: Wǒ dōu néng zuò. Xīcān wǒ yě néng zuò yìdiǎnr.

Sī: Wǒ zhèrde shìqing hěn jiǎndān. Jiùshì wǒ yíge rén chī fàn. Yǒu shíhou qǐng kè, kèshì qǐng kè de shíhou bùduō. Jiùshì qǐng kè, yě méiyǒu tài duōde rén. Gōngqian, Zhào Xs. gēn nǐ shuōqǐngchule ma?

Chúzi: Shuōqǐngchule.

Sī: Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ yòu qínjin yòu chéngshì. zuò cài yě zuòde hǎo. Nǐ néng cóng jīntiān qǐ, lái zuò shì ma?

Chúzi: Xíng. Gāngcái wǒ dao chúfáng kànle kàn, nín chúfángli yòngde dōngxi hǎoxiǎng dōu méiyǒu?

Sī: Duille. Wǒ zhèng yao gēn ni shuō. Wǒ xiǎng jiào ni qu gěi wo mǎi. Nǐ kàn dōu xūyào shénme?

Chúzi: Wǒ xiǎng tiāntiān yòngde pánzi wǎn, bōlibēi, kuàizi, dāozi chāzi shénmede, dàgài dōu dēi mǎi ba.

Sī: Dāochā, wǒ yǒu yitào. Chūfángli yòngde dōngxī, wǒ jiǎnzhíde yìdiǎnr dou bùdòng. Nǐ shuō mǎi shénme, jiù mǎi shénme ba. Dēng yihuǐr, wǒ xiān gěi ni yìdiǎn qián, nǐ qu měi qu. Měitiān wǒ qīdiǎn zhōng chī zǎofàn. Xiǎowú yìdiǎn zhōng chī wǎnfàn. Liùdiǎnbàn chī wǎnfàn. Píngcháng wǒ zǎofàn jiù chī liángge jīdàn, yībēi niú'nǎi, yǒu shíhòu chī yìdiǎnr kǎomiànbāo; júzishuǐ, měiyóu yē méi guānxi. Wǎnfàn wǒ chīde hěn shǎo. Shénme shēng shì jiù zuò shénme. Wǒ búyuànyì biéren wèi wo tèbié fèi shì. Wǎnfàn yǒu ròu, méi ròu, méi guānxi. Kěshì wǒ yào yìdiǎnr qīngcài. Shuǐguó yě bù'nán mǎi bú'lùn shì júzi píngguo xiǎngjiāo wǒ dou xīhuan chī. Nǐ kànzhe bàn hǎole.

Chúzi: Nín zhēn hǎoshuōhuà. Hǎo ba. Wǒ xiān chūqu mǎi dōngxī qu ba.

Sī: Hǎo. Nǐ xiān ná shíkuai qián qu. Bugòu, zàishuō.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

219. gù V: hire, employ (used with reference to the laboring class, compare with qǐng)
219.1 gù rén VO: employ people
219.2 gù yòngren VO: employ a servant
219.3 gù chúzi VO: employ a cook
219.4 gù chē VO: hire a conveyance

a. Wǒ dēi gù yige yòngren.

220. ménkǒur N: gate way, door way, in front of the door
220.1 jiā ménkǒur gateway of a home
220.2 pùzi ménkǒur entrance of a store

221. tǐng A: very
221.1 tǐng hǎo very good
221.2 tǐng shūfú very comfortable
221.3 tǐng yǒuyìsi very interesting

222. qínjin SV: be diligent, (referring to physical work)

a. Tā zuò shì fēicháng qínjin.

223. chéngshí SV: be honest, sincere

a. Nèige rén, duì ren hěn chéngshí.

224. míngzi N: name (M: -gè)
224.1 míngzi jiào... (his) name is...
224.2 qǐ míngzi VO: give a name, to name
224.3 jiào shénme míngzi? What is it called?

a. Wǒ xìng zhào, míngzi jiào Zhān.
b. Zhèige míngzi shì shéi gěi ta qǐde?

225. xīcān N: Western-style meal (M: -dùn)
226. jiǎndān SV: be simple
a. Tā shuōde huà, yòu jiǎndan, yòu qīngchu.
227. qǐng kè VO: invite guests, give a party
a. Zuótiān tā qǐng kè, nǐ zěnme méiqù?
228. jiùshi...yě... A: even if (in supposition)
a. Nǐ jiùshi yǒuqián, yě méi dìfang mǎi qu.
229. gōngqian N: wage
230. cóng...qǐ CV...V: from...on
a. cóng xiànzài qǐ, wǒ yídìng búzài hē jiǔle.
231. bōli N: glass, plastic
231.1 bōlide glass
231.2 bōli zuòde made of glass or plastic
231.3 bōli píbāo plastic hand bag
232. bēi(zi) N: cup, glass
232.1 -bēi M: glass of, cup of
232.2 jiǔbēi N: wine, cup or glass
232.3 chá bēi N: teacup
232.4 bōlibēi N: glass, tumbler
233. dāochā N: knife and fork (M: -fèn, -tào)
234. niú nǎi N: cow's milk
234.1 niú N: cow, ox, cattle
234.2 nǎi N: milk
235. kǎomiànbāo N: toast
235.1 kǎo V: toast, bake
235.2 miànbāo N: bread (M: -kuài for slice; -gè for loaf)
235.3 kǎomiànbāo VO: toast or bake bread
a. Qǐng nín gei wo kǎo yíkuài miànbāo.
236. júzi N: orange, tangerine
236.1 júzishuǐ N: orange juice
237. guānxi N: relation, connection, relevance
237.1 yǒu guānxi VO: to be related to, to be relevant
237.2 méi(you) guānxi VO: not related to, not relevant
237.3 méiguānxi IE: It doesn't matter, it's not important.
a. Zhèijian shì gēn nèijian shì yǒu hěn dàde guānxi.
b. A: duìbuqǐ
B: Méiguānxi
c. A: Nǐ juéde qù hǎo, búqu hǎo?
B: Qù buqù, méiguānxi.
238. shěng V: save (economize)
238.1 shěngshì/
shēng shì SV/VO: trouble-saving/save trouble

- 238.2 shěngqián/shěng qián SV/VO: economical/save money
 238.3 shěngshíhou/shěng shíhou SV/VO: time-saving/save time
- a. Bùyòng jìnchéng le. jiù zài fùjìn mǎi ba. Shěngshì.
 b. Wǒ děi shěng yidiǎnr qián le.
239. fèi V: waste, use a lot
 239.1 fèishì/fèi shì SV/VO: laborious/take a lot of work
 239.2 fèiqián/fèi qián expensive/cost money, take money
 239.3 fèishíhou/fèi shíhou time consuming/use time, take time
- a. Bié fèishì, nín yǒu shénme, wǒ jiù chī shénme.
 b. Zuò zhèige cài, fèile hěn duō shíhou.
240. wèi CV: for
 a. Zhèige biǎo wǒ shì wèi tā mǎide.
241. qīngcài N: green vegetables
242. shuǐguǒ N: fruit
243. búlùn(wúlùn) A: it doesn't matter, no matter what
 a. Búlùn shénme shíhou, tā dōu zài jiā.
244. kànzhe bàn IE: do as you see fit
 a. Nèijian shì, tā shuō jiào wǒmen kànzhe bàn.
245. hǎoshuōhuà SV: be affable, easy to get along with
 a. Tā búdà hǎoshuōhuà.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. The Various Uses of Question Words:

The most common question words in Peking Mandarin are:

shénme	zěnme	duóme	duōshao
shéi	nǎr	něi-M	jǐ-M

Although wèi shénme and shénme dìfang are single words in English (why, where), they are combinations of two words in Chinese, the literal translations of which are "for what" and "what place". Wèi shénme is a combination of CV-N and shénme dìfang one of N-N. Therefore, they are not considered as single words.

The eight question words listed above are not the same part of speech:

Noun:	shénme, shéi
Placeword:	nǎr
Specifier:	něi-
Numerals:	duōshao, jǐ-
Adverbs:	duóme, zěnme

It is worthy of note that the part of speech of a question word decides its position in a sentence.

1.1 We recall that all question words can be used as indefinites. In this usage, there are several common patterns, in one of which the question word (as indefinite) is preceded by a negative verb:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{bù} \\ \text{méi} \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{one of the indefinites}$

Nǐ dao zhèr lai yǒu shénme shì a? Wǒ méi shenme shì.
(What business brings you here? I am doing nothing.)

Nǐ dao nǎr qù? Wǒ búdao nǎr qù.
(Where are you going? I am not going anywhere.)

Tā zhāngde bùzěnme hǎokàn.
(She isn't too pretty.)

Wǒ méizěnme yòngxīn jiù huìle.
(I didn't put in any special effort and I learned it.)

Tā bùdāsuan gěi shéi shénme dōngxi.
(He isn't planning to give anyone anything.)

Rén shuō wǒ yǒuqián, kěshi wǒ méi duōshao qián.
(People say I am rich, but I don't have much money.)

1.2 Another use of the question word is that it may be preceded by búlùn, wúlùn or bùguǎn (any of which may be omitted) and followed by dōu or yě, indicating inclusive ideas such as "everyone" and "everything" or exclusive ideas such as "no one", "nothing" and "no matter...":

$\left. \begin{array}{l} (\text{búlùn}) \\ (\text{wúlùn}) \\ (\text{bùguǎn}) \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots \text{Indef.} \dots\dots \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dōu} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{yě} \dots\dots\dots \end{array} \right.$

Shéi dou méilái.
(No one came at all.)

(Búlùn) duó(me) hǎo wǒ ye bùxǐhuan.
(No matter how good it is, I don't like it.)

Tā (wúlùn) duōshao qián dou búmai.
(He won't sell it for any price.)

Zhèijian shì (bùguǎn) zěnme bàn ye bùxíng.
(No matter how this matter is handled, it won't do.)

Nèige rén (wúlùn) shénme dou búhuì.
(That person cannot do anything)

Zhèi sānběn shū (wúlùn) něiběn tā ye búniàn.
(He won't read any of these three books.)

Nǐ wèi shénme búqù? Wǒ shénme dou búwèi.
(Why aren't you going? For no reason at all.)

1.21 The above pattern with two alternatives replacing the question word in the middle gives the same inclusive or exclusive ideas:

(Búlùn) (shi) hǎo(de) (shi) huài(de), wǒ dōu mǎi.
(I will buy it no matter whether it is good or bad.)

(Wúlùn) (shi) zǎo (shi) wǎn, dōu chéng.
(It's all right no matter whether it is early or late.)

(Bùguǎn) (shi) hóngde (shi) lǜde, tā dōu bùxǐhuan.
(No matter whether it is red or green, he doesn't like it.)

(Búlùn) (shi) nǐ qù (shi) wǒ qù, dōu yíyàng.
(No matter whether you go or I go, it's the same.)

- 1.3 Inclusive expressions such as whatever, whoever, whenever, however, whichever take a two-clause pattern in Chinese:



Wǒ yào shénme (jiù) mǎi shénme.
(I buy whatever I want.)

Nǎr liángkuai wǒ (jiù) dào nǎr qù.
(I go wherever it is cool.)

Shéi yǒu gōngfu shéi qù, hǎo buhǎo?
(Whoever has time will go. Will that do?)

Něige piányi wǒ mǎi něige.
(I'll buy whichever is cheaper.)

Zěnde róngyi zěnde zuò. Bié fèi shì.
(Do it whichever way is easier. Don't waste effort.)

Tā zuòde fàn yào duōme hǎo jiù yǒu duōme hǎo.
(Her cooking is as fine as you can ask for.)

Nǐ géi wǒ duōshao wǒ yào duōshao
(I'll take as many as you give me.)

Xūyào jǐge ná jǐge. Bié dōu nǎzǒu.
(Take as many as you need. Don't take them all.)

- 1.4 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.41 I don't want anything.
- 1.42 He doesn't want to give anybody anything.
- 1.43 Whatever she says is always right.
- 1.44 I don't have anything to do.
- 1.45 He'll take whatever you want to give.
- 1.46 I'll leave whenever he arrives.
- 1.47 We don't have much money.
- 1.48 Whoever has money, she will marry.
- 1.49 I didn't live there for long.
- 1.50 No matter who tells me, I don't want to hear it.
- 1.51 I'll go wherever it is warm.
- 1.52 Everybody feels embarrassed to borrow money.
- 1.53 It doesn't matter who lent him the money; in any case he got it.
- 1.54 I don't want to borrow anything.
- 1.55 He isn't particularly fussy about clothing.

2. The Uses of zài:

Zài is a fixed adverb which carries at least two meanings, both of which are very common in usage:

- 2.1 It has the meaning of "again" and "some more", referring to the repetition of a previous action. In this sense it is stressed and is usually followed by V NU-M:

Tā yǐjīng mǎile yige, hái yào zài mǎi yige.
(He has already bought one and he wants to buy one more.)

Zuótiān tā dào Niǔyuē qùle. Míngtiān (hái) yào zài qù (yíci).
(He went to New York yesterday. Tomorrow, he will go again.)

- 2.2 When zài is preceded by a time expression or a clause with a verb other than the one after it, it has the meaning of "not until" and "before...". In this case, zài is often not stressed:

Nǐ chīwán fàn zai niànshū ba.
(You'd better finish your meal before you study.)

Wǒ jīntiān yǒu shì. Míngtiān zai qù hǎo buhǎo?
(I have something to do today. Let's not go until tomorrow.)

Note that zài, meaning "not until" and "before...", is usually used in a plan, command, resolution, request or suggestion.

- 2.21 The most common patterns in the use of zài, meaning "not until" are:

2.211 (s) xiān V, zai V (ba).

Nǐ xiān shuìjiào, zai chūqu (ba).

2.212 (s) děng V, zai V (ba).

Nǐ děng wǒ huílai zai zǒu (ba).

2.213 (s) xiān V, děng V zai V (ba).

Qǐng xiān hē yidiǎnr chá, děng Zhāng Tt. huílai, wǒmen zai chīfàn.

- 2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.31 I plan to go to New York again tomorrow.

2.32 Why don't you discuss it first before you decide?

2.33 Please take this book first; wait until tomorrow before I lend you the other one.

2.34 I saw a good looking girl the other day. I am going to see her again in a few days.

2.35 Wait until I have finished preparing my lessons before we go out.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Nǐ nège xīn gùde chúzi zěnmeyàng?
Tīng hào. You qínjīn you chéngshí.
2. Nǐ shénme shíhou qǐng kè?
Wǒ jiùshi qǐng kè ye buqǐng nǐ.
3. Nǐ yìtiān hē jībēi niú'nǎi?
Yǒu shíhou hē yìbēi, yǒu shíhou yìbēi dou buhē.
4. Wèi shénme jiào tā qu bàn ne?
Nèijian shì fēi tā bùkě.
5. Nǐ cóng shénme shíhou qǐ jiu bùchōu yān le?
Cóng shíyuè èrhào.
6. Wǒmen zai shénme dìfang jiàn ne?
Shénme dìfang hào, jiu zai shénme dìfang jiàn.
7. Tā zuò fàn zuòde zhēn hǎo.
Qíguàijíle. Tā zěnme zuò, zěnme hǎochī.
8. Nǐ shuō zěnme bàn hǎo?
Méi guānxi. Búlùn zěnme bàn dou xíng.
9. Dào fànguǎnr qu chīfàn ba. Shěng shì.
Shěng shì kěshì fèi qián. Zài jiā chīfàn yě búfèi shì.
10. Tā shuō míngtiān xià yǔ.
Búlùn xià yǔ búxià, fānzhèng wǒ yě dei qù.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shénme xūyào gù yige chúzi?
2. Tā gù chúzi zěnme gù?
3. Sī Xs. qu zhǎo Zhào Xs., zai shénme dìfang jiàn
4. Zhào Xs. kànjian Sī Xs. gen ta shuō shénme? Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
5. Tāmen liǎngge rén shì zài shénme dìfang tánde huà?
6. Zhào Xs. yào gei Sī Xs. jièshaode chúzi xìng shénme? Zhào Xs. shuō nège rén zěnme hǎo?
7. Zhào Xs. xiǎng jiào nège chúzi shénme shíhou qu jiàn Sī Xs.? shuō shénme shíhou qu hǎo?
8. Sī Xs. líkai Zhàojia de shíhou, Zhào Xs. gēn ta shuō shénme?
9. Chúzi dao Sī Xs. jiǎ qule, Sī Xs. dōu wèn ta shénme huà?
10. Nège chúzi huì zuò shénme cài?

11. Sī Xs. cháng qǐng kè ma? Tā qǐng kè de shíhou cháng qǐng hěn duōde rén ma?
12. Sī Xs. xiǎng ràng ta cóng shénme shíhou qǐ, qu zuò shì?
13. Chúfángli yòngde dōngxì Sī Xs. dōu yǒu ma? Ta dǎsuan zěnme bàn?
14. Sī Xs. Zhīdao buzhidao ta dou xūyào shénme dōngxì? Chúzi shuō dou xūyào shénme dōngxì?
15. Sī Xs. shénme shíhou chī zǎofàn? Shénme shíhou chī wǔfàn, shénme shíhou chī wǎnfàn?
16. Tā zǎofàn chī shénme? Wǔfàn chī shénme? Wǎnfàn chī shénme?
17. Nèige chúzi juéde Sī Xs. zěnmeyàng?
18. Nǐ gùguo yòngren meiyǒu? Nǐ xiǎng nǐ gù yòngren de shíhou děi wèn ta shénme?
19. Nǐ měitiān shénme shíhou chī zǎofàn? Shénme shíhou chī wǔfàn, shénme shíhou chī wǎnfàn? Dōu chī shénme?
20. Zuò chīde dōngxì, yǒude hěn hǎochī, kěshi fèishì; yě yǒude bú tài hǎochī, kěshi shéngshì. Nǐ yuànyì nēiyàng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xūyào yige chúzi, nǐ xiǎng nǐde péngyou gěi nǐ jièshào, nǐ zěnme gēn nǐ péngyou shuō?
2. Yàoshi nǐ gùle yige yòngren, nǐ dōu děi wèn tā shénme?
3. Nǐ dōu děi gào song tā shénme?
4. Nǐde chúzi wèn nǐ wǎnfàn yào chī shénme? Nǐ shuō shénme?
5. Nǐ xiǎng jiào nǐde yòngren gěi nǐ mǎi yidiǎnr dōngxì, nǐ zěnme gēn ta shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

.. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 Please hire a car for me.
- 1.2 He works very diligently.
- 1.3 If you are honest with others, others will be honest with you.
- 1.4 Don't you think this is very simple?

- 1.5 The words of the book are both clear and simple.
- 1.6 Even if he is diligent enough I still don't think he is suited to the job.
- 1.7 From that time on, I no longer drank liquor.
- 1.8 Since when did you stop beating your wife?
- 1.9 I will buy it, whenever I have the money.
- 1.10 I will give it to whomever you wish.
- 1.11 I will go wherever people are friendly.
- 1.12 It tastes good anyway she cooks it.
- 1.13 There isn't any relation between these two matters.
- 1.14 Let's eat in a restaurant, it will save a lot of trouble.
- 1.15 I don't like parties, they take too much time.
- 1.16 I don't think he can do it well, he is just wasting time.
- 1.17 No matter whether it is raining or not I have to go and buy some oranges.
- 1.18 No matter how much wages you pay him, he won't take the job.
- 1.19 He is very easy to get along with. No matter what you discuss with him, he will tell you to do as you see fit.
- 1.20 Since he says to do it this way, we'd better do it this way.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (219) a. I have to hire a servant.
- (222) a. He works very diligently.
- (223) a. That man is quite honest with people.
- (224) a. My last name is Zhào and my given name is Zǐān.
b. Who gave him this name?
- (226) a. What he said was both simple and clear.
- (227) a. Why didn't you go to his party yesterday?
- (228) a. Even if you had the money, there is no where to buy it.
- (230) a. From now on, I'm determined not to drink (liquor) anymore.
- (235) a. Please toast a piece of bread for me.
- (237) a. This matter is closely related to the other,
b. A: Excuse me.
B: It's all right.
c. A: Do you think it is better to go or not to go.
B: It doesn't matter whether you go or not.
- (238) a. You don't need to go to town. Buy it locally and save trouble.
b. I have to save some money.
- (239) a. Don't go to any trouble. I'll eat whatever you have.
b. It took a long time to make this dish.
- (240) a. I bought this watch for him.
- (243) a. He's at home any time of the day.
- (244) a. He told us to do as we see fit about that matter.
- (245) a. He's not very easy to get along with.

DÌSHÍYĪKE - Dǎ DIÀNHUÀ

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. bǎ ta xīn zūde fángzi shōushidéle, chúzi yě gùhǎole, xiǎng qǐng Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. dào tā zher lai chīfàn. Suóyī tā gei Zhào Xs. dǎ diànhuà, yào gēn tāmen dìng yige shíhou. Sī Xs. dìyíci dǎ diànhuà, diànhuà júlìde rén shuō:

Diànhuàjú: Yǒu rén shuōzhe huà ne, qǐng děng yiděng.

(Sī Xs. yòu jiào diànhuà.)

Sī: Wài! Nín nǎr a?

Diànhuàli: Xīnyǎ Gōngsī.

Sī: Láojià, qǐng wèn, nín diànhuà duōshaohào?

Diànhuàli: Wǔlíngyījiǔ.

Sī: Duìbuqǐ, cuòle.

(Sī Xs. bǎ diànhuà guàshang, yòu zhāixialai jiào diànhuà.)

Sī: Wài! Nín nǎr a?

(Diànhuàli shì Zhàojiade yòngren, hěn héqi.)

Yòngren: Wǒmen zhèr shì Zhàojià. Nín shì nǎr a?

Sī: Wǒ shì Sīmǐzī. Láojià qǐng Zhào Xs. jiē diànhuà.

Yòngren: Qǐng nín děng yihuǐr, bié guà, wǒ gei nín kànkān qu.

Zhào Xs.: (zai diànhuàli shuō:) Wái! Nín shì Sī Xs. ma? Wǒ shì zǎn ne.

Sī: Zhào Xs., nín hǎo ba? Wǒ méi shénme tèbiéde shì. Wǒ yǐjing bǎ wūzi shōushidéle, xiǎng qǐng nín gēn Zhào Tt. lai chī fàn, nín shénme shíhou yǒu gōngfu a?

Zhào: Duìbuqǐ, diànhuàlide shēngyin tài luàn, wǒ méitīngqīngchu. Qǐng nín dà diǎnr shēngyin shuō.

Sī: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín gēn Zhào Tt. dao wǒ zhèr lai chīfàn. Nín nēitian yǒu gōngfu?

Zhào: Hébi kèqi?

Sī: Búshì kèqi. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nimen dào wǒ zher lai kànkān.

Zhào: Wǒ hěn yuànyì qù, kěshì nèiren zhèi liǎngtiān yǒudiǎnr bùshūfu, zài chuángshang tǎngzhe ne, méiqǐlai.

Sī: Zěnmele?

Zhào: Bùxiǎode shì zěnme huí shì. Dàgài shì zhāole diǎnr liáng, shāngfēng le. Zuótian tā shuō yǒudiǎnr tóuténg. Yèli jiu kēsouqilāile. Jīntian zāoshang, qǐng dàifu lái kànle kàn, dǎle yìzhēn, shìle shì wēndùbiǎo, dàoshì méifāshāo. Dàifu shuō, duō hē yidiǎnr júzishuǐ, tāng yitāng, xiūxiūxi, jiu hǎole.

Sī: Děi liú diǎnr shén, zhèizhǒng tiānqi zuì róngyi zhāoliáng. Méishì yào ma?

Zhào: Dàifu shuō wǎnshang kéyi chī yidiǎnr àsīpǐlǐng.

Sī: Nín kàn nǐmen shénme shíhou cái néng lai ne? Bīfangshuō, xiàlibài chéng buchéng?

Zhào: Nà wǒ kě bùgǎnshuō. Wǒmen guò liǎngtiān zai dīng, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Hǎo ba, nème wǒ míngtiān dào nín nèr qu kànkàn Zhào Tt.

Zhào: Bùgǎndāng. Yàoshi nín yǒu gōngfu, qǐng guòlai tántan.

Sī: Hǎo. Míngtiān jiàn ba.

(Tāmen jiu bǎ diànhuà guàshàngle.)

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

246. dé

V: be ready

RVE: ready, completed

246.1 zuòdéle

RV: the job is completed

246.2 xiěbùdé

RV: writing cannot be finished on time

246.3 débuliǎo

RV: cannot be ready on time

246.4 liǎobude

IE: extremely, very; terrific

246.5 bùdéliǎo

IE: extremely, very; terrific

a. Xǐ zhèixie yīshang, jīntian dé?

b. Zhèige rén lǐhaide bùdéliǎo (liǎobude).

c. Nèige rén zhēn bùdéliǎo (Jiǎobude).

247. wài

EX: hello (used in telephone conversation only)

248. gōngsī

N: company, corporation

248.1 Xīnyǎ Gōngsī

N: New Asia Company

249. qǐngwèn

IE: may I inquire

a. Qǐngwèn, Xīnyǎ Gōngsī zài nǎr?

250. zhāi

V: take off (hat, flower, etc.) take down (picture, telephone receiver, etc.; opposite guà)

250.1 zhāixialai

RV: take off or down

250.2 zhāi huār

VO: pick flowers

a. Qǐng ni bǎ màozi zhāixialai, hǎo buhǎo?

251. héqi

SV: be friendly, affable

a. Zuò mǎimai, yídìng děi héqi.

252. guà V: hang (something)
 252.1 guàshang RV: hang up
 252.2 guàqilai RV: hang up
- a. Zhèizhang huàr, guàzai nǎr?
 b. Nǐ yào qǐng Lǐ Xs. jiē diànhuà ma? Bié guà, wǒ gei nín kànkàn ta zài jiā búzài.
253. shēngyin or shēngr N: sound, noise
- a. Zhèige qìchē yídìng huàile. Nǐ tīng. Zhèige shēngyin duóme tèbié!
 b. Qǐng dà diǎnr shēngr shuō.
254. luàn SV: be confused, in disorder, mixed up, helterskelter, in trouble
 A: confusedly, recklessly
 254.1 luàn shuō speak recklessly, not know what one is saying
 254.2 luànqībāzāo IE: in confusion
- a. Tā shuōde huà hěn luàn.
 b. Tā nà shì suíbiàn luàn shuō.
 c. Wǒde wūzi luànqībāzāo.
255. hébì A: why is it necessary to?
 255.1 hébì fēi...bùkě why insist on...? why must?
- a. Fùjìn mài yīshangde hěn duō, hébì yídìng dào chéng lǐtōu qu mǎi ne?
 b. Dào Niǔyuē qu, zuò huōchē yě hěn fāngbian, hébì fēi zuò fēiji bùkě?
256. nèirén N: my wife (polite remark)
 256.1 wǒ nèirén my wife (polite remark)
257. tǎng V: lie down
 257.1 tǎngxia RV: lie down, fall down
 257.2 tǎngzai chuángshang lie on the bed
- a. Tā tǎngzhe ne.
 b. Tā hē jiǔ hēduōle, zǒuzhe zǒuzhe, tǎngxiale.
258. xiǎode V: know
- a. Zhèijian shìqing, nǐ xiǎode ma?
259. zhāoliáng VO: catch cold
- a. Wǒ zuótian wǎnshang méiguān chuānghu, zhāole diǎnr liáng.
260. shāngfēng VO: catch cold
- a. Wǒ shāngfēng, shāngde hěn lǐhai.
 b. Wǒ yǒuyidiǎnr shāngfēng.
261. téng SV: ache
 261.1 tóuténg SV: have a headache
- a. Wǒde tóu hěn téng. or Wǒ hěn tóuténg. or Wǒ tóuténgde hěn lǐhai.

262. késou V/N: cough
 a. Tā shāngfēng le, zuótian yèli késoule bànyè.
263. -qilai RVE: start to, begin to; (also indicates success in attaining object of the action)
 263.1 kūqilaile RV: begin to cry
 263.2 dǎqilaile RV: begin to fight
 263.3 dǎdeqilái RV: will start to fight
 263.4 dǎbuqilái RV: will not start to fight
 263.5 chàngqi gēr laile RV: begin to sing
 263.6 xiàqi yǔ laile RV: begin to rain
 263.7 xiǎngbuqilái RV: do not remember
264. dàifu N: medical doctor, physician
 264.1 qīng dàifu VO: call a doctor
 264.2 kàn dàifu VO: see the doctor
 264.3 jiàn dàifu VO: see the doctor
 264.4 zhǎo dàifu kànbìng PH: see the doctor for an ailment
265. zhēn N: needle, pin
 M: stitch, shot, etc.
 265.1 dǎzhēn VO: inoculate
 a. Dàifu géi wǒ dǎle yizhēn.
266. wēndù N: temperature
 266.1 wēndùbiǎo N: thermometer
 266.2 shì wēndù VO: take temperature
 a. Nǐ shìshi tade wēndu gāo bugao?
267. fāshāo VO: have a fever
 a. Tā fāshōu fāde hěn gāo.
268. liúshén V/VO: take care/be careful
 a. Lù bùhǎo zǒu, qǐng liú diǎnr shén.
 b. Liúshén, qìchē lái.
269. àsīpíling N: aspirin (M: -piànr)
 269.1 chī àsīpíling VO: take aspirin
270. bǐfang N/V: example/describe with gesture
 270.1 bǐfangshuō V: for instance
 270.2 nǎ...zuò bǐfang take...for an example
 270.3 nǎ shǒu bǐfang PH: to describe with the hands
 a. Bǐfangshuō, yàoshi míngtian xià yǔ, wǒmen hái qù buqu?
 b. Nǎ zhèijian shì zuò ge bǐfang ba.
271. gǎn V: dare, venture
 271.1 wǒ gǎn shuō IE: I venture to say that, I'm sure
 271.2 bùgǎn shuō IE: one doesn't dare say, uncertain
 a. Wǒ yèli yíge rén bùgǎn dào nèige hēi wūzili qu.
 b. Wǒ bùgǎn shuō tā míngtian lái bulai.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. lái and qù as RV Endings:

Both lái and qù can be used as endings in resultative verbs. For example:

náilaile	méinálai	nádelái	nábulái
chūqule	méichūqu	chūdeqù	chūbuqù

Some of the resultative verbs of which lái and qù are directional endings are in turn commonly used as directional endings to form other resultative verbs. The most common ones are:

shàng	} {lái qu	E.g.:	náshanglai
xià		bānxiāqu	
jìn		pǎo jīnlai	
chū		sòngchūqu	
huí		fēihuīlai	
guò		zōngguòqu	

qílai (never qǐq')

náqilai (never náqiqu)

1.1 When there is an object, the directional ending which in itself is an RV may be split and the object inserted between its two parts. This is the most common form with the directional ending qilai:

Tā yìxiǎngqi ta mǔqin lai jiu kǔ.
Qǐng nǐ bānguo zhèige zhuōzi lai.

1.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.21 I have moved that table upstairs.

1.22 He has taken back the book he lent me.

1.23 The space is too narrow. I cannot drive through.

1.24 If I sell my car at this price, I'm sure I cannot buy it back for the same amount.

1.25 This mountain is not too high. I think I shall walk up.

2. The Various Uses of Qilai as an RV Ending:

Qilai as an RV ending has three common meanings:

2.1 It carries the meaning of "upward" like in:

náqilai zhànqilai bānqilai guàqilai zuòqilai

2.2 It may have the meaning of "into a close or constricted area" equivalent to the English word "-up":

suóqilai (lock up)
guānqilai (close up)
shōushiqilai (pack up)

2.3 It also may have the meaning of "start to and keep on going"

xiàqi yǔ laile (started to rain--and is still raining)
niànqi shū laile (took up studying--and is still going on)
dǎqi zhàng laile (started to fight--and is still fighting)

2.4 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.41 Before we finished talking, he started to sing.

2.42 When I arrived, they had started drinking already.

2.43 After having been in business for two years, he came home and took up studying again.

2.44 We'd better not talk about him. As soon as he is mentioned, I get mad.

2.45 As soon as I pick up the pen, I forget every single character I learned.

3. The Various Uses of Jiù:

Jiù is a fixed adverb and generally carries two meanings:

3.1 It means "only" and is generally used in the following patterns:

jiù V NU-M: Tā jiù gěile wǒ yíkuài qián.
(He only gave me a dollar.)

bù } V jiù(shi) V: Tā shénme dou buzhīdao, jiù(shi) zhīdao chīfàn.
méi } (He doesn't know how to do anything but eat)

V, jiù(shi) { bù } V: Wǒ shénme dou dài le, jiù(shi) méidài qián.
{ méi } (I brought along everything except money.)

Note that jiù in this sense generally receives a stress.

3.2 When the jiù clause is preceded by a time expression or another clause, jiù indicates the short elapse between the two. Jiù in this sense may be translated as "then" although in English the word is seldom used. In this sense, jiù is seldom stressed:

Fàn hǎole, wǒmen jiu chī ba.
(When dinner is ready we'll eat.)

(Dào) nèige shíhou, wǒ dàgài jiu zhīdaole.
(I will probably know by then.)

Tā děng yihuǐr jiu huí laile.
(He'll be back after a while.)

Wǒ chīle fàn jiu huí jiā.
(I'll go home right after the meal.)

3.21 Because jiù indicates a short lapse between the jiù clause and the time expression or another clause preceding it, only words which further stress the fact, like lìkè, can be added before jiù:

Tā lái le, lìkè jiù zǒu le.
(He came but he immediately left.)

Expressions which contradict this fact, like hěn jiǔ, cannot be added before it as in the following wrong statement:

Tā lái le, tánle hěn jiǔ, jiù zǒu le.
(He came and chatted for a long time, and (then) left.)

3.22 Sentence particles le and ba are often used but never ne except in a question.

3.23 The fact that yi, meaning "as soon as", may be added before the verb in the first clause further indicates the short elapse:

Tā yí dào, wǒ men jiù zǒu.
(We'll leave as soon as he arrives.)

3.3 The time expression or clause preceding the jiù clause may express a condition to what follows:

Yàoshi míngtiān, wǒ jiù bú qù le.
(If it is tomorrow, (then) I will not go.)

Yàoshi tā zài shuō yí ge zì, wǒ jiù dǎ tā.
(If he speaks one more word, I will punch him in the nose.)

Yīnwei tā lái le, suǒyǐ wǒ men jiù qǐng tā chī fàn.
(Because he came, we asked him to supper.)

3.4 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

3.41 I have only five dollars.

3.42 He will pay you tomorrow.

3.43 He only lent me a little more than five hundred dollars.

3.44 I will read the second book, as soon as I finish the first one.

3.45 If he should give me money, I would buy it.

3.5 Exercise - Make sentences:

3.51 ...de shíhòu, ...jiù...

3.52 ...yíqián, ...jiù...

3.53 ...gāngcái, ...jiù...

3.54 ...gù chūzi, ...jiù...

3.55 ...mǎibuzhào, ...jiù...

IV. Fāyīn liànxí

1. "Zhèijian yíshang shénme shíhòu dé?" "Xiàlibaiyī jiù dé le."
2. "Wèi shénme bǎ huà zhāixialai?" "Wǒ yào guà lìngwài yìzhāng."
3. "Shuō huà tǐng héqide nèiwei tàitai shì shéi?" "Wǒ yě búrènshi."
4. "Wǒ méitīngjiàn. Qǐng ni dà diǎnr shēngr shuō." "Méitīngjiàn jiù suànle."
5. "Zěnme le? Tóuteng ma?" "Búshi. Wǒ yào tǎngxia xiūxi-xiūxi."

6. "Wǒ zhèi liangtian lǎo késou." "Děi liú diǎnr shén."
7. "Luànqibāzāode shìqing, wǒ búyuànyì guǎn." "Shéi yuànyì guǎn re?"
8. "Nǐ wèi shénme búràng dàifu gei ni dǎzhēn?" "Dǎzhēn tài téng."
9. "Nǐ shì wēndùbiǎo le méiyǒu?" "Shìle. Méifāshāo."
10. "Zhèiběn shūlide zì, nǐ dou rènshi ma?" "Bùgǎn shuō dōu rènshi, kěshi ye chàbùduō."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. Wèi shénme gěi Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. dǎ diànhuà?
2. Tā diyici dǎ diànhuà de shíhou, diànhuàjúlìde rén shuō shénme?
3. Sī Xs. dièrci jiào diànhuà, tā dǎdao shénme dìfang qu? Tā tīngjian diànhuàlìde shēngyīn búduì, tā shuō shénme?
4. Sī Xs. disānci jiào diànhuà, shì shéi jiēde diànhuà? Nèige rén jiē diànhuà de shíhou shuō shénme?
5. Sī Xs. yào qǐng Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. dào tā nèr qu chīfàn, zài diànhuàlì tā shì zěnme shuōde?
6. Sī Xs. zài diànhuàlì shuōde huà, Zhào Xs. tīngqīngchule méiyǒu? Wèi shénme? Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?
7. Sī Xs. qǐng Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt., tāmen wèi shénme bùnéng qu?
8. Zhào Tt. zěnme le? Zhào Xs. zhīdao shì zěnme huí shì ma? Tā xiǎng shì zěnme huí shì?
9. Tāmen qǐng dàifu kànle méiyǒu? Dàifu shuō shénme le?
10. Zhào Tt. fāshāo le méiyǒu? Késou bùkésou? Tóuteng bùtóteng?
11. Dàifu gěi Zhào Tt. shì wēndùbiǎo le méiyǒu? Kǎi yàofāng le méiyǒu?
12. Zhào Tt. chī yào le méiyǒu? Tā chīde shì shénme yào?
13. Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt., nǐtīan néng dào Sī Xs. jiā qù ne?
14. Sī Xs. yào qu kàn Zhào Tt. ma? Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?
15. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ shuō huà, nǐ méitīngqīngchu, nǐ shuō shénme?
16. Nǐ jiē diànhuà de shíhou, yàoshi diànhuàlìde rén shuō "cuòle", nǐ zěnme bàn?
17. Yàoshi nǐde péngyǒu bìngle, nǐ zěnme bàn?
18. Shénmeyàngde tiānqì zuì róngyì zhāoliáng?
19. Yàoshi shāngfēngle, yīngdāng chī shénme yào? Yīngdāng zuò shénme?
20. Dàifu kànbing de shíhou, dōu zuò shénme shì?

VI. Nǐ shuō shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ dǎ diànhuà dǎcuòle, nǐ shuō shénme?
2. yàoshi nǐ jiē diànhuà, diànhuàli zhāo nǐ jiālìde rén jiē diànhuà, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Yàoshi nǐ jiē diànhuà de shíhou, diànhuàde shēngyīn búda qīngchū, nǐ měitīngjian diànhuàli shuōde shì shénme, nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
4. Nǐde péngyou yǒubìng, dàifu láiile, nǐ yào bǎ nǐ péngyoude bìng gēn dàifu shuō yíshuō, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
5. Yǒu rén qǐng nǐ chīfàn, nǐ bùnéng dīng shénme shíhou néng qù, nǐ zěnmē shuō?

VII. Bèishū

A: Nín shì shénme shíhou dào de?

B: Gāng dào.

A: Wǒ bùzhīdao nín jǐdiǎn zhōng dào. Méidào chēzhàn jiē nín, zhēn duìbuqǐ.

B: Wǒ pà nín kèqì, suóyì méigǎn gào sòng nín.

A: Nín zài zhèr zhù jǐtiān?

B: Dàgài, liǎngsāntiān.

A: Nàme míngtiān xiǎowǔ wǒmen zài yíkuàir chī wǎnfàn ba.

B: Bié kèqì.

A: Wǒmen hěn jiǔ méijiànle. Tán yítán. Míngtiān xiǎowǔ liùdiǎn, wǒ lái jiē nín, hǎo buhǎo?

B: Nín tài kèqile. Hǎo, wǒ děng nín ba.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 When will dinner be ready?

1.2 I just hung up that picture; who took it down?

1.3 He called me up and asked for a date on Saturday. As soon as I told him that I might be busy that day, he hung up.

1.4 He said that he wants me to put Mr. Lǐ on the phone, I told him to hold the wire. He didn't quite understand. He hung up.

1.5 Will you please say it softly?

1.6 It is very noisy out on the street.

1.7 Why go to all that trouble?

1.8 Last night I saw a man, who was drunk, I guess. He was lying in a trolley car.

1.9 He said he had a splitting headache. I think he had a bad cold.

1.10 I wanted to take his temperature but I couldn't find the thermometer.

- 1.11 I told the doctor that I had a bad cough. He gave me a "shot".
- 1.12 The weather is very cold. We have to be careful.
- 1.13 For instance, the first year you pay ten dollars, the next year you pay five.
- 1.14 Let's take this sentence as an example.
- 1.15 Do you dare to say that you are not afraid of your wife?

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (246) a. How many days will it take to wash these clothes?
b. This person is terribly stern.
c. That man is terrific.
- (249) a. I beg your pardon. Where is Xīnyǎ Co.?
- (250) a. Won't you please take off your hat?
- (251) a. One has to be friendly to do business.
- (252) a. Where shall we hang this picture?
b. Do you want to talk to Mr. Li? Hold the wire. I'll see whether he is in or not.
- (253) a. I'm sure there is something wrong with the car. Listen! How peculiar it sounds!
b. Please talk a little louder.
- (254) a. What he is saying is all mixed up.
b. He doesn't know what he is saying.
c. My room is a mess.
- (255) a. There are quite a few clothing stores around. Why must we go into town to buy them?
b. It's very convenient to go to New York by train. Why do you insist on going by air?
- (257) a. He is lying down.
b. He drank too much and fell down after walking a few steps.
- (258) a. Do you know anything about this matter?
- (259) a. I didn't close the window last night and caught a little cold.
- (260) a. I have a bad cold.
b. I have a little cold.
- (261) a. I have a splitting headache.
- (262) a. He had a cold and coughed half the night last night.
- (265) a. The doctor gave me an injection.
- (266) a. Will you take his temperature and see whether it is high or not.

- (267) a. He has a very high temperature.
- (268) a. The road is not good. Please be careful.
b. Watch out, a car is coming.
- (270) a. For instance, shall we go tomorrow if it rains?
b. Let's take this as an example.
- (271) a. I dare not go to that dark room by myself at night.
b. I am not sure whether he is coming or not.

DISHIERKE - DIU DONGXI

I. Duihua

Zhao Xs. jiāli diūle dōngxī le. Jǐngchájú pài rén lái kànkān. Zhao Xs. gēn jǐngguān jǐngchá shuō:

Zhào: Qǐng nín dào zhèijian wǒli lái kànkān ba. Qiángshang yǒu yige dòng. Dōngxī dōu shì cóng zhèr nòngchūqude.

Jǐngguān: Zhè shì yèli shénme shíhou de shìqing?

Zhào: Wǒ yě shuōbuqīngchu. Wǒ shì shíyīdiǎnbàn tǎngxiade. Dàgài tǎngle yǒu sānwūfen zhōng, jiù shuǐzháole. Yèli méitīngjian shénme shēngyīn. Jīntian zǎoshang cái kànjian dōngxī méile.

Jǐngguān: Dōu diūle shénme le?

Zhào: Yǒu shǒushi, yǒu yīfu. Wǒ kāile yizhang dānzi. Nín kànkān.

Jǐngguān: Dōngxī dōu fàngzai nǎr le?

Zhào: Fàngzai guǐzili le.

Jǐngguān: Zhèige guǐzi suǒzhe meiyǒu?

Zhào: Suǒzhe ne. Zhèige guǐzi zǒngshì suǒzhe. Kěshì zuótian wǎnshang, wǒ bǎ yàoshi fàngzai zhuōshang le. Jīntian zǎoshang wǒ qīlai, kànjian qiángshang yǒu yige dòng. Wǒ gǎnjīn jiù kàn zhèige guǐzi. Zhèige guǐmēn guānde hǎohǎorde. Yǒu yīkàn, yàoshi zai dīxia ne. Wǒ jiù gǎnjīn kāi nèige guǐzi, yīkǎi, jiù kāikaile. Zài yīkàn, dōngxī dōu méiyǒule.

Jǐngchá: Yígòng zhǐ duōshao qián?

Zhào: Dàgài yígòng zhǐ liǎngqiānduokuài. Wǒ nèizhang dānzishang dou xièzhe ne.

Jǐngguān: Ò, duīle. Wǒ kàn nín zhèizhang dānzi, xiěde hěn qīngchu. Wǒmen xiān nǎhuiqu kànkān, xiǎng fázi gěi nín zhǎo ba.

Zhào: Xièxie nín.

(Wǎnshang, Sī Xs. tīngshuōle. Tā dào Zhaojia lai kànkān.)

Sī: Wǒ tīngshuō nín zhèr zuótian wǎnshang chūle diǎn shì, shì zěnme huí shì?

Zhào: Hài. zāogāo. Zhēn dǎoméi. zuótian yèli yǒu zéi, bǎ wǒde yīfu gēn nèirende shǒushi dōu tōuqule.

Sī: Dōu diūle shénme le?

Zhào: Wǒ diūle liǎngtào xīfú, yíjiàn dàyī. Hái yǒu diǎnr línglingsuǐsuǐde chènshān, kùzi shénmede. Dào shì bùzhǐ duōshao qián. Kěshì wǒ nèirende shǒushi, yàoshi xiànzài mǎi, kǒngpà děi liǎngqiānduōkuài.

Sī: Hài. Zhēn méixiǎngdào. Nín fàngzai nǎr le?

Zhào: Dōu zài nèijiān wūzide guǐzi litou. Jīntian zǎoshang wǒ dào nèijiān wūzi yíkàn, qiángshang yǒu yige dà dòng. Wǒ gǎnjīn kāi guǐzi kàn, yíkàn, dōu méiyǒule. Xīngkuī wǒde qián méifàngzai nèr, yàoshi fàngzai nèr, yě diūle.

Sī: Nín méizhǎo jǐngchájú ma?

Zhào: Jīntian zǎoshang wǒ yìzhīdào, jiu lìkè gei jǐngchájú dǎle yige diànhuà. Jǐngchájú pài jǐngguān, jǐngchá, lái kànle bàntiān. Tāmen shuō tāmen gei wǒmen zhào. Kěshi zhǎodezhào, zhǎobuzhào, shéi gǎn shuō?

Sī: Nín bǎoxiǎn le meiyǒu?

Zhào: Bǎole. Kěshi bǎode búgòu. Yígòng cái bǎole yìqiānkuài qián. Xīngkuī bǎoxiǎn le, yàoburén, nà kě zhēn bùdéliào. Suǐrán shì bǎoxiǎn le, kěshi wǒ háishi yuànyì néng bǎ dōngxī zhǎohuilai.

Sī: Nà shì dāngrán. Wǒ xiǎng yěxǔ zhǎodezhào. Bié zhāojí. Zhāojí búshi yě méiyǒng ma?

Zhào: Wǒ bùzhāojí. Yùnqi bùhǎo, jiu shénme dōu búyòng shuōle.

II. Shēngzi Yòngfǎ

272. jǐngchá
272.1 jǐngchájú

N: policeman
N: police department

273. jǐngguān
273.1 guān

N: police officer
N: officer

274. pài

V: select, appoint or sent (someone to do something)

a. Wǒmen jiāde shuǐguǎnzi huàile. Qǐng nǐ pài yige rén lái shōushishōushi ba.

275. dòng
275.1 shāndòng

N: hole
N: cave

276. nòng

V: arrange, take care of, see to, tend to, handle.

276.1 nònghuàile

RV: bread (something)

276.2 nònghǎole

RV: it's been fixed

276.3 nòngzǒu

RV: take away

276.4 nòngcuòle

RV: made a mistake, didn't do it right

a. Nèijiān shìqing, tā méinòngqīngchu.

277. shǒushi

N: jewelry (M: -jiàn)

278. yīfu

N: clothes (M: -tào for suit, -jiàn for piece)

279. kāi

V: make out, write out (a note, slip, etc.)

279.1 kāi yige tiáor

VO: write a note

279.2 kāixialai

RV: list

280. dānzi N: list (M: -zhāng, -gè)
 280.1 càidānzi N: menu
 280.2 chuángdānzi N: bed sheet (M: -chuáng, -gè)
 280.3 kāi dānzi VO: make out a slip
- a. Nǐ bǎ ni píbāolide dōngxi dāi yizhāng dānzi, yíyangr yíyangrde dōu kāixialai.
281. zhí V: be worth (so much)
 281.1 zhí qián/zhíqián VO/SV: be worth (so much) money/be valuable
 281.2 zhíde AV: worth while
- a. Tā nèijian pídayī, hěn zhíqián.
 b. Zhèige biǎo zhí duōshao qián?
 c. Zhèitao yīshang, sānshiwukuài qián, zhí buzhi?
 d. Nèiběn shū zhēn zhíde kàn.
282. chūshì VO: have something go wrong, have an accident
- a. Tīngshuō nèige fēiji chūshìle.
 b. Tā kāi qìchē chūle diǎnr shì, pèngle yige rén, kěshi pèngde bútai lǐhai.
283. zāogāo SV: what a mess! too bad
- a. Zhēn zāogāo! Tā zhèi liangtiān zǒng diū dōngxi.
 b. Zāogāo! Wǒ wàngle dài nèiběn shū le. Jīntian fēi yòng bùkě.
284. dǎoméi SV: be unlucky
- a. Cóng qùnian qǐ, wǒmen jiā cháng chūshì, zhēn dǎoméi!
285. zéi N: thief
286. tōu V: steal
 286.1 tōuzhe A: stealthily, secretly
 286.2 tōutōurde A: stealthily, secretly
- a. Tāmen jiā, yòu ràng zéi tōule.
 b. Zéi dōu tōu dōngxi. Nǎr yǒu bùtōu dōngxi de zéi!
 c. Tā tōuzhe gēn wǒ shuō, pà biéren tīngjian.
 d. Tā zuótian wǎnshang, huíjiā tài wǎnle. Suóyi tā bǎ xié tuōle, tōutōurde jìnqule.
287. xīfú N: Western-style clothes (M: -tào)
288. pídayī N: fur coat (M: -jiàn)
 288.1 dàyī N: overcoat (M: -jiàn)
289. chènshān N: shirt (M: -jiàn)
290. kùzi N: pants, trousers (M: -tiáo)
291. méixiāngdào RV: didn't expect
- a. Wǒmen dōu zhīdao ta bùlái. Méixiāngdào ta lái.

292. xìngkuī A: fortunately
a. Xìngkuī jīntian wǒ méidào Niūyuē qu. Yàoshi qule, zhème dàde xuè, wǒ zěnmé huí lai?
b. Wǒ xìngkuī dài qián le; yàoburán, qǐngkè, méi qián, nà duǒme zāogāo!
293. bǎoxiǎn VO: buy insurance, guarantee
 V/SV: guarantee/be safe
293.1 bǎohuǒxiǎn VO: buy fire insurance
a. Nǐde fángzi bǎo huǒxiǎn le meiyǒu?
b. Wǒ gǎn bǎoxiǎn, tā jīntian yídìng bùlái.
c. Qián lǎo fàngzai jiālǐ, kǒngpà búbǎoxiǎn ba.
294. yùnqi N: luck, fortune

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. The Bǎ Construction:

Bǎ is a CV and the basic pattern of sentences using bǎ is:



The O after bǎ in most cases is the object of the following V. This object is brought to the front of the verb by the bǎ. A simple sentence may have three patterns:

- The regular S V O construction: Tā guānshang mén le.
The inverted object construction: Mén, tā guānshangle.
The bǎ construction: Tā bǎ mén guānshangle.

1.1 The object brought to the front of the verb is generally a specific object and not a general one. The mén mentioned in the third illustration above refers to "nèige mén" (the door), "nèixie mén" (the doors), "suǒyǒude mén" (all the doors), etc. and not to doors in general.

1.2 An object preceded by a NU-M requires special consideration as to whether it may be brought to the front of the verb or not. Such an object without a specifier is usually a general object and does not fit the bǎ pattern. Thus, the regular SVO pattern serves best:

Tā bānzǒule sānge zhuōzi. (meaning "any three tables")

The bǎ pattern: Tā bǎ sānge zhuōzi bānzǒule, - is considered inadequate unless a specifier or an inclusive adverb is added:

- Tā bǎ nèisānge zhuōzi bānzǒule, (or)
Tā bǎ sānge zhuōzi dōu bānzǒule, (or)
Tā bǎ nèisānge zhuōzi dōu bānzǒule.

1.3 When the main verb is gàosong, gěi or a compound verb with gěi as post-verb, there are usually two objects, (direct and indirect):

Qǐng nǐ gào sòng wǒ nèi jian shì qing.
Tā jiào wǒ gěi tā nèi ben shū.
Wǒ dǎsuan jiè gei tā wǔ kuai qián.

In such a case, the second (direct) object may be brought to the front of the verb by bǎ:

Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèi jian shì qing gào sòng wǒ.
Tā jiào wǒ bǎ nèi ben shū jiè gei tā.
Wǒ dǎsuan bǎ zhèi wǔ kuai qián jiè gei tā.

Note that the second object in the third illustration is specified when brought to the front.

- 1.4 After a bǎ construction, the main verb must be followed by a complement of some sort. It may be:

- 1.41 le: Wǒ bǎ tā dǎ le.
1.42 RVE: Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi ge zhuō zi bān kai.
1.43 (zai) PW: Wǒ bǎ tā de shū fàng zai zhèr le.
1.44 Reduplication of the verb: Nǐ bǎ nèi ben shū kàn kan.
1.45 NU-M: Wǒ bǎ nèi ben shū kàn le yí cì.

- 1.5 The negative adverb in a bǎ sentence is attached to the bǎ or to the AV preceding it if there is one, and is rarely in front of the main verb or the adverb immediately preceding it:

Bié bǎ táng dòu chī le.
Wǒ bú yuànyì bǎ qián dòu yòng le.
Wǒ yuànyì bǎ qián bú dòu yòng le. (not recommended)

- 1.6 The potential form of an RV cannot be used as the main verb in a bǎ sentence.

2. The Various Uses of cái:

cái is a fixed adverb and usually has one of two meanings:

- 2.1 It means "only" when it is followed by a NU-M expression:

- 2.11 cái V NU-M: Tā cái sǐ le yí ge yuè.
2.12 cái NU-M: Xiànzài cái sān diǎn zhōng.

- 2.2 It means "then and only then", "not until" and refers to the action or time element before the cái clause:

Wǒ míng tiān cái zǒu ne. (I'm not going until tomorrow.)
Tā chī wán le fàn cái zǒu de. (He didn't leave until after he had his meal.)

Note ne or de is often used at the end of the sentence, to indicate future action or to stress the time element or some action other than that of the main verb.

- 2.21 cái cannot be used in command or request, therefore a sentence using cái in its sense cannot end with a suggestive ba.

- 2.22 Between the cái clause and the time or some other action clause preceding it, a third clause may be inserted to indicate elapse of a third action between the two:

Tā chīwán fàn, you zuòle bàntiān, cái zǒude.
(After he finished eating, he stayed for a long time before he left.)

- 2.23 The clause before the cái clause often serves as the condition to the latter:

Yàoshi míngtiān, wǒ cái néng qù ne.
(I can only go if it is tomorrow--meaning, only then I can go.)

Yídìng děi tā lái, wǒ cái gěi qián ne.
(He must come before I pay.)

Yīnwei tā lái, wǒ cái gěide qián.
(I paid only because he came--meaning, only then I paid.)

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Jǐngchájú pài rén qu kànle meiyóu?" "Pàile yíge jǐngguān, liǎngge jǐngchá."
2. "Shéi bǎ zhèige suǒ nòngguàile?" "Bùzhīdào. Nǐ huì shòushi búhuì?"
3. "Zhèi shi shéi kǎide dānzi?" "Wǒ. Wǒ bǎ yao mǎide dōngxi dou kāixialaile."
4. "Nǐ kàn zhèige biǎo zhí duōshao qián?" "Wǒ bùgǎn shuō. Nǐ shuō zhí wúshikuai qián bùzhī?"
5. "Huǒji, ná cǎidānzi lai." "Lìkè jiu lái."
6. "Zěmele? Diūle shénme le?" "Zǎogāo. Qìchē diūle."
7. "Nèige dìfang chūle shénme shì le?" "Qìchē pèng rén le."
8. "Nǐ wèi shénme tōutōurde gen ta shuō?" "Pà biéren tīngjian."
9. "Wǒ zuótian xìngkuī tōuzhe zǒule." "Nǐ Pà shénme?" "Yàoburán ta yòu yao gen wǒ jiè qián."
10. "Nǐde qìchē bǎoxiǎnle meiyóu?" "Xìngkuī bǎoxiǎnle, yàoburán zhèikuai buōli děi shíjikuài."

V. Wèntí

1. Zhào Xs. jiāli chūle shénme shì le? Shénme dìfang pài rén láiile? Pài shénme rén láiile?
2. Dōngxi shì cóng shénme dìfang nòng chūqude?
3. Zhào Xs. zhīdao bùzhīdao dōngxi shi yèli shénme shíhou diūde? Tā shi jīdiǎn zhōng tǎngxiade? Shì shénme shíhou shuǐzhǎolede?

4. Zhào Xs. yèli tīngjian shénme shēngyin meiyou? Dōngxī diūle, tā shì shénme shíhou zhīdaode?
5. Tā dou diūle shénme dōngxī le? Diūlede dōngxī ta fàngzai shénme dìfang le?
6. Zhào Xs. de guì suǒle méisuǒ? Tā bǎ yàoshi fàngzai shénme dìfang le?
7. Tā zǎoshang qǐlai zěnme zhīdao diūle dōngxī le? Tā kànjian yàoshi zai shénme dìfang ne?
8. Tāde dōngxī yíòng zhí duōshao qián?
9. Nǐ xiǎng Zhào Xs. kāide dānzishang dou xiězhe shénme?
10. Jǐngguān jǐngchá zǒude shíhou shuō shénme? Nǐ xiǎng tade dōngxī zhǎodezháo ma?
11. Sī Xs. Wèi shénme dào Zhàoia qu? Tā wèn Zhào Xs. shénme? Zhào Xs. shì zěnme gào song Sī Xs. de?
12. Zhào Xs. de qián yě fàngzai guìli le ma?
13. Zhào Xs. zhīdao dōngxī diūle yǐhòu, tā zěnme bàn?
14. Zhào Xs. juéde tāde dōngxī zhǎodezháo ma?
15. Tāde dōngxī bǎoxiǎnle méiyou? Bǎole duōshao qián? Bǎode gòu búgòu?
16. Sī Xs. shuō Zhào Xs. de dōngxī zhǎodezháo ma?
17. Nǐde qìchē chūguo shì meiyou? Yàoshi chūle shì nǐ zěnme bàn?
18. Nǐ diūguo dōngxī meiyou? Shì nǐ zìjǐ diūde háishi zéi tōuqude? Diūle shénme le? Zhí duōshao qián?
19. Nǐ jiālǐde jiāju bǎoxiǎnle meiyou? Nǐde fángzi bǎo huǒxiǎn le meiyou? Bǎole duōshao qián?
20. Tā shuō tā yao dào jǐngchá jú qu jiào jǐngchá. Shì ta zìjǐ qù, háishi tā yao pài rén qu?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou jiālǐ chūle diǎnr shì, nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou diūle dōngxī le, nǐ yào wèn tā shénme?
3. Nǐde péngyou diūle dōngxī le. Nǐ xiǎng gào song ta, tā yīnggāi zěnme bàn, nǐ zěnme gēn tā shuō?
4. Nǐde péngyou diūle dōngxī le. Tā hěn zhāojí, nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
5. Nǐde péngyou diūle dōngxī le. Jǐngchá, jǐngguān dōu lái le, nǐ yào bǎ diū dōngxī de shìqing gào song tamen, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 The water company sent a man here to fix the water pipes.
- 1.2 The store sent the jewelry we bought.
- 1.3 He is just a policeman, not an officer, I made a mistake.
- 1.4 I have a bad memory. I am afraid that I cannot remember all the things she wanted me to buy; therefore I wrote them down on a list.
- 1.5 How much do you think this pair of pants is worth?
- 1.6 I don't think this fur coat is worth anything.
- 1.7 I paid more than twenty-five dollars for this suit. Don't you think it's worth it?
- 1.8 Is it worth all this trouble?
- 1.9 Is it worth while to read?
- 1.10 He was in an air-lane accident the other day.
- 1.11 It's a pity (that) I forgot to make out the list.
- 1.12 I have been very unlucky lately.
- 1.13 A burglar came in yesterday, but he didn't take anything valuable. You can't call that unlucky.
- 1.14 If you ask, "Who has stolen my pen?", no one will answer. You'd better say, "Who has seen my pen?"
- 1.15 His overcoat is warmer than anything else.
- 1.16 You spend more to wash your shirt than to buy it.
- 1.17 Fortunately I didn't go. If I had gone, my car would have been in the same accident.
- 1.18 Fortunately he told me beforehand. If he hadn't, how embarrassing that would have been.
- 1.19 Do you have insurance on your house?
- 1.20 I can guarantee that he stole it.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (274) a. The plumbing in our house has broken down. Please send some one to repair it.
- (276) a. He is not clear about that matter.
- (280) a. Please itemize all the things in your brief case.

- (281) a. That fur coat of hers is very valuable.
b. How much is this watch worth?
c. This suit costs thirty-five dollars. Is it worth it?
d. That book is certainly worth reading.
- (282) a. I have heard something happened to that plane.
b. He had an accident while driving. He bumped into a person, but it wasn't serious.
- (283) a. What luck! He is always losing things these few days.
b. Shucks! I forgot to bring that book. Today I have to use it.
- (284) a. Since last year, lots of accidents happened in our home. What luck!
- (286) a. Their home was burglarized again.
b. All thieves steal (things). Where is there a thief who does not steal (things)?
c. He secretly told me. He didn't want the others to hear.
d. He came home very late last night. So he took off his shoes and sneaked into the house.
- (291) a. We all knew he wasn't coming. Who would have thought he came.
- (292) a. Fortunately, I didn't go to New York today. If I had gone, how could I have come back in such a big snowstorm?
b. Fortunately, I brought money with me. If I hadn't, what a mess it would be to invite some one out and not to have money.
- (293) a. Do you have fire insurance on your house?
b. I can guarantee that he will not be here today.
c. I am afraid it wouldn't be safe to always keep money in the house.

DISHISĀNKE - JIǎNGYǎN

I. Duìhuà

Yǒu rén qǐng Sī Xs. dào Shànghǎi fùjìn yige xiǎo chéng qu jiǎngyǎn. qù yìqiǎn, tā dào Zhàojiā, gen Zhào Xs. dǎtīng nèige xiǎo chéngde qǐngxíng. Sī Xs. dào le Zhàojiā, jiànzhào Zhào Xs., shuō:

Sī: Ai. Ziān. Hǎo ba?

Zhào: Nín lái le. Qǐngzuò qǐngzuò. Zhèi jítian zěnmeyàng?

Sī: Hěn hǎo. Diūlede dōngxi zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Hái méizhǎozháo. Zhēn zāogāo.

Sī: Zhào Tt. hǎo le ba?

Zhào: Tā dào hǎo le. Xièxie nín. Nín méichūmén ma?

Sī: Xiàlǐbailiù yǒu rén qǐng wǒ dào shào xiàn qu jiǎngyǎn. Nín dào nèr qùguo ma?

Zhào: Qùguo. Nèige dìfang hěn búcuò. Zhíde qu kànkàn.

Sī: Cóng zhèr qù, děi zài lùshang zǒu duó jiǔ?

Zhào: Zuò huǒchē, liǎngge zhōngtóu; zuò qìchē, děi sāngèbàn zhōngtóu, yàoshi kāide kuài, lùshang búting, sāngè zhōngtóu, jiu xíng le.

Sī: Nín zhīdao nèige chéng litoude rénkǒu yǒu duōshao ma?

Zhào: Wǒ zhīdaode búdà qīngchu. Dàgài yǒu qībāwàn rén.

Sī: Wǒ tīngshuō nèige dìfangde chūchǎn hěn duō.

Zhào: Duì le. Chūchǎn hěn fēngfù. Chū mǐ chūde zuìduō. Chūle mǐ yìwài, jīnyíntóngtiěxī, wǔjīn dōu yǒu yìdiǎnr. Hái yǒu méi, miánhua shénmede?

Sī: Chéng litou yǒu xuéxiào ba?

Zhào: Yǒu liǎngge zhōngxué, bāge xiǎoxué.

Sī: Nèixiē xuéxiào dōu shì sīlìde, háishi gōnglìde? Yǒu jiàohuì bàn de meiyǒu?

Zhào: Gōnglìde, sīlìde dōu yǒu. Yǒu sāngè xiǎoxué shì jiàohuì bàn de. Liǎngge shì Jīdūjiào bàn de, yige shì Tiānzhǔjiào bàn de. Chéng litou yǒu sāngè jiàotáng, yige jiàotáng yǒu yige xuéxiào. Nèige dìfang zhēn búhuài, yǒu jīhui, wǒ hěn xiàng qu kànkàn.

Sī: Nàme wǒmen yíkuàir qu, hǎo buhǎo?

Zhào: Bùchéng. Xiàlǐbailiù zhōngwǔ, wǒ yǒu yige yuēhui, shì qiánjítian dīnghǎo le de. Wǒ qǔbuliáo. Duìbuqǐ.

Sī: Méi guānxi, nàme děng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui zàishuō ba.

- Zhào: Nín shì yòng Yīngwén jiǎng, shì yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng?
- Sī: Tāmen jiào wo yòng Zhōngwén, kěshì wǒde Zhōngguó huà buchéng. Yǒu hǎoxiè huà, wǒ búhuì shuō, yǒu hǎoxiē huà, wǒ shuōbudài.
- Zhào: Nínde Zhōngguó huà chéng. Gēn Zhōngguó rén shuōde jiǎnzhíde yíyàng. Yèxú yǒushíhou yǒu shuōcuòlede dìfang, kěshì Zhōngguó rén shuō huà, yě bùnéng méiyǒu shuōcuòlede shíhou. Wǒ kàn, nín jiù yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng ba.
- Sī: Hǎo ba. Búguò wǒ děi yùbeiyubei. Wǒ xiǎng jīntian wǎnshang wǒ bǎ wǒ yào jiǎngde xièxiàlai, gěi nín kànkàn, yǒu búduìde dìfang, qǐng nín gěi wǒ gǎigai. Gáihǎole, wǒ zài niàn jìcì, yèxǔ jiù xíngle.
- Zhào: Hǎojíle. Nín xiědéle, wǒ gěi nín kànkàn. Nín zhēn tài xiǎoxinle.
- Sī: Búshì tài xiǎoxin. Wǒ shì pà shuōcuòle, chū xiàohuà. Nín méitīngshuōguo zhèige xiàohuà ba. Yǒu yige wàiguó rén, dàizhe yige xiǎo háizi zài jiěshang wǎnr. Yǒu yige Zhōngguó rén wèn ta shuō: "Nín zhèige háizi zěnme zěnme pàng a? Nín gěi ta shénme chī?" Nèige wàiguó rén shuō: "Tā bùchī biéde, jiù chī tā mùqīnde niú'nǎi." Nín shuō kěxiào bukěxiào?
- Zhào: (dà xiào) Zhèi kě zhēn yǒuyìsi.
- Sī: Wǒ děi zǒule.
- Zhào: zài zuò yihuǐr. Máng shenme?
- Sī: Wǒ děi huíqu yùbei nèige jiǎngyǎn qu. Wǒ míngtian zài lái.
- Zhào: Hǎo. Nàme wǒ bùliú nín le. Míngtian nín shénme shíhou lai?
- Sī: Xiàwǔ sìdiǎnbàn, chéng buchéng?
- Zhào: Wǒ míngtian méi shì. Nín shénme shíhou lai dou chéng
- Sī: Hǎo, míngtianjiàn ba.
- Zhào: Nín mànzǒu.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 295. jiǎng | V: explain |
| 295.1 jiǎngyǎn | V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech |
| 295.2 yǎnjiǎng | V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech
: (interchangable with jiǎngyǎn) |
| 295.3 jiǎnghuà | VO: speak |
| 295.4 jiǎngshū | VO: explain the lesson, lecture (in class) |
| 295.5 jiǎng jiàqian | VO: bargain |

- a. Qǐng nín bǎ zhèige zì gěi wǒ jiǎngjiāng.
b. Nèiwei xiānsheng jiǎngshū jiǎngde zhēn qīngchū.

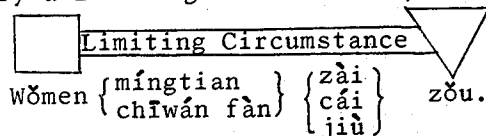
296. qíngxíng N: condition, situation
297. Shàoxiàn PW: a fictitious town

311. Jīdūjiào N: Christianity (usually refers to the Protestant as vs. the Catholic church)
 311.1 (Yēsūjiào) N: (same)
312. Tiānzhǔjiào N: Catholic Church (Roman)
313. jiàotáng N: church (building)
 313.1 libàitáng N: church (lit. worshipping hall)
314. yuēhui N: engagement, appointment
 314.1 dìng yuēhui VO: make a date or an appointment
- a. Wǒ xiǎng gēn ta dìng yige yuēhui, tántan.
315. búguò A: but, only
- a. Wǒ kéyi qù, búguò wǒ búda yuànyì qù.
 b. Tā búguò gēile wo wùkuai qián.
316. gǎi V: correct, change, alter, revise
 316.1 gǎideliǎo RV: can change
 316.2 gǎibuliǎo RV: cannot change
 316.3 gǎihǎole RV: corrected
 316.4 gǎihuàile RV: changed for the worse
 316.5 gěi yīshang VO: alter clothes
- a. Tā zhèijū huà zǒng shuōbuduì, wǒ gěi ta gǎile háojìcì, tā háishi gǎibuliǎo.
 b. Zhèijian yīshang tài xiǎo, méi fázi gǎile.
317. kěxiào SV: be laughable, funny
- a. Tā shuōde nège xiàohua, tā zìjǐ juéde hěn kěxiào, kěshi shuōwánle méi rén xiào.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Zài, Jiù and Cǎi Compared:

The various uses of zài, jiù and cǎi as fixed adverbs have been discussed in Lessons 10, 11 and 12 respectively. Now we will compare their different meanings in a single pattern, i.e., when preceded by a limiting circumstance, whether a word or a clause, e.g.:



1.1 In this pattern, these three fixed adverbs have quite different meanings:

Wǒmen chīwán fàn zài zǒu ba.
 (Let's finish eating before we go.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn cǎi zǒude.
 (We didn't go until we finished eating.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiù zǒu.
 (We will go after we finished eating.)

- 1.2 In the case of zài and cái, the limiting circumstance is an "imperative condition" to the action after zài or cái in a contemplated action, and expressions like yíding děi (must) and xiān (first) can be added:

Wǒ yíding děi chīle fàn cái zǒu ne.
(I must finish eating before I go.)

Wǒ děi xiān chīwán fàn zai zǒu.
(I must finish eating first before I go.)

In a completed action, the limiting circumstance serves as the stressed time or action only after which the action in the subsequent clause happened:

Wǒ shi chīwán fàn cai zǒude.
(I didn't go until after I finished eating.)

- 1.3 In the case of jiù, the limiting circumstance before the jiù clause states a time or action immediately after which the action in the jiù clause is to follow. Jiù may be preceded by lìkè, which further intensifies the immediacy of the action to follow, while zài and cái, because of their nature mentioned in 1.2, cannot be preceded by lìkè:

Wǒmen chīwán fàn lìkè jiù zǒu.
(We will go immediately after we finish eating.)

Another illustration of the immediacy of the action in the jiù clause to follow the limiting circumstance is that yi- (as soon as) may precede the verb in the first clause:

Wǒmen yìchīwán fàn jiù zǒu.
(We will go as soon as we finish eating.)

- 1.4 The illustrations below will further clarify the difference in meaning between these three adverbs:

Wǒ yíding děi chīle fàn cái zǒu ne.
(See 1.2)

Wǒ yíding děi chīle fàn zai zǒu.
(See 1.2)

Wǒ yíding děi chīle fàn jiù zǒu.
(I must go immediately after eating.)

The yíding děi in the first two illustrations stresses the imperative condition before the action after cái or zài: the yíding děi in the third stresses the immediacy of the action after jiù to follow that before jiù.

- 1.5 These three adverbs differ further as to which sentence particles may follow them:

1.51 The zài sentence may end with a suggestive ba (see first illustration in 1.1)

1.52 The cái sentence may end with a de (see second illustration in 1.1), indicating that the action has already been completed, and also with a ne, indicating that the action is still in the contemplating stage:

Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiu zǒu ba.
(Let's go (right) after eating.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiu zǒule.
(We left (right) after eating.)

2. Zài and cái Compared:

Zài can be used only in a contemplated action in the form of a plan, suggestion, request or command, and can not be used in a completed action:

Plan: Wǒ dǎsuan míngtiān zài qù.
Suggestion: Nǐ zuìhǎo míngtiān zài qù.
Request: Wǒmen míngtiān zài qu, hǎo buhǎo?
Command: Nǐ míngtiān zài qù.

But not: Tā zuótiān zài qù.

Cái can be used in both contemplated and completed actions:

Tāmen míngtiān cái qù ne.
Tāmen zuótiān cái qùde.

While cái may be used in a contemplated action, it can only be used in the form of a statement or a plan:

Statement: Tāmen míngtiān cái qù ne.
Plan: Tāmen xiǎng míngtiān cái qù ne.

It cannot be used in a suggestion, request or command.

3. Jiù and cái Compared:

These two words are sometimes opposite in meaning. When they are preceded by a time expression, jiù means "sooner than expected" and cái means "later than expected".

Sooner: Tā liùdiǎn zhōng jiu laile.
(He came when it was only six o'clock.)

Later: Tā liùdiǎn zhōng cái láiide.
(He didn't come until six o'clock.)

4. Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 4.1 Don't go now; you'd better wait until he comes, and then go.
- 4.2 If he is willing to pay, I will be very glad to buy one for him.
- 4.3 It came at 3:30 - an hour too early.
- 4.4 We won't eat until he comes back from the school.
- 4.5 How about our doing it tomorrow?
- 4.6 I didn't answer her letter until she had written me three times.
- 4.7 I will pay you back as soon as I get another loan.
- 4.8 We will start a new book only when we finish this one.

- 4.9 If he can take me home, I will wait till twelve.
- 4.10 I cannot understand the kind of Chinese spoken by other people.
I can only understand his Chinese.
- 4.11 I plan to write a book when I come back from China.
- 4.12 I am too tired now. I'll have to take a rest before I do any more.
- 4.13 As soon as the spring comes, the grass turns green.
- 4.14 It was only because he didn't have any money, that I paid for him.
- 4.15 Don't read that book today. I don't want you to read it until tomorrow.

IV. Fāyīn liànxí

1. "Zuótiān wǎnshàng jiāngyānde qíngxíng zěnmeyàng?" "Jiǎngde hěn qíngchū."
2. "Zhèijū huà zěnmé jiǎng?" "Wó ye bùzhīdào."
3. "Nèige dìfangde rénkǒu duōshǎo? Yǒu shénme chūchǎn?" "Nǐ zhīhǎo wèn tā ba."
4. "Tā nèr chūle miánhua yīwài, hái mài shénme?" "Chūle miánhua, bùmài biéde."
5. "Zhèige shì yínzi zuòde, shì tiě zuòde?" "Dàgèi shì tóng zuòde."
6. "Zhèige xiǎoxué shì gōnglìde shì sīlìde?" "Shì jiàohuì bànde, suàn sīlìde."
7. "Zhèr fùjìn yǒu Jīdūjiàode jiàotáng ma?" "Méiyǒu. Jiù yǒu Tiānzhǔjiàode jiàotáng."
8. "Lǐbailiude yuēhuì zěnmeyàng?" "Dōu gen tāmen dīnghǎole."
9. "Tā shuōde xiàohuār kěxiào ma?" "Bùkěxiào, kěshì bùhǎoyìsi búxiào."
10. "Zhèige zì nǐ zěnmé hái shuōbuduì?" "Wǒ zhīdao búduì, kěshì gāibuliǎo."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shénme yào dǎtìng nèige xiǎo chéngde qíngxíng? Tā gen shéi dǎtìng?
2. Tā jiànzhào Zhào Xs., Zhào Ziān gen ta shuō shénme? Wèn ta shénme wèntí?
3. Zhào Xs. dao nèige xiǎo chéng qùguo ma? Tā juéde nèige chéng zěnmeyàng? Tā hái xiǎng qù ma?
4. Dào nèige dìfang qù, děi zai lùshàng zǒu duō jiǔ?

5. Nèige chéng lǐtode rénkǒu yǒu duōshao? Zhào Xs. zhīdaode qīngchū buqīngchū?
6. Nèige dìfang yǒu shénme chūchǎn? Chū shénme chūde zuì duō? Hái chū shénme?
7. Nèige dìfangde xuéxiào shì sīlìde hái shì gōnglìde? Yǒu jiàohuì bānde meiyǒu? Shì Tiānzhǔjiào bānde hái shì Jīdūjiào bānde?
8. Nèige dìfangde xuéxiào shì zhōngxué shì xiǎoxué? Jǐge zhōngxué, jǐge xiǎoxué?
9. Nèige chéng lǐtǒu yǒu jiàotáng ma? Shì shénme jiàohuìde jiàotáng?
10. Sī Xs. yào qǐng Zhào Xs. gēn tā yíkuàir qù ma? Wèi shénme Sī Xs. yuànyì qǐng Zhào Xs. gēn tā yíkuàir qù?
11. Zhào Xs. yuànyì dào nèige dìfang qù ma? Tā wèi shénme bùnéng qù?
12. Sī Xs. de jiǎngyǎn shì yòng Yīnwén jiǎng, shì yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng? Sī Xs. zìjǐ juéde tade Zhōngwén zěnmeyàng?
13. Zhào Xs. juéde Sī Xs. de Zhōngwén zěnmeyàng? Zhào Xs. juéde tā yīngdāng yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng háishi yòng Yīngwén jiǎng?
14. Sī Xs. dǎsuan zěnmeyàng yùbèi tade jiǎngyǎn? Zhào Xs. néng bāng tā shénme máng?
15. Wèi shénme Sī Xs. yào nàme xiǎoxin?
16. Qǐng nǐ bǎ Sī Xs. shuōde nèige xiàohuà shuō yìshuō?
17. Sī Xs. yào zǒude shíhòu, tā shuō shénme? Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?
18. Sī Xs. yào huíqù zuò shénme qu? Tā yào dièrtiān shénme shíhòu lái?
19. Nǐ jiǎngyǎnguò meiyǒu? Shì yòng Zhōngwén jiǎngde ma? Nǐ juéde jiǎngyǎn yìqián yīngdāng yùbèi ma? Yīngdāng zěnmeyàng yùbèi?
20. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐ qùguode yìge xiǎo chéngde qíngxìng shuō yìshuō.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ yào dào yìge dìfang qù, nèige dìfang nǐ méiqùguò. Nǐ xiǎng dǎting dǎting nèige dìfangde qíngxìng. Nǐ dōu yào dǎting shénme? Nǐ zěnmeyàng wèn?
2. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ dǎting, nǐ zhùde nèige chéng yǒu shénme xuéxiào, yǒu shénme jiàotáng, nǐ zěnmeyàng shuō?
3. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou qǐng nǐ gēn tā dào yìge dìfang qù, nǐ bùnéng qù. Nǐ zěnmeyàng gēn tā shuō?
4. Yàoshi nǐ qǐng nǐde péngyou gēn nǐ dào yìge dìfang qu, tā bùnéng qù, kěshi tā hěn bùhǎoyìsi shuō. Nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
5. Nǐde péngyou dào nǐ jiā lái. Tánle yìhuì huà, tā yào zǒu. Nǐ xiǎng liú tā zài zuò yìhuì. Nǐ zěnmeyàng gēn tā shuō?

VII. Bèishū

A: Wài, láojià, gěi wǒ jiē sānjú, èr-wǔ-líng-sì.

B: Huáwén Xuéxiào. Nín shì nǎr?

A: Nín shì Huáwén Xuéxiào a! Láojià, qǐng Lǐ Xs. jiē diànhuà.

B: Nǐ wèi Lǐ Xs. a?

A: Lǐ Yáoqīng, Lǐ Xs.

B: Wǒ jiù shì a. Nín shì něiwèi?

A: Wǒ xìng Sī a.

B: Ò, Sī Xs., hěn jiǔ méijiàn.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 Who was the speaker yesterday? (Who spoke yesterday?)

1.2 He's a very good speaker. (He spoke well.)

1.3 His lecture was very clear.

1.4 How is the situation in China now?

1.5 The population of this place has increased a lot in comparison with last year.

1.6 That place is rich in many kinds of products.

1.7 Besides Chinese he knows German too.

1.8 After he graduated from a public elementary school he went to a private high school.

1.9 Is your high school a public, private, or church school?

1.10 This is made of cotton.

1.11 I understand that the school is operated by a church, but whether it is a Protestant or Catholic church, I don't know.

1.12 I have an engagement at six o'clock.

1.13 I can speak a little but not well.

1.14 If I make any mistake, please correct it for me.

1.15 I asked him to alter my dress but he made it worse.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (295) a. Will you please explain this word for me.
b. The teacher explained the lessons very clearly.
- (298) a. What is the population of that place?
- (299) a. What is produced (or grown) here?
- (300) a. The place is rich in many kinds of products.
- (301) a. There is no one but you.
b. Besides English, he can speak French too.
c. Besides her jewelry, she lost some clothes.
- (309) a. Is this a private or public school?
- (314) a. I want to set a time to have a chat with him.
- (315) a. I can go, but I don't very much want to go.
b. He gave me only five dollars.
- (316) a. He never says this sentence correctly. I have corrected him many times already, but he doesn't seem to be able to get it right.
b. This dress is too small. There is no way to alter it.
- (317) a. He himself thought the joke he told was funny, but nobody laughed.

DISHISIKE - DAO SHAOXIAN QU

I. Duihua

Sī Xs. yào dao Shàoxiàn qu. Qù yǐqián, tā wàng huǒchēzhàn dá diànhuà, dǎting yìtiān yǒu jǐcì chē, shénme shíhou kāi, chēpiào duōshao qián.

Sī: Wài, nín shì huǒchēzhàn ma? Wǒ gēn nín dǎting, dào Shàoxiàn qude chē, yìtiān yǒu jǐcì?

Diànhuàli: Píngcháng shì yìtiān liǎngcì. Xīngqīliù gēn xīngqītiān, yìtiān sāncì.

Sī: Qǐng wèn, dōu shì shénme shíhou kāi?

Diànhuàli: Píngcháng shì shàngwǔ bādiǎn-shíwǔ yíci, xiàwǔ sāndiǎn-sìshíwǔ yíci. Xīngqīliù gēn xīngqīrì, lìngwài yǒu yíci tèbié-kuàichē, shì zhèng shíèrdiǎn kāi.

Sī: Tèbié-kuàichē zǒu jǐge zhōngtóu?

Diànhuàli: Zǒu liǎnggebàn zhōngtóu, liǎngdiǎnbàn dào.

Sī: Chēpiào duōshao qián?

Diànhuàli: Tóudēng sānkuai-liù, èrdēng liǎngkuai-sì, sǎndēng yíkuai-èr.

Sī: Nín shuōde shì tèbié-kuàichēde jiàqian ma?

Diànhuàli: Duìle.

Sī: Láihuípào piányi yidiǎnr ma?

Diànhuàli: Bù. Láihuípào suàn liǎngge dānchéngpiào.

Sī: Duōxiè, duōxiè.

(Xīngqīliù, shíyīdiǎn zhōng, Sī Xs. bǎ xíngli shōushihǎole. Chúzi bāngzhe ta nǎzhe xiāngzi, cóng jiālì chūlai, gù sānlún.)

Chúzi: Sānlún, huǒchēzhàn qù buqù?

Dēngsānlún: Nín kànzhe gěi, hǎo buhǎo?

Chúzi: Nǐ shuō yào duōshao qián ba.

Dēngsānlún: Liǎngmaowǔ ba.

Chúzi: Yìmaowǔ, qù buqù?

Dēngsānlún: Nín gěi liǎngmáo qián ba.

Chúzi: Yìmaowǔ. Duōle búyào. Ài qù búqù.

Dēngsānlún: Lái. Nín zuòshang.

(Chúzi bǎ xiāngzi fàngzai sānlúnchēshang, Sī Xs. shàngle chē jiù zǒule. Dào le chēzhàn, jiǎoháng guòlaile.)

Jiǎoháng: Nín dao nǎr qù a? Mǎi piào le ma?

Sī: Nǐ nǎzhùle ma? Liú diǎnr shán.

Jiǎoháng: Nín fàngxīn. Nín jiāogei wǒ ba.

Sī: Zài nǎr mǎi piào a?

Jiǎoháng: Piàofángzài zài zhèibianr. Nín qu mǎi piào qu, wǒ zài zhèr dēng nín.

(Sī Xs. zai piàofángzài chuānghu qiántou.)

Sī: Shàoxiàn. Tóudēng, tèbié-kuàichē, láihuípào yìzhāng.

Màipiàode: Sānkuai-liù.

Sī: Zhèi shì wǔkuài.

Màipiàode: Zhǎo nín yīkuai-sì.

Sī: (Duì jiǎoháng) Dào zhàntái qu, cóng nǎr zǒu?

Jiǎoháng: Nín lái. Nín gēn wǒ zǒu. Bùmáng. Chē hái méijìn zhàn ne. (Huǒchē lái.)

Jiǎoháng: Nín kànkan nín de xíngli duì buduì? Jiǎoháng bùxǔ shàngchē.

Sī: Hǎo. Nǐ jiāogei wǒ ba. Duōshao qián?

Jiǎoháng: Nín kànzhe gěi.

Sī: An guīju, shì duōshao qián yíjiàn?

Jiǎoháng: An guīju shì liǎngmáo qián yíjiàn. Nín duōshao duo gěi yídiǎnr.

Sī: Gěi nǐ sānmáo qián ba.

Jiǎoháng: Xièxie. Xièxie.

(Zài chēshang -)

Chápiàode: Wàng lǐ zǒu. Lǐtōu kōngzhe ne. Yǒudeshì zuòwei.

Sī: Jièguāng, jièguāng, ràng wǒ guòqu.

(Sī Xs. kànjian yǒu yige liǎngge-rén zuòde yǐzishang jiù yǒu yige rén. Yǒu yige zuòwei kōngzhe ne. Jiù gēn neige zuòzhe de rén shuō:)

Sī: Lǎojià, zhèr yǒu rén meiyǒu?

Yǐzishang zuòzhe de neige rén: Méiyǒu.

(Sī Xs. bǎ xiāngzi fàngxia. Zuòxia yǐhòu, chápiàode guòlaile.)

Chápiàode: Piào. Piào. Chápiào le. Qǐng bǎ piào náchulai.

(Sī Xs. bǎ piào náchulai, gēn chápiàode shuō:)

Sī: Shì liǎngdiǎnbàn dào Shàoxiàn ma?

Chápiàode: Duìle.

Sī: Dào le de shíhou, qǐng gào song wo. Láo jià.

Chápiàode: Hǎo ba.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 318. xīngqī | N/TW: week/Sunday |
| 318.1 xīngqīrì | TW: Sunday |
| 318.2 xīngqītiān | TW: Sunday (interchangable with xīngqīrì) |
| 318.3 xīngqīyī | TW: Monday |
| 318.4 yíge xīngqī | NU-M: one week |
| 319. (tèbié)-kuàichē | N: express train |
| 319.1 mànchē | N: local train |
| 320. zhěng | A: just, exactly |
| 320.1 zhēng bādiǎn (bādiǎnzhěng) | eight o'clock sharp, exactly |
| 320.2 zhēng shíkuai qián | eight o'clock
ten dollars even |
| a. Wǒ zhěng qùle sāntian. | |
| 321. -děng | M: grade, class |
| 321.1 tóuděng(chē) | first class (train) |
| 321.2 èrděng | second class |
| 321.3 sānděng | third class |
| 322. lái huí piào | N: round trip ticket |
| 323. dānchéng piào | N: one way ticket |
| 324. duōxié | IE: many thanks |
| 325. xiāngzi | N: suitcase, trunk, chest |
| 325.1 píxiāng | N: suitcase, trunk, chest(leather) |
| 326. sānlúnr | N: pedicab (M: -liàng) |
| 326.1 sānlúnchē | N: pedicab |
| 326.2 gù sānlúnr | VO: to hire a pedicab |
| 326.3 zuò sānlúnr | VO: to ride a pedicab |
| 326.4 dēng sānlúnrde | VO: pedicab-man (lit. one who pedals a pedicab) |
| 327. ài qù búqù | IE: go or not as you please |
| 327.1 ài chī bùchī | IE: eat it or not as you please |
| 327.2 ài zǒu bùzǒu | IE: leave or stay as you please |
| 328. jiǎoháng | N: porter (baggage) |
| 328.1 hóng màozi | N: red cap |

329. jiāo(gei) V: turn over to, hand over to
 329.1 jiāogei tā turn over to him
- a. Nǐ bǎ qián jiāogei shéi le?
 b. Zhèijian shìqing wo buguǎnle. Jiāogei nǐ ba.
330. páizi N: sign, tag (baggage), brand, make
 330.1 guǎ páizi VO: to check baggage
- a. Nǐde qìchē shì shénme páizi?
331. piàofáng N: ticket office
332. tái N: stage, platform
 332.1 zhàntái N: station, platform
- a. Dào Nánjīngde chē, zài dìjǐ zhàntái?
333. gēn V: follow
 333.1 gēnzhe V/A: follow
 333.2 gēnshang RV: catch up
- a. Qǐng nǐmen dàjiā dōu gēnzhe wǒ niàn.
 b. Tā zǒude tài kuài, wǒ jiǎnzhíde gēnbushàng ta.
334. xǔ V: permit, allow, let
- a. Tā xǔ wǒ qù, wǒ jiu qù, bùxǔ wǒ qù, wǒ jiu búqù.
335. guīju N: customs, rules and regulations
 335.1 yōuguīju SV: be well disciplined, well mannered
 335.2 àn guīju VO: "according to custom"
336. duōshǎo V yìdiǎnr a little bit (more or less)
 336.1 duōshǎo V jǐ a little bit (more or less)
- a. Wǒ duōshǎo dòng jìjù Yīngwén.
 b. Nǐ duōshǎo gěi ta diǎnr qián, jiù xíngle.
337. chá piào VO: to punch tickets, to examine tickets
 337.1 chápiàode N: conductor
338. kōng SV: be empty, vacant
 338.1 kōng zuòr vacant seat
 338.2 kōng fáng vacant house
 338.3 kōng wūzi vacant room
 338.4 kōng hézi empty box
 338.5 kōngle it's become empty
- a. Wǒ jiā litou, yìjiān kōng wūzi dōu méiyǒu.
 b. Tā nēige xiāngzi kōngzhe nē.
339. yǒudeshì V: there is plenty (of it)
- a. Tā yǒudeshì qián.
 b. Yǒudeshì huì shuō Zhōngguo huà de Měiguó rén.
340. zuòwèi (zuòr) N: (M: -gè) seat
 340.1 yǒu zuòr there are seats
 340.2 méi zuòr there are no seats
 340.3 dìng zuòr to reserve a seat

341. jièguāng

please excuse me, pardon me

- a. Jièguāng, dào huǒchēzhàn qu zěnme zǒu?
b. Jièguāng, jièguāng, ràng wǒ guòqu.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Measures:

A measure must immediately follow a number with two exceptions:
(1) if there is no number appearing before the measure, the number yī is understood. It often appears in these forms:

Following a specifier: zhèige (zhèiyige), měitian (měiyitian),
etc.

Following a verb: Wǒ you (yi) ge péngyou. Wǒ yao mái (yi)ben
shū. Etc.

(2) A few stative verbs may be inserted between the number and the measure, the most frequently used ones being dà, xiǎo and zhēng:

Yídàben (shū) sānxiǎokuai (yīzi) sìzhēngzhang (zhǐ)

1.1 The general measure ge, is applicable to most nouns even when a more appropriate measure is available. Since things of different shape, nature, number, size, weight or volume require specific measures, they may have specific meanings:

yìběn shū (a book)
yìtào shū (a set of books)
yìshuāng wàzi (a pair of socks)
yídá wàzi (a dozen pairs of socks)

Note that meaning is differentiated entirely by the measures. When a measure is used with one noun only or with a limited group of nouns, the noun itself is frequently omitted, since no confusion is likely to arise:

Nèisānběn wǒ dōu mǎile (definitely refers to books)
zuótian láile sānwèi (definitely refers to people)

1.2 The following table contains the most important specific measures already introduced and is printed here for a general review:

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
Bǎ	to grasp - M. of things that are grasped	yìbǎ yǐzi (a chair) yìbǎ dāozi (a knife) yìbǎ chāzi (a fork) yìbǎ sháozi (a spoon)
Bǎo	to wrap - M. of things that are wrapped up	yìbāo yān (a pack of cigarettes)
Běn	volume - M. of books; cf. <u>tào</u>	yìběn shū (a book)
Bù	section, class - M. of books	yíbù shū (a literary work)

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
CHǐ	foot (measure)	yìchǐ bù (a foot of cloth) yìchǐ cháng (a foot long)
DÁ	dozen	yídá jīdàn (a dozen eggs) yídá wǎzi (a dozen pairs of socks or stockings)
DUǒ	cluster - M. of flowers	yìduǒ huār (a flower)
DIǎN	o'clock; hour	yìdiǎn zhōng (one c'clock; one hour)
FĒN	minute; cent	yīfēn zhōng (one minute) yīfēn qián (one cent)
FĒNG	seal up	yīfēng xìn (a letter)
GÈ	general measure	yíge xiǎoháir (a child) etc.
GĒN	root, origin - M. for long slender things	yīgēn yān (a cigarette) yīgēn yángguǒ (a match)
HÀO	M. for room, house, telephone numbers, days of the month, hats, socks, shoes, clothing, etc.	yíhào (No. 1) yíyuè yíhào (Jan. 1st) bāhào(r) xié (size 8 shoes) shíwǔhào(r) bàn chènshān (15 1/2 shirt)
HÉ	small box	yíhé(r) táng (a box of candy) yíhé(r) yángguǒ (a box of matches)
HUÍ	time, occasion	yíhuí (once)
ZHĀNG	M. for certain flat, sheet-like items	yìzhāng zhǐ (a sheet of paper) yìzhāng huà (a picture) yìzhāng zhuōzi (a table)
ZHĪ	one of a pair; single - M. for birds, boats, certain animals, etc.	yìzhī jī (a chicken) yìzhī yǎn (an eye) yìzhī chuán (a boat) yìzhī shǒu (a hand) yìzhī jiǎo (a foot) yìzhī niú (cow, ox)
ZHǒNG	kind, sort	zhèizhǒng rén (this kind of people) zhèizhǒng píngguǒ (this kind of apple)
JIĀN	M. for rooms	wǔjiān wǔzi (five rooms) liǎngjiān wòfáng (two bed- rooms)
Jiàn	article	yíjiàn shì (a matter) yíjiàn yīshang (an article of clothing)

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
		yíjiàn xíngli (a luggage) yíjiàn dōngxi (a thing)
JÙ	sentence	yíjù huà (a sentence)
KĒ	M. for trees, plants	yíkē shù (a tree)
KÈ	quarter hour	yíkè zhōng (15 minutes)
KÈ	lesson	yíkè (one lesson) dìyíkè (Lesson 1)
KUÀI	piece, lump - M. for anything dealt with in "pieces"	yíkuài dì (a piece of land) yíkuài qián (a dollar) yíkuài bù (a piece of cloth)
Lǐ	M. for Chinese lǐ (about 1/3 mile)	yìlǐ (one lǐ) zǒule yìlǐ lù (walked one lǐ)
LIÀNG	M. for vehicles except airplanes	yíliàng chē (a cart) yíliàng qìchē (a motor car)
MÁO	dime - M. for ten cents	yímáo qián (ten cents)
MÉN	M. for school subjects, learning	yímén gōngkè (a school subject) yímén xuéwén (a learning)
NIÁN	year	yìnián (a year)
PÁN(zi)	plate, dish	yìpán cài (a plate of food)
SHUĀNG	pair	yìshuāng wàzi (a pair of socks or stockings) yìshuāng xié (a pair of shoes) yìshuāng kuàizi (a pair of chopsticks)
SUÌ	year of age	yíshuì (one year old)
SUǒ(r)	M. for house, building	yìsuǒ(r) fángzi (a house) yìsuǒ(r) lóu (building)
TÀNG	time, occasion - M. for trips and those of buses, trains, etc.	yítàng qìchē (a trip of buses) Nǐ qùguo jǐtàng? (How many times have you been there?)
TÀO	covering, set	yítào shū (a set of books) yítào yīshang (a suit of clothes)
CÌ	time, occasion	sāncì (three times)
TIĀN	day	yìtiān (a day)
TIÁO	strip, branch - M. for long, slender things; cf. <u>gēn</u>	yìtiáo lù (a road) yìtiáo jiē (a street) yìtiáo hé (a river) yìtiáo yú (a fish)

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
WǎN	bowl	yíwǎn fàn (a bowl of rice) yíwǎn shuǐ (a bowl of water)
Wèi	seat, position - polite M. for persons	yíwèi xiānsheng (a gentleman) yíwèi kèrén (a guest) yíwèi tàitai (a lady) yíwèi xiǎojie (a Miss)
Yàng	kind, sort	liǎngyàng(r) diǎnxin (two kinds of refreshments) zhèiyàng(r) tiānqi (this kind of weather)
Yè	night	sāntiān sānyè (three days and nights)
Yīnglǐ	mile (lit. Eng. <u>li</u>)	yíyīnglǐ (one mile)

2. Reduplicated Measures:

A reduplicated measure (MM) has the meaning of "each M" (měiyi M). It often serves as a N or a TW before the V in a sentence, and with an inclusive adverb like dōu, quán, lǎo or zǒng:

Nèixiezhāng zhuōzi, zhāngzhāng dōu shì wǒde.
(Every one of those tables is mine.)

Tā tiāntiān zǒngshì hē hěn duō jiǔ
(He drinks a lot everyday.)

Wǒ mǎide nèixie píngguo, gègè(r) quán shì huàide.
(Every one of the apples I bought is rotten.)

Wǒmen niánnián lǎoshi dào wàiguó qù yíci.
(We go abroad once each year.)

3. Number-measures may be reduplicated too (NU-M NU-M). De is usually added at the end and the entire expression functions as an adverb. Each NU-M in the pair may be followed by a noun. The most frequently used NU is yī and the whole pattern means "one by one". When èr, sān, etc. are used, then, of course, they mean "two by two", "three by three", etc.:

NU-M (N) NU-M (N) de

Bié yíge(rén)yíge(rén)de qù.
(Don't go there one by one.)

Wǒ shì yíge yuè yíge yuè de gěi fángqian.
(I pay my room rent by the month.)

The N after the NU-M is often left out when the meaning is clear without it (as in the first illustration). If however, the meaning is not clear without the N, then it cannot be left out (as in the second one).

3.1 All the NU-M may be reduplicated in this manner, the frequency of use of which depends on how common they are as number-measures. Therefore, the common measures given in the list in 1.2 are all frequently used in this reduplicated NU-M(N) pattern.

4. Exercise - Translate into English:

4.1 Measures of yān:

- a. Wǒ yìgen yān dou buchōu.
- b. Tā mǎile wǔbao yān
- c. Sānhé yān ta dǒu chōuwánle.
- d. Zhèizhōng yān, wǒ buxíhuan.

4.2 Measures of huà:

- a. Wǒ jiù shuōle yìju huà.
- b. Wǒ gen ta tánguo liángcì huà.
- c. Shéi néng shuō wǔliùguó huà?
- d. Tā lǎo ài shuō nèizhōng huà.

4.3 Measures of chē:

- a. Sānliàng chē dou huàile.
- b. Yìtiān yǒu sìwūtàng chē.
- c. Wǒ zuòle yìtiānde chē.
- d. Nǐ zuò sāndiǎn zhōng nèici chē ba.

4.4 Measures of wàzi:

- a. Wǒ mǎile liǎngshuāng wàzi.
- b. Wǒ yìzhī wàzi dou méiyǒule.
- c. Wúdǎ wàzi cái shíèrkuai qián.
- d. Tā gēile wo sānbǎo wàzi.

4.5 Measures of xìn:

- a. Tā láiguó yíci xìn.
- b. Wǒ xiěle yíyède xìn.
- c. Nǐ jiēzhào jǐfēng xìn?
- d. Wǒ búyuànyì kàn zhèizhōng xìn.

4.6 Measures of yīshang:

- a. Wǒ děi mǎi yìtào yīshang.
- b. Zhèijian yīshang hěn piányi.
- c. Wǒ jiu chuānguo yíci Zhōngguo yīshang.
- d. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèibao yīshang nǎzou.

4.7 Measures of jī:

- a. Wǒ mǎile liǎngzhī jī.
- b. Zhèizhōng jī shì Déguo jī.
- c. Nèi yìpánzi jī wǒmen dou chīle.
- d. Tā mǎile yìniánde jī.

4.8 Measures of shū:

- a. Wǒ mǎile yíbù shū.
- b. Tā kànle sānběn shū.

- c. Wǒ děi niàn liǎngnián shū.
- d. Wǒ lián yidiǎnr shū dōu méiniànguo.

4.9 Measures of chāzi:

- a. Tā yǒu liǎngbǎ chāzi.
- b. Zhèi shì yítào chāzi.
- c. Zhè shì nēiguó chāzi?
- d. Wǒ yǒngguo yìnián zhèizhong chāzi.

4.10 Measures of zhōng:

- a. Xiànzài shì sāndian zhong le.
- b. Wǒ mǎile yídá dà zhōng.
- c. Sānfēn zhōngde gōngfu jiu wán le.
- d. Wǒ jiu zai nèige pǔzi mǎiguó yíci zhōng.

5. Exercise II - Give an appropriate specific measure (not ge) to every noun and translate into English:

jiāju	zhǐ
gōnggòng-qìchē	yǎnjing
fàn	xié
xiānsheng	kùzi
kuàizi	xíngli
shuāzi	shù
niú	huār
huà	chuán
gōngkè	jiǎo
cài	huàr

6. Exercise III - Choose 10 measures from the table in 1.2 and make sentences using reduplicated M and NU-M(N) patterns:

IV. Fāyīn liànxí

1. "Nǐ bǎ nèige xiāngzi jiāogei shéi le?" "jiāogei jiǎoháng le."
2. "Dào Niūyuē de tèbié-kuàichē shénme shíhou kāi?" "Shíèrdiǎnzhēng."
3. "Dào Shànghǎi de èrděng láihuípiao duōshao qián?" "Èrshiqíkuàibàn."
4. "Nín zhèisānjian xíngli dōu guà páizi ma?" "Bù, zhèijian wǒ zìjǐ dài."
5. "Jiǎoháng, jièguāng, piàofángzai zai nǎr?" "Nínde xiāngzi búyòng ren ná ma?"
6. "Zhèr zhèn bùxǔ chōu yān ma?" "Dulle, zhè shì zhèrde guīju."
7. "Nín duōshao zài chī yidiǎnr." "Bùchīle, wǒ chībǎole."
8. "Lítou hái you kōngzuòr ma?" "Chápiàode shuō yǒu."
9. "Jièguāng, wǒ gen nín dǎting dǎting, chěshang xǔ chōu yān bùxǔ?" "Bùxǔ. Nèr yǒu yíge páizi, xiězhe ne."
10. "Lǎojià, dao Shànghai de chē, zai dìjǐ zhàntái?" "Nín gen biéren dǎting ba. Wǒ ye shuōbuqīngchu."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. gei nǎr dǎ diànhuà? Wèi shénme dǎ?
2. Huǒchē dao Shàoxiàn, yìtian you jǐcì? Dōu shi shénme shíhou kāi? Xīngqīliù gen xīngqītiān de tèbié-kuàichē, shénme shíhou kāi?
3. Tèbié-kuàichē zǒu jǐge zhōngtóu? Shénme shíhou dào?
4. Chēpiào tóuděng duōshao qián? Èrděng gen sǎnděng ne?
5. Láihuípào bǐ liǎngge dānchéng piányi ma?
6. Sī Xs. shì nēitian dào Shàoxiàn qùde? Jǐdiǎn zhōng?
7. Chúzi bāngzhe ta zuò shénme shì?
8. Tā sānlúnr shi duōshao qián gùde?
9. Sī Xs. jiào jiǎoháng le méiyóu? Jiǎoháng bāng tā zuò shénme? Jiǎoháng wèn ta shénme?
10. Sī Xs. mǎide shì láihuípào hái shì dānchéngpiào?
11. Sī Xs. zhīdao shi nēige zhàntái buzhi dao? Tā rènshi burènshi zhàntái zai nǎr?
12. Jiǎoháng xǔ shàng chē buxú?
13. Jiǎoháng ná dōngxi, àn guīju, shi duōshao qián yìjiàn? Sī Xs. gēile ta duōshao qian?
14. Chápiàode shuō shénme?
15. Sī Xs. zhǎozhao zuòwei meiyóu? zěnme zhǎozhaode?
16. Sī Xs. gen chápiàode shuō shénme?
17. Cóng zhèr dao Niǔyuē yìtian yǒu jǐcì chē? Dōu shi shénme shíhou kāi?
18. Zài Měiguó píngcháng huǒchē gen gōnggòng-qìchē, láihuípào bǐ liǎngge dānchéngpiào piányi ma?
19. Jiǎoháng píngcháng dōu guǎn shénme shì?
20. Měiguode huǒchē yě yǒu tóuděng èrděng sǎnděng ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ yào wèn dào Niǔyuē qùde huǒchē, yìtian jǐcì? Dōu shénme shíhou kāi? Nǐ zěnme wèn?
2. Yàoshi nǐ gù sānlúnr dào huǒchēzhàn qu, nǐ zěnme shuō?
3. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng dǎting zài shénme dìfang mǎi huǒchēpiào, nǐ shuō shénme?

4. Zài huǒchēshàng, yào shì nǐ xiǎng wèn yige rén, nèige kōngzuòr nǐ néng zuò bunéng, nǐ yǒu jǐge fázi shuō?
5. Zài chēshàng, yào shì nǐ xiǎng jiào chápiàode dào le de shíhòu gào sòng nǐ, nǐ zěnme gēn ta shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 Last week I took an express train to go to New York. It didn't stop at any stations and took exactly two hours.
- 1.2 In England I usually go second class.
- 1.3 I asked the redcap to put this suitcase in the pedicab, but he said it wasn't his job. I was so mad.
- 1.4 I just want to tell you, whether you go or not is up to you.
- 1.5 May I turn this suitcase over to you, and you return it to him for me?
- 1.6 Do you want to check this suitcase or take it with you?
- 1.7 Will you buy another round trip ticket for me? The ticket office is outside on the platform.
- 1.8 They are too fast, I cannot catch up with them.
- 1.9 If you drive so fast, how can he follow you?
- 1.10 No smoking. (Smoking is not allowed.)
- 1.11 That child has good manners.
- 1.12 The conductor said that the car is empty, there are plenty of seats.
- 1.13 Do you have any vacant rooms?
- 1.14 I have plenty to show you.
- 1.15 Pardon me, let me take a look.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (320) a. I went there for exactly three days.
- (329) a. Whom did you turn the money over to?
b. I'm not going to do anything more about this matter.
- (330) a. What make is your car?

- (332) a. What track is the Nanking train on?
- (333) a. Will all of you please read after me.
b. He walks too fast. I simply cannot catch up with him.
- (334) a. If he'll allow me to go, I'll go; if not, I won't go.
- (336) a. I understand a little bit of English--more or less.
b. Give him a little money (more or less) and it will be all right.
- (338) a. There isn't a single vacant room in my home.
b. That box of his is empty.
- (339) a. He has plenty of money.
b. There are plenty of Americans who can speak Chinese.
- (341) a. Pardon me, how do you go to get to the station?
b. Excuse me, let me through.

DISHIWUKE - ZUO LIBAI

I. Duihua

Sī Xs. zai Zhōngguo yige xiǎo chéngli, zhùle yitiān. Tā zai nèr rènshìle bǔshāode Zhōngguo xiāngxia rén. Yǒu yitiān, tā gen yige xiāngxia rén shuō:

Sī: Míngtiān shì xīngqīrì. Jiàotángli zuò lǐbài. Nǐ yě qù kànkān hǎo buhǎo?

Xiāngxia rén: Zuò lǐbài shì zěnme huí shì?

Sī: Zhèige hěn bùróngyì jiǎng. Yìliǎngjù huà yě jiǎngbuqīngchu. Nǐ míngtiān xiān qu kànkān, kànwánle, wǒ zai géi nǐ jiǎng ba.

(Xīngqītiān zǎoshàng, jiàotángli sǎnle huì, nèige xiāngxia rén cóng jiàotángli chūlai, jiù qu zhǎo Sī Xs.)

Sī: Zěnmeyàng? Nǐ kànjian zuò lǐbài le ba?

Xiāngxia rén: Kànjianle. Wǒ jìnqu de shíhou, qiántou dou zuòmǎnle, wǒ zai hòutou zhǎole yige zuòr, jiù zuòxiāle. Yǐhuìr táishàng chūlai yige rén nǎzhe yībēn shū. Jiào wǒmen dàjiā zhànqilai chāng gēr.

Sī: Nèige rén jiù shì mùshì. Nǐmen chāngde shì zànměishì. shì zànměi Shàngdì de yìsi.

Xiāngxia rén: Wǒmen gāng chāngwán, tā you jiào wǒmen bǎ tóu dīxia. Tā zhànzai nèr hǎoxiàng bèishū shìde shuōle hǎoxiē huà. Tā nà shì zuò shénme ne?

Sī: Nà búshì bèishū, nà shì qǐdǎo.

Xiāngxia rén: Ò! Nà jiù shì qǐdǎo a. Wǒ cháng tīngshuō xìn jiàode rén tiāntiān qǐdǎo, kěshì wǒ méitīngjianguo. Hòulai nèige rén yǒu dákai yībēn shū, niǎnle bàntiān, niǎnwánle yǒu jiǎngyán. Hòulai, wǒ jiù shuìzhǎole. Dèng wǒ xīngle, jiù kànjian yǒu rén nǎzhe pánzi chuánlai chuánqu, wǒ kàn rén dou juān qián. Wǒ yě juānle yidiǎnr. Yǐhòu you chāngle yige gēr, jiù sǎnle.

Sī: Nèiwei mùshì niǎnde shì shèngjīng. Tā jiǎngde shì Yēsū Jīdūde dàoli, nà jiào jiǎngdào. Nǐ tīngdōngle yidiǎnr meiyǒu?

Xiāngxia rén: Méidǒng duōshǎo. Suǐrán wǒ bútài dòng, kěshì wǒ juéde nà litou hěn ānjìng. Rén yě dōu hěn héqi. Tāmen hái gēile wǒ yìzhāng huà. Nín kànkān.

Sī: Nǐ zhīdao zhèizhāng huàde yìsi ma? Zhèi shì yige gùshi. Shì Yēsū shuōde yige bīfang. Nǐ kàn, zhèiwei lǎo xiānsheng hěn gāoxìng. Nǐ zhīdao tā wèi shénme gāoxìng ma? Zhèige shì tāde dà érzi, zhèige shì tāde xiǎo érzi. Tāde dà érzi, xiàng hěn shéngqide yàngzi. Nǐ zhīdao tā wèi shénme shéngqì ma? Nǐ tīng wǒ shuō. Zhèiwei lǎo xiānsheng hěn yǒu qián. Yǒu yitiān, tā zhèige xiǎo érzi

qǐng tā fùqin bǎ qián fēngēi tā. Tā fùqin jiù bǎ qián fēngēi tā le. Tā nǎzhe qián jiù dào yige hěn yuǎnde dìfang qùle. Zài nèr bǎ qián dòu yòngwánle. qióngde méi fàn chī. Kǔjile. Hòulai tā xiāngmíngbaile. Tā juéde tā bùyīngdāng líkai jiā. Tā jiù huíqùle. Nǐ kàn zhèi huār, zhè jiùshì tā jiànzhào tā fùqin de yàngzi. Tā shuō: "Fùqin, wǒ zhēn duìbuqǐ nǐn. Wǒ zhēn bùyīngdāng líkai nǐn." Tā fùqin kànjian tā huílaile, xīn litou jiǎnzhíde tòngkuaijile. Jiù gǎnjǐn jiào yòngren gei tā huàn yīshang huàn xié. Yòu jiào chúzi gei tā zuò tèbié hào de cài. Tā dà érzi kànjian jiù hěn shēngqì. Gēn tā fùqin shuō: "Wǒ zài jiā gei nǐn zuò shì, zuòle zènme duō nián, nǐn cónglái yě méigēiguo wǒ shenme tèbiéde dōngxi chī, yě méigēiguo wǒ shenme tèbiéde yīshang chuān. Wèi shénme wǒ dìdi bǎ tāde qián dòu yòngwánle. huílaile, nǐn dào zènme gāoxìng, gěi tā zènme duō dōngxi?" Tā fùqin shuō: "Erzi a, nǐ tiāntiān gēn wǒ zài yíkuàir. Wǒde yíqiè, yǐjing dòu shì nǐde le. Kěshi nǐ dìde, shì sǐle yòu huóle; shì diǎlede, xiànzài yòu zhǎohuílaile. Suǒyi wǒmen yīngdāng tèbié gāoxìng."

Xiāngxia rén: Zhèi gùshi hěn yóuyìsi.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

342. zuò lǐbài VO: attend a religious service, go to church
 a. Wǒ měilǐbài dōu dào nèige jiàotáng qu zuò lǐbài.
343. huì N: meeting
 343.1 kāi huì VO: open a meeting, hold a meeting
344. sàn V: disperse, break up, adjourn
 344.1 sàn huì VO: adjourn a meeting
 z. Zuótian wǎnshangde huì, shì shénme shíhou sànde?
345. mǎn SV: to be full
 345.1 zuòmǎnle RV: all seats are taken, (the room) is full
 345.2 zhuāngmǎnle RV:packed full
 a. Wūzili rén dōu mǎnle.
346. mùshi N: preacher, pastor, minister
347. zànměishī N: hymnal, hymn
 347.1 zànměi V: praise
 347.2 shī N: poem, poetry (M: -shǒu)
 347.3 chàng zànměishī VO: sing a hymn
348. Shàngdì N: God (M: -wèi)
 a. Tāmen chàng zànměishī, shì zànměi shàngdì de yìsi.
349. dītóu VO: bow the head, lower the head.
 349.1 dīxia RV: bow down.
 a. Zhèige mén tài ǎi, nǐ bùdītóu, guòbúqu.
350. bèishū VO: recite (a lesson); to memorize, to learn by heart

- a. Xué wàiguo huà, bèishū hěn yǒuyòng.
351. qídǎo V: pray
 a. Qǐng nǐ yòng Zhōngguo huà gěi wǒmen qídǎo.
352. xìn V: believe
 352.1 xìn jiào VO: accept a religion, adhere to a religion, be a Christian
 352.2 xìn Jīdūjiào VO: be a Christian
 352.3 xìn Yēsūjiào VO: be a Christian
 352.4 xìn Tiānzhǔjiào VO: be a Catholic
- a. Tāde huà wǒ búxìn.
353. dǎkāi RV: open up
 a. Qǐng nǐmen bǎ shū dǎkai.
354. xǐng V: wake up
 354.1 jiàoxǐng RV: awaken
- a. Tā yǐjing xǐngle.
 b. Tā hái xǐngzhe ne.
 c. Tā ràng wǒ jīntian zǎoshang jiào tā, wǒ jiàole tā bàntiān měijiàoxǐng.
355. chuán V: pass, spread
 355.1 chuán jiào VO: propagate religion, to preach the gospel
- a. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèihér táng chuán yichuán.
 b. Tā zài Zhōngguo chuán jiào.
356. chuánlai chuánqu pass around
 356.1 zǒulai zǒuqù walk back and forth
 356.2 pǎolái pǎoqù run back and forth
 356.3 shuōlai shuōqù discuss (the matter) back and forth
 356.4 kànlái kànqù consider from one angle and another
 356.5 shànglái xiàqù go up and down
357. juān V: give, donate, contribute
 357.1 juān qián VO: donate money, raise money by donation
 357.2 juāngei V: donate to
 357.3 gěi...juān qián raise money for....
 357.4 gēn...juān qián ask for contribution, solicit fund
- a. Tāmen yào qǐng tā juāngei xuéxiào yìqiānkuaì qián, bùzhidào tā kěn juān bùkěn.
 b. Wǒmen xiǎng gěi nēixie qiónggrén juān yidiǎnr qián.
 c. Tā yǒudeshì qián, gēn tā juān yidiǎnr ba.
358. shèngjīng N: Holy Bible, the Scriptures, the Bible
359. dàoли N: teaching, doctrine
 359.1 yǒudàoли SV: be logical, reasonable
 359.2 jiǎngdào VO: to preach
- a. Tā shuōde huà hěn yǒudàoли.
360. ānjìng SV: be quiet
 a. Qǐng ānjìng diǎnr!

361. fēn V: divide, separate, share
 361.1 fēn dōngxi divide things
 361.2 fēngēi wǒ wǔkuai qián give me my five dollar share
 361.3 fēnkai RV: separate
- a. Wǒ bǎ nèikuai táng, fēngēi ta yíban.
362. qióng SV: be poor
 362.1 qióngren N: poor people
- a. Tā qiánliangnián hěn qióng.
363. kǔ SV: be bitter to the taste; be hard, difficult (of life)
 363.1 chīkǔ VO: suffer bitterly
- a. Dàgài méi rén xǐhuan chī kǔ dōngxi.
 b. Tā zhèiliangnián, kǔjǐle.
 c. Nèige rén hěn néngchīkǔ.
364. cǒnglái...(jiu) MA: heretofore, in the past
 364.1 cǒnglai...méi... never before, never did
 364.2 cǒnglái...bù... never before, never do
- a. Wǒ cǒnglai méitīngjianguo tā chàng ger.
365. sǐ V: die
 365.1 sǐrén N: dead person
 365.2 dāsǐle RV: killed (by beating or a gun)
 365.3 èsǐle RV: die of hunger, starve (to death)
 365.4 bìngsǐle RV: die of illness
- a. Zuótiān nèige fēiji chūshì, sǐle èrshì jige rén.
 b. Wǒmen kuài zhǎo yige dìfang chīfàn qu ba, wǒ jiǎnchíde yào èsǐle.
366. huó SV: be alive, living
 366.1 huózhe living
 366.2 huóbuliǎo RV: be unable to live
 366.3 huóguolai RV: come to
- a. Tā huózhede shíhou, zuì xǐhuan dào zhèr lái.
 b. Zuótiān tāmen bǎ ta dāsǐle, hòulai tā yǒu huóguolaile.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Descriptive Complement and Resultative Verb Compared:

We are accustomed to think of pǎodekuài as an RV, kuài serving as the result of pǎo and the whole combination referring to the capability of the actor in carrying out the action. In this case, it is customary to write all the syllables together, forming one RV expression:

Tā pǎodekuài. (He can run fast.)

But kuài in this pattern may describe the manner or degree of the action pǎo rather than its result. In this case, kuài is considered as a descriptive complement of pǎo and is written separately:

Tā pǎode kuài. (His running--the way he runs--is fast.)

The following sentence illustrates the different functions of kuài as an RVE and as descriptive complement:

Rén shuō tā tài pàng, pǎobukuài. Nǐ kàn, tā pǎode hěn kuài.
(People say he's too fat and can't run fast. Look, he runs very fast.)

- 1.1 The two different functions of kuài can be seen more clearly in a negative statement. In a negative potential RV with kuài as the RVE, the form is the familiar pǎobukuài; but when kuài serves as a descriptive complement, de must be added after the V, pǎode búkuài:

Resultative Verb: Tā pǎobukuài. (He cannot run fast.)
Descriptive Complement: Tā pǎode búkuài. (He doesn't run fast.)

- 1.2 It is to our benefit to review the pattern of "describing the manner of an action", introduced in speak Chinese, which is the same as calling what comes after the V as a descriptive complement:

Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéde hěn kuài.
Tāde Zhōngguó huà, xuéde hěn kuài.
Zhèige shìqing, nǐ zuòde búcuò.
Lǎotaitai zǒulù, zǒude hěn màn.

1.3 The Structure of the Descriptive Complement:

The descriptive complement describes the manner or extent of the main action (V) or the state (SV) preceding it:

Chīde wǒ zhànbuqiláile.
(I ate so much that I could not stand up.)

Gāoxìngde tā yíyè méishuìjiào.
(He was excited to such an extent that he didn't sleep the whole night long.)

The descriptive complement may be just an SV (as illustrated in 1. and 1.1) or a clause--S-SV, S-RV, or S-V-O:

SV: Tā pǎode hěn kuài.
S-SV: Tā shuōde wǒmen lèijíle.
S-RV: Lèide wǒ zhànbuqiláile.
S-V-O: Qǐde wǒ měichī wǎnfán.

The important element in all these structures is the SV, V or RV; the S or O, or both, may be dropped when the meaning is clear without them.

1.4 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.41 This tree cannot grow any taller.
1.42 He can write very well, but he doesn't want to.
1.43 These clothes are too small and can't be altered satisfactorily.
1.44 I don't think he can explain it clearly.

- 1.45 I think he explained it very clearly.
- 1.46 He sings beautifully.
- 1.47 Can we finish this book within a month? I think you can but he can't.
- 1.48 This table is sturdily made.
- 1.49 If you drive too slowly, it is just as bad as driving too fast.
- 1.50 I won't accept his invitation for supper, because I cannot get enough to eat in his house.

2. The Usage of Chǔle:

Chǔle or "chǔle...yǐwài" means "except", "all but". Because of its exclusive meaning, an inclusive adverb, like dōu, quán, lǎo and zǒng, is generally used to refer to the rest of the things after an item has been singled out by chǔle:

Chǔle nège (yǐwài), wǒ dōu xǐhuan.
(I like all but that one.)

From the above illustration we can see that dōu is equivalent to "all" in the English translation, indicating the inclusiveness; and chǔle is equivalent to "but", singling out nège (that one).

2.1 Chǔle in the double clause "chǔle...(yǐwài), ...lìngwài..." means "besides", "in addition to". The adverb hái is generally used in this structure to stress the idea of "still", "further" besides the item referred to by chǔle:

Chǔle zhège biǎo (yǐwài), wǒ lìngwài hái yǒu yige.
(Besides this watch, I still have another one.)

2.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.21 Besides the silver watch I bought for her, she still wants a gold one.
- 2.22 I like all of my courses except history.
- 2.23 In addition to these five hundred dollars, he still wants to borrow five hundred more.
- 2.24 Nobody knows how to do it except him.
- 2.25 In addition to these three Protestant churches, we have two Catholic churches.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Jīntian zuò lǐbài, shì shéi jiǎngdào?" "Shì Chén Mushi, nǐ rènshi ma?"
2. "Zuótiān kāi huì nǐmen zuò shénme le?" "Wǒmen shāngliang juān qián de shìqing."

3. "Nǐ yě xìn Tiānzhǔjiào ma?" "Wǒ shénme jiào dou búxìn."
4. "Qǐng nǐ bǎ shèngjīng dǎkai." "Wǒ wàngle dai shèngjīng laile."
5. "Nǐ jīntiān zǎoshang shénme shíhou xǐngde?" "Tā wúdiān zhōng jiu bǎ wo jiàoxingle."
6. "Nǐ tiāntiān shénme shíhou qǐdǎo?" "Chángcháng shì zai shuǐjiào yiqián."
7. "Zài jiàotángli nǐ wèi shénme zuòzai hòutou?" "Qiántou dou zuòmǎnle."
8. "Nǐ yīngdāng bǎ juānde qián, fēngēi ta yíbàn." "Wǒ yào fēngēi ta, kěshi ta búyào."
9. "Tāde qíngxíng zěnmeyàng?" "Tā qióngde méi fàn chi."
10. "Zuótian nèige fēiji chūshì, sǐle jǐge rén?" "Wǔge rén. Yíge dou méihuó."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. zai nèige xiǎo chéngli zhùle meizhù? Tā zai nèr rènshìle shénme rén le?
2. Yǒu yitiān ta gen yige xiāngxia rén shuō shénme? Nèige xiāngxia rén dòng budòng ta shuōde huà? Tā gěi nèige xiāngxia rén jiāngle meiyóu? Wèi shénme?
3. Xīngqītiān zǎoshang nèige xiāngxia rén dao jiàotáng qùle meiyóu? Sànlè huì yǐhòu, tā dao shénme dìfang qùle?
4. Nèige xiāngxia rén jìnle jiàotáng, zuòzai shénme dìfang le? Wèi shénme méizuòzai qiántou?
5. Táishangde rén shì shénme rén? Tāmen chànde shì shénme?
6. Táishangde nèige rén xiàng bèishū shìde shuōle hǎoxiē huà, nà shì zuò shénme ne?
7. Táishangde rén niānde shū shì shénme shū? Tā jiǎngde shì shénme? Nèige xiāngxia rén dòng budòng? Tā zuò shénme le?
8. Nèige xiāngxia rén shuō jiàotángli zěnmeyàng? Jiàotánglide rén zěnmeyàng?
9. Nèi xiāngxia rén zhīdao bu zhīdao nèizhāng huàr shì shénme yìsi?
10. Nǐ xiǎng nèizhāng huàrshang dou huàzhe shénme? Yǒu jǐge rén?
11. Nèizhāng huàrshangde rén shéi hěn shēngqì? Shéi hěn gāoxìng? Nèige rén wèi shénme shēngqì? Nèige rén wèi shénme gāoxìng?
12. Nèige xiǎo érzi yǒu yitiān qǐng ta fùqin zuò shénme?
13. Tā dao shénme dìfang qùle? Hòulai ta wèi shénme huílaile?
14. Tā huílai yǐhòu, gen ta fùqin shuō shénme?
15. Tā fùqin kànjian ta huílaile, jiào yòngren zuò shénme? Tā dà érzi gen ta fùqin shuō shénme? Tā fùqin shuō shénme?

16. Shénme shì zuò lǐbài? Zuò lǐbài de shíhou dou zuò shénme shì?
17. Shénme shì zànměishī? Shénme shì qǐdǎo? Shénme shì jiāngdào?
18. Nǐ xìn shénme jiào? Shì Jīdūjiào háishi Tiānzhǔjiào?
19. Nǐ měicì zuò lǐbài de shíhou dou juān qián ma? Juān duōshao?
20. Yìbǎikuai qián, sānge rén fēn, fēndekāi fēnbukāi? Yíge rén dǎgǎi fēn duōshao?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn ni, zuò lǐbài shì zěnme huí shì, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn ni, wèi shénme yào cháng zànměishī, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Nǐ bǎ zuò lǐbài zuòde shìqing, shuōshuo.
4. Nǐ néng bǎ huàrshang nèige gùshi shuōshuo ma?
5. Nǐ néng bǎ nèige bǐfangde yìsi jiǎngjiǎng ma?

VII. Bèishū

A: Hěnjǐu méijiàn, jìnlái zěnme yàng?

B: Hài, yǒuyidiǎnr bushǔfu.

A: zěnmele?

B: Shāngfēng, háojitiān le.

A: Tóuteng ba.

B: Bù, kěshi kěsoude hěn lìhai.

A: Děi liú diǎnr shén. Chī yào le meiyou?

B: Chīle. Wǒ xiànzài dào yīyuàn qu kǎnkan.

A: Duìle. Nín kuài qù ba.

B: Hǎo, zàijiàn ba.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 Some people go to church every week; some only go twice a year.

1.2 Since there are too many people attending service in that church, they need a bigger church.

- 1.3 When did the meeting adjourn?
- 1.4 This sheet of paper is full; let's have another one.
- 1.5 Every seat in that church was taken this morning.
- 1.6 That minister likes to preach very much, especially to us country people.
- 1.7 Now let's sing some hymns, number fifty-two, first.
- 1.8 God is right in our hearts.
- 1.9 Let's bow our heads and pray.
- 1.10 Can you recite some lines from the Bible?
- 1.11 What is your religion?
- 1.12 If you don't believe it, go and try it yourself.
- 1.13 Please open the Bible.
- 1.14 Last night when the thief came, I had gone to bed but I was still awake.
- 1.15 When I really fall sound asleep, nobody can wake me up.
- 1.16 He has been preaching the gospel in China for more than twenty years.
- 1.17 She said it over and over again, but I couldn't understand what she meant.
- 1.18 I just ask you to give me my due share.
- 1.19 During that war, quite a few people were killed.
- 1.20 When he was alive, he contributed a lot of money to that church.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (342) a. I go to that church to attend the service there every Sunday.
- (344) a. When did the meeting adjourn last night?
- (345) a. The room is full of people.
b. Every seat in the room is taken.
- (348) a. The purpose of singing hymns is to praise God.
- (349) a. This door is too low. You cannot pass through if you don't lower your head.
- (350) a. Memorization is very useful in learning foreign languages.
- (351) a. Please pray for us in Chinese.
- (352) a. I don't believe what he says.

- (353) a. Please open your books.
- (354) a. He has already wakened.
b. He is still awake.
c. He asked me to wake him this morning. I tried for a long time, but did not succeed.
- (355) a. Please pass this box of candy around.
b. He is preaching the gospel in China.
- (357) a. They are planning to ask him to contribute a thousand dollars to the school, but they don't know whether he will or not.
b. We want to raise some money for those poor people.
c. He has a lot of money. Let's ask him to contribute.
- (359) a. What he said was very logical.
- (360) a. Quiet down, please!
- (361) a. I gave him half of that candy.
- (362) a. He was very poor for the last couple of years.
- (363) a. Probably there is nobody who likes to eat things that taste bitter.
b. He's had a hard time these last few years.
c. That man can endure a great deal of suffering.
- (364) a. I have never heard him sing before.
- (365) a. The airplane had an accident yesterday. More than twenty persons were killed.
b. Let's find a place to eat, quickly. I'm starved!
- (366) a. When he was alive, he liked very much to come here.
b. They killed him yesterday, afterward he came to again.

DISHILIÙKE - CĀNGUĀN XUÉXIÀO

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. xiǎng qu cānguān yige zhōngxué. Tā zhīdao Zhào Zīān Xs. rènshi nèige xiàozhǎng. Tā jiu qu zhǎo Zhào Xs., qǐng Zhào Xs. gěi ta xiě yifēng jièshàoxìn. Tā jiànzhào Zhào Xs. shuō:

Sī: Āi, Zīān, hěn jiǔ méijiàn.

Zhào: Nín hǎo a? Shénme shíhou huílaide?

Sī: Huílai liangtian le. Wǒ xiǎng qiú nín diǎnr shì. Wǒ xiǎng dao Xīngguó-Zhōngxué qu cānguāncānguan. Wǒ jǐde nín shuōguo, nín rènshi nèiwei Chén Xiàozhǎng, shì bushì? Wǒ xiǎng qiú nín gěi wo xiě yifēng jièshàoxìn, bùzhīdao chéng buchéng?

Zhào: Dāngrán keyi. Nín nǎitian qù? Yàoburán wǒ gen nín yíkuàir qu, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Nà tài máfan nín le. Wǒ kàn búbìle. Nín gěi wo xiě yifēng xìn, jiu xíngle. Zàishuō, wǒ hái méijuéding nǎitiān néng qù ne.

Zhào: Yě hǎo. Nème wǒ xiànzài jiu gěi nín xiě.

(Guòle liangtian Sī Xs. dào le Xīngguó-Zhōngxuéde ménfáng, bǎ tāde piànzi gen jièshàoxìn náchulai, gēn ménfánglide rén shuō:)

Sī: Wǒ shì Sīmǐzī. Zhèi shì wǒde piànzi, zhèi shì jièshàoxìn. Wǒ yào jiàn nimen xiàozhǎng. Láojià, nín kànkàn zài zhèr meiyou.

Ménfáng: Qǐng nín děng yihuǐr, wǒ gěi kànkàn qu.

(Ménfáng nǎzhe piànzi gen xìn, jìnqule, yihuǐr jiu chūlaile, shuō:)

Ménfáng: Qǐng nín jìnlai ba.

(Dào le kètīngli.)

Ménfáng: Nín xiān qǐngzuò ba. Xiàozhǎng yihuǐr jiu lái.

(Yíwèi sishìduōsuìde nánren, dàizhe yǎnjìng jìnle kètīng, jiu xiàozhe gēn Sī Xs. lāshǒu.)

Xiàozhǎng: Nín shì Sīmǐzī Xs. ba, wǒ shì Chén zōnghàn.

Sī: Ō. Chén xiàozhǎng. Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.

Xiàozhǎng: Nín dao Zhōngguo duō jiǔle?

Sī: Chàbuduō bànnián le.

Xiàozhǎng: Nín gēn Zīān shì zài Měiguó rènshide ma?

Sī: Kě bushì ma! Wǒmen rènshi shíjinián le. Lǎo péngyou.
Xiàozhǎng: Tā hǎo ba.
Sī: Hěn hǎo, tā jiào wǒ tì ta wèn nín hǎo.
Xiàozhǎng: Xièxie. Zěnmeyàng? Nín shì yào kànkàn shàngkède qíngxíng, shì bushì?
Sī: Duìle. Yīnwei wǒ tīngshuō nín duì bàn xuéxiào, yǒu yǒu yánjiu, yǒu yǒu jīngyán....
Xiàozhǎng: Guòjiǎng.
Sī: Suóyì lái cānguāncānguan, gēn nín xuéxue.
Xiàozhǎng: Nín zhēn shì tài kèqì. Zhèige xuéxiàode lìshǐ hěn duǎn. Bànle cái wúnián. Wǒmen yǒu liùbān xuésheng, chūzhōng sānbān, gāozhōng sānbān. Fángzi ne, yǒu bāge kèshì, yíge lìtáng; yùndòngchǎng, tiyùguǎn túshūguǎn, dōu yǒu. Suǐrán bú tài hǎo, kèshì hái dōu kēyì yòng. Dēng yīhuìr, wǒ gēn nín qu kànkàn.
Sī: Xiànzài yǒu duōshao xuésheng?
Xiàozhǎng: Yǒu sānbǎiduō. Bǐ liǎngnián yìqián duō yìbèi.
Sī: Dōu zhùxiào ma?
Xiàozhǎng: Bù. Sùshè búgòu dà. Jiù yǒu sānfēnzhiyī zhùxiào. Kěshì wúfàn chàbuduō suǒyǒude xuésheng dōu zài zhèr chí.
Sī: Yǒu duōshaowèi jiàoyuán?
Xiàozhǎng: Yǒu shíliùwèi.
Sī: Nín zhèrde gōngkè dōu yǒu shénme?
Xiàozhǎng: Bùyíyàng. Děi kàn shì nēibān. Kěshì Zhōngwén, Yīngwén, dìlǐ, lìshǐ nēiban dōu yǒu.
Sī: Yìnián fēn jǐge xuéqī?
Xiàozhǎng: Wǒmen zhèr yìnián fēn liǎngxuéqī. Shǔjià, fàng liǎngge yuè. Hánjià, jiù yǒu sānge xīngqī.
Sī: Měitiān zǎoshang jǐdiān zhōng shàngkè?
Xiàozhǎng: Zhèr shì gōngkèbiǎo. Nín kàn, zǎoshang dìyītáng shì bādiǎn zhōng shàngkè. Shàng wúshífēn zhōng de kè, xiūxi shífēn zhōng.
Sī: Xiànzài shàngkè ne ma?
Xiàozhǎng: Shàngkè ne. Wǒmen qu kànkàn qu ba.
Sī: Hǎojǐle.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

367. cānguān V: pay a visit to (a public place)
inspect informally, go sightseeing
- a. Tā chūqu cānguān xuéxiào qule.
368. zhǎng N: head (of an organization)
368.1 shěngzhǎng N: governor of a province
368.2 xiànzhǎng N: magistrate of a county
368.3 xiàozhǎng N: principal of a school, president of a college
368.4 chuánzhǎng N: captain(of a boat)
368.5 júzhǎng N: the one in charge of the office, as
-yóuzhèngjú júzhǎng - postmaster
369. jièshàoxìn N: letter of introduction
370. qiú V: ask, beg
370.1 qiú rén VO: ask for help
370.2 qiú...diǎnr shì ask a favor
- a. Wǒ qiú nín diǎnr shì.
b. Nèiběn shū wǒ qiú ta tì wǒ mǎile.
371. ménfáng N: gatekeeper's room, gatekeeper
372. piànzi N: card, calling card (M: -zhāng)
373. yǎnjìng(r) eye glasses (M: -fù, set)
373.1 dǎi yǎnjìng(r) VO: wear glasses
374. lā V: pull
374.1 lāshǒu VO: shake hands
374.2 lāguolai RV: pull over
374.3 lāshānglai RV: pull up
374.4 lāxiàqu RV: pull down
- a. Tā jiànzhào wǒ, jiù lìkè guòlai gēn wǒ lāshǒu.
375. jīngyàn N: experience
375.1 yǒujīngyàn VO/SV: be experienced
- a. Tā duì zhèiyàngde shìqing jīngyàn hěn duō.
376. lìshǐ N: history
- a. Zhōngguó yǒu wǔqiānniǎnde lìshǐ.
377. bān M/N: class (the group of students or the period of class)
- 377.1 shàngbān VO: go to class; go to work
377.2 xiàbān VO: class is dismissed; office hours are over
377.3 zhèibān this class
377.4 liǎngbān two classes
- a. Tā zài bānshàng cháng shuǐjiào.
b. Zhèige xuéxiào yǒu jībān xuésheng?

378. chūzhōng N: junior high (abbr. of 378.1)
 378.1 chūjīzhōngxué N: junior high school
 378.2 chūzhōngyī (niánjí) N: first year of junior high
379. gāozhōng N: senior high (abbr. of 379.1)
 379.1 gāojīzhōngxué N: senior high school
 379.2 gāozhōngsān (niánjí) N: third year of senior high
380. kèshì N: class room
381. -táng BF/M: hall/class period
 381.1 (dǎ) lǐtáng N: auditorium
 381.2 kètáng N: class room
 381.3 jiāngtáng N: class room
- a. Wǒ jīntian shàngwǔ yǒu sāntáng kè.
382. fēijīchǎng N: air field
 382.1 -chǎng BF: field
383. yùndòng V: exercise
 383.1 yùndòngchǎng N: athletic field
384. -guǎn N: hall, building
 384.1 tǐyùguǎn N: gymnasium
 384.2 túshūguǎn N: library
385. -bèi M: times, -fold
386. -fēnzhī- M: pattern for fractions
 386.1 sānfēnzhīyī NU: one third
 386.2 jīfēnzhījī NU: what fraction?
387. zhùxiào VO: live in the school
388. sùshè N: dormitory
389. jiàoyuán N: teacher (M: -wèi)
390. gōngkèbiǎo N: schedule of day's classes
391. dìlǐ N: geography
392. xuéqī N/M: semester, term
 392.1 zhèixuéqī this term
 392.2 shàngxuéqī last term
 392.3 xià xuéqī next term
 392.4 sāngē xuéqī three terms
393. jià N: vacation
 393.1 chūnjià N: spring vacation
 393.2 shūjià N: summer vacation
 393.3 hánjià N: winter vacation
 393.4 bìngjià N: sick leave
 393.5 qǐng jià VO: ask leave
 393.6 fàng jià VO: close school for a vacation, to have a vacation
 393.7 fàng sāntiān jià have three days vacation
- a. Nǐmen fàng jítīān jià?
 b. Shūjià kuài dào le.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

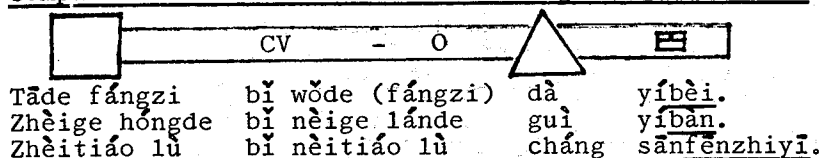
1. Multiples and Fractions:

In English we use such expressions as:

twice as much	half again as large as
three times as much as	one-fifth larger than
fourfold	fifty percent wider
half as long as	one and a half times the size of

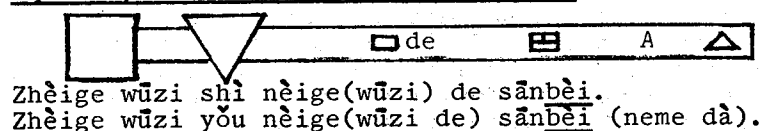
In Chinese these all fall into the pattern of comparison with measured degree. A secondary pattern, much less used than the comparison pattern, is sometimes met. It is known as the equality pattern.

1.1 Comparison Pattern with Measured Degree Based on Bǐ:



NOTE: bèi indicates the number of times or fold;
bàn is the fraction half but follows the pattern of bèi
 (and is sometimes used in the sense of bèi, making
 the expression guì yí**bàn** ambiguous).
 X-fēnzhī-Y is the formula for a fraction when preceded by
 an appropriate denominator and followed by a
 numerator.

1.2 Equality Pattern Based on Yǒu or Shì:



1.3 Exercise I - Make sentences in Chinese, using the following SV in the two patterns introduced above:

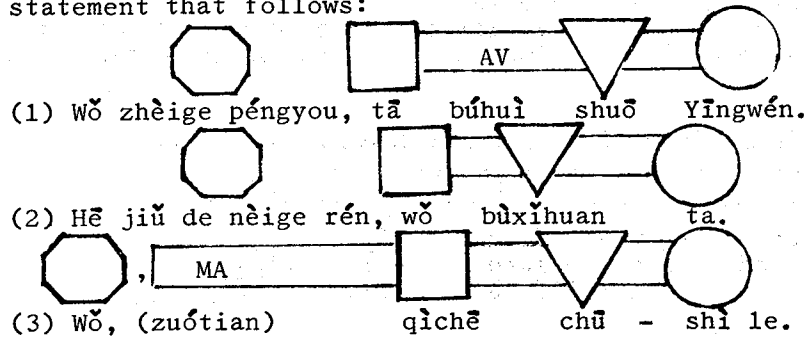
yuǎn cháng kuài duō hǎo dà guì
 jìn duǎn màn shǎo huài xiǎo piányi

1.4 Exercise II - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.41 I have only half as much as he has.
- 1.42 Mine is fifty percent larger than his.
- 1.43 This building is three times as tall as that one.
- 1.44 There are more men than women in this town. The women are only nine-tenths as many as the men.
- 1.45 He drives twice as fast as I do.
- 1.46 His house is one and a half times the size of mine.
- 1.47 He spent about three times as much as I did.
- 1.48 This one is one-fifth shorter than the other.
- 1.49 He only spends one-fourth of the time I do in studying.
- 1.50 This tree is about two-thirds as tall as that one.

2. Prestated Topic of a Sentence:

The basic pattern in both Chinese and English is S-V-O. In Chinese there is often added to these a predated topic. In English, we may say, "as to such-and-such a matter, I am wholeheartedly in favor of it." "As to" here introduces a predated topic. In Chinese, however, no introductory "as to" is required. Moreover, this predated topic may be (1) identical with the subject, (2) identical with the object or (3) the possessor of the subject. A predated topic may be set off from the rest of the sentence by a comma to indicate that it in no way affects the structure of the statement that follows:



In (3) both wǒ and qìchē may be considered as the subject by interpreting it as wode qìchē. Since an MA, like zuótian, may be inserted between wǒ and qìchē, wǒ, although still the possessor of qìchē, may also be considered as a predated topic.

2.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.11 With so little money, it will all be gone after the groceries and house rent are paid for.
- 2.12 Of these pictures, I like this one the most.
- 2.13 The one who gave me a car is very wealthy.
- 2.14 As to the well-to-dos, they don't want to donate; as to the poor, they cannot afford to donate anything.
- 2.15 I don't understand a word of what he said.
- 2.16 As to the teachers in the school, none of them dislikes you.
- 2.17 As to that man! He wants everything.
- 2.18 Speaking about the school he visited, everyone wants to study there.
- 2.19 As to all my friends, I didn't give them anything
- 2.20 Although he sold the house for \$5000, he spent it all within a month.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Wǒ qiú nín diǎnr shì." "Yǒu shénme shì? Nín shuō ba."
2. "Zhāng Xs. wèn nín hǎo." "Nín jiànzhao ta yě tì wǒ wèn tā hǎo."
3. "Nèiwei jiàoyuán shì jiāo chūzhōng shì jiāo gāozhōng?" "Chūzhōng, kěshi wǒ bùzhīdao ta jiāo néibān."
4. "Zhèige xuéxiào yǒu tīyùguǎn meiyǒu?" "Méiyǒu tīyùguǎn, kěshi yǒu yùndòngchǎng."

5. "Nǐ zhèixuéqī zhùxiào ma?" "Búzhù. Sùshè tài luàn."
6. "Wǒ kànkàn gōngkèbiǎo, jídiān zhōng shàng bān?" "Dàgài shì bādiān bān."
7. "Xiàozhǎng zài dàlǐtáng zuò shénme ne?" "Gēn jiàoyuán tán huà ne."
8. "Zhèixuéqī nǐ jiāo dìlǐ ma?" "Méijiāo dìlǐ, jiāole yimén lìshǐ."
9. "Nǐmen xuéxiào shénme shíhou fàng shǔjiǎ?" "Dàgài shì liùyuè, wǒ shuōbuqīngchu."
10. "Wǒ xiǎng míngtiān qǐng yìtiān jià, kéyi bùkényi?" "Yàoshi yǒu yào jīnde shì jiù kéyi."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shénme qu zhǎo Zhào Xs.?
2. Sī Xs. xiǎng qǐng Zhào Xs. bāng ta yidiǎnr máng, tā shì zěnme gen Zhào Xs. shuōde?
3. Sī Xs. zěnme zhīdao Zhào Xs. rènshi Chén Xiàozhǎng?
4. Wèi shénme Sī Xs. búràng Zhào Xs. gen ta yikuàir qù?
5. Sī Xs. dào le xuéxiào de ménfáng gen ménfánglide ren zěnme shuōde?
6. Chén Xiàozhǎng shénme yàng? Tā jìnle kètīng zuò shénme shì?
7. Sī Xs. Gen Chén xiàozhǎng shuō wèi shénme ta yào cānguān nèige xuéxiào?
8. Nèige xuéxiào de lìshǐ yǒu duōshaonián le? Tāmen you duōshaobān xuésheng? Chūzhōng jībān, gāozhōng jībān?
9. Nèige xuéxiào dōu yǒu shénme fángzi? Yǒu sùshè meiyou?
10. Tāmen you duōshao xuésheng? Bǐ liǎngnián qǐqián duō duōshao?
11. Yǒu duōshao xuésheng zhùxiào? Zhùxiào de xuésheng shì suǒyǒu de xuéshengde jīfēnzhījǐ?
12. Yǒu duōshao xuésheng zai xuéxiào li chī wǔfàn?
13. Tāmen yǒu duōshao wèi jiàoyuán? Tāmen dōu yǒu shénme gōngkè?
14. Tāmen yinián fēn jǐxuéqī? Yǒu duōshao rìzide hánjiǎ? Chūnjiǎ ne?
15. Tāmen měitiān shénme shíhou shàng kè? Shénme shíhou xià kè? Gōngkèbiǎoshang shì zěnme xiède?
16. Měiguode zhōngxué fēn chūzhōng gāozhōng bufēn? Chūzhōng jīnián? Gāozhōng jīnián?
17. Měiguode zhōngxué zuì yào jīnde gōngkè dōu shì shénme?
18. Nǐ shàngde nèige zhōngxué dōu yǒu shénme fángzi? Yǒu yùndòngchǎng meiyou? Yǒu sùshè meiyou? Nǐ nèige shíhou zhùxiào ma?

19. Nǐ yíge lǐbài shàng duōshaotáng kè? Měitiān jídiān zhōng shàng kè? Jídiān zhōng xià kè?
20. Zhèige xuéxiào yìnián fēn jǐxuéqī? Shǔjià duōme cháng? Hánjià duōme cháng? Chūnjià ne?

VI. Nǐ shuō shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ qù kàn nǐde péngyou, dào le ménfáng, nǐ gēn ménfánglide rén shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi nǐ dào yíge xuéxiào qu cānguān, zai cānguān yǐqián, nǐ gēn xiàozhǎng shuō shénme?
3. Nǐ kànjian nǐde péngyou, xiǎng dǎting yige biéde péngyoude qíngxíng, nǐ shuō shénme?
4. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gàosong nǐ xuéxiàode qíngxíng, nǐ shuō shénme?
5. Yàoshi yǒurén wèn ni, yìtiān shàng jǐge zhōngtóude kè, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:
 - 1.1 May I ask a favor of you?
 - 1.2 May I ask you to write a letter of introduction?
 - 1.3 This teacher is experienced in teaching history in junior high.
 - 1.4 This is an old high school, but this library is new.
 - 1.5 When are you coming back from work?
 - 1.6 The class will end at ten past ten o'clock.
 - 1.7 Those students are all in the first year of senior high,
 - 1.8 The dormitory is big enough for every teacher and student to live at the school.
 - 1.9 How many courses does that teacher teach?
 - 1.10 After he finished his speech, the principal of the school shook hands with everybody.
 - 1.11 What does the principal look like? Does he wear glasses?
 - 1.12 He has been a freshman for three terms.

1.13 When will the spring vacation begin at your school?

1.14 We are going to have three days vacation.

1.15 Tomorrow is a holiday.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(367) a. He went out to visit a school.

(370) a. May I ask a favor of you?

b. I have asked him to buy that book for me.

(374) a. As soon as he saw me, he came over and shook hands with me.

(375) a. His experience in this kind of things is quite extensive.

(376) a. China has a history of five thousand years.

(377) a. He often sleeps in class.

b. How many classes are there in this school?

(381) a. I have three classes (or periods) this morning.

(393) a. How many days vacation do you have?

b. Summer vacation will soon be here.

DISHIQÍKE - CĀNGUĀN SHÀNGKÈ

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. qu cānguān xuéxiào. Chén Xiàozhǎng dàizhe ta dào yíge kèshì kànkān shàngkède qíngxíng.

- Xiàozhǎng: Wǒ xiān qǐng nín kàn zhèibān ba. Zhèibān shì chūzhōng èrniánjíde Yīngwén. Jiāo Yīngwén, dāngrán shì měibānde xuésheng yuè shǎo yuè hǎo, kèshì yīnwei wǒmende jiàoyuán búgòu, suóyì zhèibān chàbuduō yǒu sìshiduōge xuésheng. Wǒ zhīdao zhèige bànfǎ búduì. Búguò méi fázi. Xìngkuī wǒmèn xuéxiào yǒu liúshēngjī; tāmen xuésheng xiàle bān, kéyì tīng piānzi.
- Sī: Nà jiu hǎoduōle.
(Tāmen dào le kèshìli, zuòzai hòutou.)
- Jiàoyuán: (duì xuésheng) Kàn disìshibáyè. Zhāng Fāngnián, nǐ niàn di yíjù.
- Zhāng: (zhànqilai) "I don't...(a)...know whether...(a)...I... (a)...will go or not."
- Jiàoyuán: Nǐde fāyīn búsuàn tài bùhǎo. Kèshì niànde bú tài zìrán. Wǒ dàizhe nimen niàn jìcì. Nimen dou gēnzhe wo niàn.
(Niànle jìcì yǐhòu.)
- Jiàoyuán: Lǐ Yǒucái, nǐ jiēzhe niàn dièrjù.
(Lǐ yǒucái zhànqilai, zhànle liǎngfēn zhōng, màn mǎnrde shuō:)
- Lǐ: Xiānsheng, zuótian wǎnshang wǒ yǒuyidiǎnr tóuteng. Nín liúxiade gōngkè, wǒ méiyùbei, zhèi dìsāngē zì niàn shénme? Wǒ búzhīdao zěnme niàn.
- Jiàoyuán: Disāngē zì shì "whether".
- Lǐ: "No matter weseer....."
- Jiàoyuán: Búduì. Nǐ tīngzhe, wǒ gěi ni gǎi. Nǐ gēnzhe wo shuō: "Whether".
- Lǐ: "wheser."
- Jiàoyuán: "No matter whether."
- Lǐ: "No matter wheser."
- Jiàoyuán: Búduì. Búshì "wheser", shì "whether." "TH" gēn "S" de fāyīn yǒu fēnbie. Nǐ tīngdechulái ma?
- Lǐ: Tīng shì tīngdechulái, kěshì shuōbuduì. Qǐng nín zài dài wo niàn jìcì.
- Jiàoyuán: Nín liúshén tīng, "whether."

- Lǐ: "Whether."
- Jiàoyuán: Duìle, wàng xià niàn.
- Lǐ: No matter...(a)...whether...(a)...he will...(a)...go or not, I...(zhèige zhèige), will stay here.
- Jiàoyuán: Nǐ dòng zhèiju huà zěnme jiǎng ma? Nǐ néng huídá ma? Nǐ néng bǎ zhèiju huà, fāncheng Zhōngwén ma?
- Lǐ: Wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng fān. Nà yìsi shì bushì "Wúlùn nǐ qù buqu, wǒ fǎnzhèng búqù."
- Jiàoyuán: Chàbuduō. "Whether", zhèige zì, zěnme yòng? Nǐ yòng zhèige zì, zuò yìjù huà.
(Lǐ Yǒucái zhànzai nèr, bàntiān méishuō huà.)
- Jiàoyuán: (duì Lǐ Yǒucái) Nǐ zuòxia ba. Yǒu biéren huì meiyou? Méiyou rén huì. Nǐmen dōu kàn disìshíjiǔyè xiàtòude liànxi. Huíqu bǎ liànxi zuòzuò. Zài bǎ dishíèrke wēnxiwēnxi. Xiàxīngqīyī wǒmen kǎoshì. Nǐmen yǒu shénme wèntí ma?
(Sī Xs. gen Xiàozhǎng jiu chūlaile. Zài lìngwài yige kèshìli, yiwèi lǎo xiānsheng jiǎng Tángshì. Yǒu sìshíjige xuésheng tīng, hēibǎnshang xiězhe "jǔ tóu wàng míng yuè, dī tóu sī gǔ xiāng" shíge dà zì. Xiàozhǎng gen Sī Xs. zhànzai hòutou.)
- Lǎo xiānsheng: Zhèi liǎngju shì shì Lǐ Bái zuòde. Nǐmen yǒu rén huì jiǎng ma?
(Xuésheng dōu bùshuō huà.)
- Lǎo xiānsheng: Nèige zì búhuì jiǎng? Jǔshǒu.
(Yǒu yige xuésheng jǔshǒu.)
- Lǎo xiānsheng: Hǎo. Zhāng Míngcháng. Nǐ nèige zì bùdǒng? Yǒu shénme wèntí?
- Zhāng: Zhèige "jǔ" zì wǒ búhuì jiǎng. Píngcháng wǒmen shuō yòng shǒu jǔ dǒngxì. Huòshi shuō, bǎ dǒngxì júqilai. Wǒmen yě shuō jǔshǒu. Kěshi "jǔtóu" zěnme jiǎng ne?
- Lǎo xiānsheng: Nǐmen děi zhīdào, xiànzài wǒmen shuōde huà, gēn shì lìtòude huà, yǒu hěn dàde fēnbié. Xiànzài wǒmen shuō "jǔ", duōbàn dōu shì yòng shǒu jǔ. Yàoshi zhèige "jǔ" zì, yě shì yòng shǒu jǔde yìsi, neme "jǔtóu" jiu shì yòng shǒu bǎ tóu júqilaile. Nà búshì chénglè xiàohua le ma? "Jǔtóu" liǎngge zìde yìsi, jiu shì wǒmen xiànzài shuō "táitóu" de yìsi. "Wàng" jiu shì "kàn". "jǔ tóu wàng míng yuè", jiu shì táitóu kànjian hěn liǎngde yuèliang. Xiàtòu nèijù "dī tóu sī gǔ xiāng", zěnme jiǎng ne?
- Zhāng: Wǒ xiǎng "dī tóu" zhèi liǎngge zì, gen wǒmen xiànzài shuō "dī tóu", méi shenme fēnbié. Jiù shì bǎ tóu dīxia. "Sī" wǒ xiǎng jiu shì "xiāng" de yìsi, "Gǔ xiāng" jiu shì "lǎojiā". Zhèiju shìde yìsi, wǒ xiǎng shì "dīxia tóu jiu xiāngqi lǎojiā laile". Bùzhīdào duì buduì?

Lǎo xiānsheng: Búcuò.

(Sī Xs. gen Chén Xiàozhǎng màn mǎnrde zǒuchulaile.)

Sì: Zhèiwei lǎo xiānsheng jiǎngde hěn yǒuyìsi.

Xiàozhǎng: Zhèiwei xiānsheng duì jiǎng Tángshī fēicháng yǒuyánjiu.
Qǐng nín dao wǒmen túshūguǎn qu kànkàn ba.

Sī: Hǎojíle.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

394. yuè...yuè... A: the more...the more...
394.1 yuè chī yuè pàng the more you eat, the fatter you are
394.2 yuè xiě yuè kuài the more you write, the faster you get

a. Yuè xué yuè duō, yuè duō yuè róngyì wàng.

395. yuèlái yuè... A: getting more and more...
395.1 yuè lái yuè nán getting more and more difficult
395.2 yuè lái yuè zāogāo getting worse and worse

a. Nèige rén yuè lái yuè qíguài.

396. bànfǎ N: method of doing, way to do something
396.1 méiyǒu bànfǎ VO: there is no way out
396.2 xiǎng bànfǎ VO: to think of a way

a. Zhèijiàn shì, nǐ děi tì wǒ xiǎng yige bànfǎ.

397. liúshēngjī N: phonograph
397.1 kāi liúshēngjī VO: play the phonograph

398. piānzi N: record, film
398.1 tīng piānzi VO: listen to record
398.2 liúshēngjī piānzi N: phonograph record

399. yè M: page
399.1 dìyīyè the first page

400. fāyīn VO/N: pronounce/pronunciation

a. Tā zhèige zìfāyīn fāde búduì.

401. zìrán SV/A: be natural/of course, naturally
401.1 nà shì zìrán IE: Naturally!

a. Tāde huà shuōde hěn zìrán.
b. Nǐ bugéi ta qián, zìrán ta bugéi ni zuò.

402. dài(zhe) V: lead

a. Qǐng nín dài zhe wǒmen qǐdǎo.
b. Xiānsheng dài zhe wǒ niánle sāncì.
c. Qǐng nín dài wǒ qu kànkàn.

403. jiēzhe A: continuing, going on, or tying in where
one left off when interrupted.

- 403.1 jiēzhe niàn continue reading
 403.2 jiēzhe shuō continue speaking
 403.3 jiēzhe xiě continue writing
- a. Tāde gùshi, zuótian méishuōwán; jīntian hái yào jiēzhe shuō.
404. fēnbié N: difference
 404.1 yǒu fēnbié there is a difference
 404.2 fēnbié hěn dà the difference is considerable
 404.3 fēnbié zai zhèr the difference is right here
- a. Zhèi liǎngge zì yǒu hěn dàde fēnbié.
405. -chūlai RVE: make out, distinguish
 405.1 kànchulai RV: make out (seeing)
 405.2 wénchulai RV: make out (smelling)
 405.3 chángchulai RV: make out (tasting)
 405.4 chīchulai RV: make out (tasting)
 405.5 tīngchulai RV: make out (hearing)
406. huídá V: answer
- a. Tā jiào wo huídá, kěshi wǒ huídábuchulai.
407. fān(yì) V/N: translate/translation; translator
 407.1 fānyì shū VO: translate books.
408. chéng V: become
 RVE: (change) into
 408.1 fānchéng RV-O: translate into Chinese
 Zhōngwén
 408.2 fēnchéng sānkuài RV-O: divided into three pieces
 408.3 zuòchéng RV: accomplish
- a. Jinián bújiàn, tā chéngle dà rén le.
 b. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi ju huà fānchéng Yīngwén.
 c. Tāde yīshang zuòchéngle ma?
409. liànxí V/N: practice
 409.1 zuò liànxí VO: do exercise
- a. Xué shuō wàiguó huà, liànxide jīhui yuè duō yuè hǎo.
 b. Tā Zhōngguó huà méixuéhǎo, shì yīngwei liànxí búgòu.
410. wēnxí V: review
- a. Wǒmen zhèige xīngqī wēnxi, méiyǒu xīn gōngkè.
411. kǎo V: examine, take an examination
 411.1 kǎo shū VO: examine, take an examination
 411.2 kǎoshì V: examine, take an examination
 N: examination
- a. Wǒmen shénme shíhou kǎoshì?
 b. Tā zhèicì kǎoshì, kǎode búcuò.
412. wèntí N: question, problem
 412.1 huídá wèntí VO: answer a question
 412.2 méi wèntí IE: there is no problem
413. Tángshī N: T'ang((Dynasty) poetry (M. shǒu)

414. hēibǎn N: blackboard (M: -kuài)
415. Lǐ Bái N: Li Po (one of the most celebrated poets of the T'ang Dynasty)
416. jǔ V: raise
 416.1 jǔshǒu VO: raise one's hand
 416.2 jǔqilai RV: raise up
- a. Shéi huì, qǐng jǔshǒu.
 b. Zhèige dōngxī wǒ yìzhī shǒu jǔbuqilai.
417. táitou VO: lift up one's head, raise up one's head
- a. Nǐ bǎ tóu táiqilai. (Táiqi tóu lai.)
 b. Wǒ táitóu yìkàn, wàitou xià xuě le.
418. yuèliang N: moon
419. xiǎngqilai RV: recall, think of
 419.1 xiǎngqi lǎojiā laile recall my old home
 419.2 xiǎngqi tā shuōde laile recall what he said
 419.3 xiǎngqi yìqiánde shìqing laile recall old times
- a. Tā yìshuō yào xué Yīngwén, wǒ jiù xiǎngqi nǐ laile.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. NU-M as a predicate:

Sometimes a NU-M alone may serve as predicate without a verb:

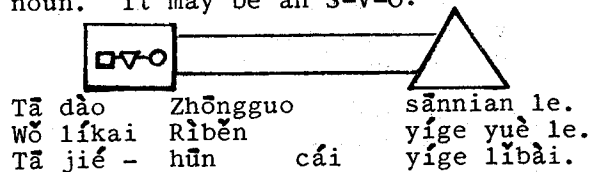
Tā sānsuì le. (He is three years old.)
 Wúkuai qián yībēn. (Five dollars per book.)

One explanation is that the verb is understood (since a verb may be supplied).

Tā (yǒu) sānsuì (neme dà) le.
 Wúkuai qián (mǎi) yībēn.

Another explanation is that a NU-M used in this way functions as a verb. The fact is that a NU-M is often used as a full predicate.

1.1 The subject or topic of the NU-M predicate is not necessarily a noun. It may be an S-V-O:



1.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

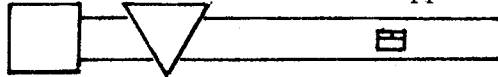
- 1.21 This book costs five dollars.
 1.22 How old are all your children?

- 1.23 How much (money) for each of us?
 1.24 He has been graduated from college for five years already.
 1.25 I have had this pen for more than ten years and I am still using it.
 1.26 I have been here for more than six months.
 1.27 He arrived here an hour ago.
 1.28 He finished singing only ten minutes ago.
 1.29 It has been only two years since he left school.
 1.30 This tree has been here for ten and a half years.

2. Action-time Relationship:

When a time-spent expression is used in a sentence, it is sometimes not clear whether it refers to the period of time during which the action has been continuous or to the period of time that has elapsed since the action. The context generally can clarify the ambiguity.

2.1 Action-time relations often appear in one of these patterns:



- 2.11 Tā chīle yíge zhōngtóu le.
 (He has been eating for an hour.--continuous action)
 (He finished eating an hour ago.--elapsed time)



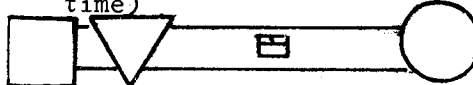
- 2.12 Huār hóngle sāntian le.
 (The flower became red three days ago.--elapsed time)



- 2.13 Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xuéle wǔge yuè le.
 (I have been studying Chinese for five months.--continuous action) (rarely elapsed time)



- 2.14 Nèizhang huà, tā huàle yitiān le.
 (He has been painting that picture for a whole day.--continuous action)
 (He finished painting that picture a day ago.--elapsed time)



- 2.15 Tā niànle sānge lǐbàide Fǎwén.
 (He studied French for three weeks.--continuous action)



- 2.16 Tā jiéhūn yìnián le.
 (He was married a year ago.--elapsed time)

2.2 Exercise- Translate into Chinese:

- 2.21 He has left China for more than three years.
- 2.22 He has been talking about leaving China for more than three years.
- 2.23 He has recovered a week ago.
- 2.24 He has been well for a week.
- 2.25 I have been teaching for one year already.
- 2.26 It has been one year already since I taught him.
- 2.27 He has been writing that book for half a year.
- 2.28 He wrote that book a year ago.
- 2.29 He graduated from college a year ago.
- 2.30 The wedding lasted four hours.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Nèiběn shū nǐ wèi shénme méikànwán?" "Yuè kàn yuè méiyìsi."
2. "Zhèi liangtiān nèijian shìqing zěnmeyàng?" "Yuè lai yuè bùhǎobàn."
3. "Nèige zì nǐde fāyīn búda qīngchu." "Duìle. Qǐng nǐ dài zhe wǒ shuō jìcì."
4. "Nèiben shū nǐ kànle duōshāoyè le?" "Gāng kànle èrshiduōyè, míngtiān zài jiēzhe kǎn."
5. "Zhèi liǎngju huà yòu shénme fēnbie?" "Méi shénme dà fēnbie."
6. "Nǐ néng bǎ zhèiju huà fāncheng Rìwén ma?" "Wǒ yěxǔ néng fān, kěshi búyíding duì."
7. "Nǐde fāyīn búduì, dàgài shì méi gōngfu liànxì ba." "Búshì méi gōngfu liànxì, méiliànxì jiù shìle."
8. "Míngtiān kǎoshì, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng děi wēnxì ba." "Nà shì zìrán. Bùwēnxì bùxíng."
9. "Zhèige zìde yìsi zuótian wēnxide shíhou wǒ hǎoxiàng jìzhule." "Xiànzài wàngle shì bushì?" "Búshì wàngle, shì xiǎngbuqiláile."
10. "Hēibǎnshàngde zì shéi kànbuqīngchu, jǔshǒu." "Xiānsheng, dìwǔge zì shì shénme?"

V. Wèntí

1. Chén Xiǎozhǎng dài zhe Sī Xs. cānguān shàngkède qíngxing, tāmen xiān kàn nēibān? Nēibān yǒu duōshāo xuésheng? Wèi shénme nēibān yǒu nème duō xuésheng?
2. Chén Xiǎozhǎng juéde yìbān yīngdǎng buyīngdǎng yǒu nème duō xuésheng? Tāmende xuésheng xiǎole bān zěnmeyàng?
3. Jiāo Yīngwén de jiàoyuán jiào xuésheng zuò shénme? Jiàoyuán shuō nèige xuéshengde fāyīn zěnmeyàng?
4. Nèiwei jiàoyuán jiao Lǐ Yǒucái niàn, Lǐ Yǒucái shuō shénme?
5. Lǐ yǒucái dòng budòng nèiju Yīngwén shì shénme yìsi? Tā néng bǎ nèiju fāncheng Zhōngwén ma? Nèiju huà shì shénme yìsi?

6. Lǐ Yǒucái bǎ nèijū huà fānwánle, jiàoyuán yòu jiào ta zuò shénme? Tā huì buhuì?
7. Jiàoyuan ràng tāmen zěnmē wēnxi? Wēnxi diduōshaokè? Tāmen shénme shíhou kǎoshì? Xuésheng yǒu wèntí meiyóu?
8. Chén Xiàozhǎng gen Sī Xs. chūlai yǐhòu, yòu qù cānguān shénme kè?
9. Zài nèige kèshìli yǒu duōshao xuésheng? Hēibǎnshang xiězhe shénme?
10. Lǎo xiānsheng shuō nèi liǎngjū shī shì shéi zuòde? Xuésheng yǒurén huì jiǎng ma?
11. Zhāng Míngchǎng wèi shénme jǔshǒu? Tā yǒu shénme wèntí? Tā nèige zì budǒng?
12. Lǎo xiānsheng shuō xiànzài rén shuōde huà gen shīlide huà yǒu meiyóu fēnbié?
13. Xiànzài rén shuō "jǔ" shì shénme yìsi? "jǔtóu" shì shénme yìsi? "Dītóu" gen xiànzài shuō dītóu de yìsi yíyàng buyíyàng?
14. Lǎo xiānsheng shuō Zhāng Míngchǎng jiǎngde duì buduì?
15. Sī Xs. shuō nèiwei lǎo xiānsheng jiǎngde zěnmeyàng? Chén Xiàozhāng shuō nèiwei lǎo xiānsheng jiǎng Tángshī jiǎngde zěnmeyàng?
16. Jiāo Yīngwén zuìhǎo yìbān yǒu duōshao xuésheng?
17. Xué Yīngwén yòng liúshēngjī tīng piānzi, yǒuyòng meiyóu?
18. Zhōngguó xuésheng xué Yīngwén, shénme dìfang zuì nán? Shénme zì fāyīn zuì nán?
19. Nèi liǎngjū shīlide shíge zì, qǐng ni yígeyígedè jiǎng yíjiǎng.
20. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèi liǎngjū shī fāncheng Yīngwén.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Zài kèshìli, yàoshi xiānsheng shuōde huà nǐ méitīngqīngchu, nǐ xiǎng wèn, nǐ zěnmē wèn?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng xiānsheng dàizhe nǐ liànxi fāyīn, nǐ zěnmē gēn xiānsheng shuō?
3. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu wèntí xiǎng wèn xiānsheng, nǐ zěnmē wèn?
4. Yàoshi yǒude zì nǐ búhuì jiǎng, nǐ zěnmē qǐng xiānsheng gěi nǐ jiǎng?
5. Yàoshi yǒu yíge zì nǐ búrènshi, nǐ zěnmē wèn?

VII. Bèishū

A: Zhèitáng nǐ yǒu kè meiyǒu?

B: Yǒu. Jīntian shàngwǔ sítáng. Nǐ ne?

A: Wǒ gāng shàngle yítáng lìshǐ. Zhèitáng méi kè. Dào túshūguǎn qu kàn yihuīr shū.

B: Jīntian hái yǒu jǐtáng?

A: Xiàwǔ hái yǒu yítáng. Nǐ shénme shíhou xià kè?

B: Shíèrdiǎnbàn xiàle kè jiu méi kè le.

A: Sāndian zhōng dào wo nèr qu hē diǎnr chá, zěnmeyàng?

B: Hǎo. Jiù nènme bàn.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 The more you pay him money the more he will drink.

1.2 Since he came here, my headache has been getting worse and worse.

1.3 In case I lose it I'll have to think of another way.

1.4 His translation is all right, but the way he talks is not very natural. He needs more practice, I guess.

1.5 I will read it first; all of you follow me.

1.6 I will go on with the story tomorrow.

1.7 What is the difference between these two methods?

1.8 There is considerable difference between these two kinds of tea. Can you distinguish it.

1.9 Can you translate this sentence into Russian?

1.10 You haven't had enough practice and review. That's what you need most. Don't you think so?

1.11 We are going to review this week, and have an examination next week. Our vacation begins Friday.

1.12 He did very poorly in this examination.

1.13 Which of you have finished the first question? Please raise your hands.

1.14 After the prayer, everybody raised his head.

1.15 When I saw the moon, I recalled my old home.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(394) a. The more you study, the more you know; the more you know, the easier you forget.

(395) a. That man is getting more and more peculiar.

(396) a. You've got to find me a solution for this problem.

- (400) a. He pronounced this word incorrectly.
- (401) a. He speaks very naturally.
b. If you don't pay him naturally he won't do it.
- (402) a. Will you please lead us in prayer.
b. I read it after the teacher three times.
- (403) a. He didn't finish his story yesterday, and he will go on with it today.
- (404) a. There is a whole lot of difference between these two words.
- (406) a. He asked me to answer it, but I couldn't.
- (408) a. I haven't seen him for a few years, and he has become an adult.
b. Please translate this sentence into English.
c. Are his clothes finished?
- (409) a. In learning a foreign language, the more opportunity for practice the better.
b. His Chinese is poor, because he hasn't had enough practice.
- (410) a. This week we'll review. There will be no new lessons.
- (411) a. When is our examination?
b. He did very well in this examination.
- (416) a. Whoever knows the answer please raise his hand.
b. I cannot raise this thing with one hand.
- (417) a. Please raise your head.
b. When I raised my head and looked, it was snowing outside.
- (419) a. As soon as he said he wanted to learn English, I thought of you.

DISHIBÁKE - KÀNBÌNG

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xs. juéde yǒuyidiǎnr bùshūfu. Tā dào yige yīyuàn qu zhǎo dàifu gěi ta kànkān. Tā dào le yīyuàn ménkǒur, gēn yige rén dǎting.

Sī: Qǐngwèn, zài shénme dìfang guàhào?

Nèige rén: (yòngshǒu zhǐzhe) Jiù zài zuǒbianr nèige xiǎo chuānghu nèr. chuānghu pángbiānr yǒu yige páizi, shàngtōu xiězhe guàhàochù. Nín rènshi Zhōngguó zì ba. Jiù shì nèibianr neige, qiántōu zhànzhe hǎoxiē rén. Nín kànjian meiyǒu?

Sī: Kànjianle. Láojià, láojià.

(Sī Xs. dào le lǐtōu, kànjian chuānghu qiántōu yǒu hěn duō rén. Tā jiu zhànzai hòutōu dēngzhe. Dēngzhede shíhou, tā gēn yige bìngrén, Zhāng Xs., shuō:)

Sī: Nín guìxìng?

Zhāng: Xìng Zhāng. Nín guìxìng?

Sī: Xìng Sī. Nín shì lai kànbìng de ma?

Zhāng: Kě bushì ma! Yá téng.

Sī: Nín dào zhèr lái guo ma?

Zhāng: Láiguó háojihuí le. Zhèige yīyuàn shízài búcuò. Yákē dàifu yǒuqǐ hǎo. Qiánliangtian wǒ yá téng, téngde jiǎnzhide bùnéng chī dōngxī. Láile yíci, jiu háoduōle. Zhè shì wǒ disānci lái. Xiànzài yidiǎnr dōu bùténgle. Yàobúshì dàifu shàngci shuō jiao wǒ zài lai kàn yíci, wǒ jiu bùlái.

Sī: Zài zhèige yīyuàn kànbìng, shǒuxu máfan bumáfan?

Zhāng: Máfan dàoshi bumáfan, guàle hào jiù qu jiàn dàifu, búguò bìngrén tài duō, děi dēngzhe. Jiù shì dānwu gōngfu.

(Sī Xs. kànjian chuānghu qiántōu méi rén le.)

Sī: Nín qu guàhào ba. Gāi nín le.

(Zhāng Xs. guàle hào, shuō:)

Zhāng: Nín lái ba. Wǒ yào jiàn dàifu qule. Zàijiàn.

(Sī Xs. dào le chuānghu qiántōu.)

Guàhàochù: Nín lái guo meiyǒu?

Sī: Méilái guo, zhè shì dìyíci.

Guàhàochù: Shì nèikē, shì wèikē?

- Sī: Nèikē.
- Guàhàochù: Nín shì guà pǔtōnghào, háishì guà tèbié hào?
- Sī: Yǒu shénme fēnbie?
- Guàhàochù: Pǔtōnghào yíkuai qián, tèbié hào wǔkuai qián. Guà pǔtōng hào de rén duō, dèi duō děng yìhuǐr.
- Sī: Duō děng yìhuǐr búyào jǐn, wǒ fǎnzhèng méi shì. Wǒ guà pǔtōnghào ba.
- Guàhàochù: Yíkuai qián. Nín bǎ zhèizhang biǎo tián yitián.
(Sī Xs. bǎ biǎo tiánhǎo, jiāogei guàhàochù, you gěile yíkuai qián. Guàhàochù gěi ta yige páizi.)
- Guàhàochù: Nín shì sānbǎi-sìshí-liù hào. Dào èrcéng lou, èrbǎi-wúshihào qu jiàn Mǎ Daifu.
- Sī: Hǎo. Xièxie.
(Sī Xs. dào le èrbǎi-wúshihào, bǎ guàhàode páizi gei hùshi kànle kàn.)
- Hùshi: Nín qǐng zuòxia děng yìhuǐr ba.
(Děngle bàngè zhōngtóu.)
- Hùshi: Sānbǎi-sìshí-liù hào. Sīmǐzī Xs.
(Sī Xs. jiu dào dàifude wūzili qule.)
- Mǎ: Nín shì Sīmǐzī Xs. ba? Qǐngzuò ba. Zěnmele?
- Sī: Jìnlái yèli shuǐjiào shuǐde bùhǎo. Búshuǐ yě búkùn. Shuǐzhǎole jiu zuò mèng. Zuòde mèng, dōu tīng kèpà. Shuǐbuliǎo jifēnzhōng, jiu xià yitiáo, xiàxīngle. xīnglede shíhou, zǒngshì chū háoxiē hàn. Hái chángchang késou. Yǒu shíhou juéde lèide lìhai. Yě bú tài xiǎng chǐ dōngxi. Bùzhīdao shì shénme yuángu. Wǒ pà yuè lái yuè lìhai, suǒyǐ lái qǐng nín gěi wǒ jiǎnchá jiǎnchá.
- Mǎ: Hǎo. Wǒ gěi nín kànkàn.
(Mǎ dàifu gei Sī Xs. tīngle ting, shìle shì wēndùbiǎo.)
- Mǎ: Nín kě bukě?
- Sī: Kě. zǒng xiǎng hē shuǐ.
- Mǎ: Tīngbuchūlái yǒu shénme bìng. Yě méifāshāo. Wǒ kàn dèi zhào yìzhāng X-guāngde xiàng, kàn yìkàn. Yàoshi nín yǒu gōngfu, zuìhǎo shì zhùyuan jiǎnchá jiǎnchá.
- Sī: Wǒ xiǎng wǒ xiān zhào yìzhāng X-guāngde xiàngpiānr, qǐng nín kàn yìkàn, yàoshi hái kànbuchūlái, wǒ xiǎngqǐ zài lái zhùyuan. Bùzhīdao xíng bùxíng?
- Mǎ: Hǎo ba, zhànshí wǒ xiān gěi nín kāi yige yàofāngr, nín dao yàofāngli mǎi yìdiǎnr zhèige yào, shì ānmiányào, shuǐjiào yìqián chī. (Bǎ yàofāngr jiāogei Sī Xs.) Nín qǐng dào

sāncéng lóu sānbǎi-bāshí-sìhào, qu zhào yìzhāng xiàng.
Xiàxīngqī nín zài lái kànkan ba.

Sī: Hǎo ba, xièxie nín, zài jiàn.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

420. yīyuàn N: hospital
421. zhǐzhe V: pointing
421.1 zhǐ V: point
422. chù BF: place, office, point feature
M: (for dìfang) specifies localization
- 422.1 guàhàochù N: registration (desk, window, etc.)
422.2 chùchù N: everywhere
422.3 hǎochu N: good point, benefit
422.4 huàichu N: bad point
422.5 chángchu N: strong point (of people)
422.6 duǎnchu N: shortcoming (of people)
422.7 nánchu N: difficulty
422.8 yòngchu N: use, usage

a. Niànshū yǒu hěn duōde hǎochu.

423. kē N: department
423.1 yákē N: dental department
423.2 yǎnkē N: optical department
423.3 ěrbíhóukē N: ear, nose, throat department
423.4 nèikē N: medical department
423.5 wàikē N: surgical department

424. shízài SV: be real, honest
A: really, actually

- 424.1 shízài shuō tell you the honest truth
424.2 shuō shízàide tell you the honest truth

425. shǒuxu N: procedure, process

426. dānwu V: to delay, waste (cf. fèi)
426.1 dānwu gōngfu waste time, take time
426.2 dānwu shíhou waste time, take time
426.3 dānwu shìqing delay a business affair

a. Wǒmen zài qìchēzhàn děng chē, dānwu hěn duōde shíhou.

427. gāi AV: it is fitting that, should
427.1 gāi shéi? whose turn?
427.2 gāi zǒule its time to go

a. Jīntian gāi nǐ qùle, míngtian gāi shéi?

428. pǔtōng SV: ordinary, common (cf. píngcháng)
A: ordinarily
428.1 pǔtōng huà common speech

a. Zhèijù huà, pǔtōng búzhème shuō.

429. biǎo N: chart, blank, form (M: -zhāng)

430. tián V: fill in
430.1 tián biǎo VO: fill in a form
431. céng M: story (for lóu)
431.1 sāncéng lóu third floor, three stories
431.2 dìwǔcéng fifth floor
- a. Zhèige lóu yǒu sāncéng.
b. Tā zhùzai sāncéng lóu.
432. hùshì N: nurse (M: -wèi)
433. jìnlái A: recently
a. Nǐ jìnlái kànjian ta meiyou?
434. kùn SV: be sleepy
435. yuángù N: reason
436. mèng N: dream
436.1 zuò mèng VO: dream
436.2 mèngjian RV: dreamed about, see...in a dream
- a. Wǒ zuótiān yèli zuòle yige mèng, mèngjian tā sǐle.
437. kě BF: prefixed to verb with much the meaning of the English -able, -ible
437.1 kěxiào SV: be laughable
437.2 kěpà SV: be productive of fear
437.3 kěnéng SV/A/N: possible/possibly/possibility
437.4 kěqùde dìfang places one can go to
437.5 méi shénme kěshuōde nothing that can be said
- a. Nèige rén zhēn kěpà.
438. xià V: startle, frighten
438.1 xiàhuàile RV: scared to pieces
438.2 xiàsǐle RV: scared to death
438.3 xià yítiao startled
- a. Tā láiile, xiàle wǒ yítiao.
439. hàn N: sweat
439.1 chūhàn VO: sweat, perspire
- a. Tā chūle yítou hàn.
440. jiǎnchá V: examine
440.1 jiǎnchá bìng be examined (for a disease)
440.2 jiǎnchá xíngli inspect baggage
- a. Nǐ děi zhǎo dàifu, gěi nǐ jiǎnchájiǎnchá.
441. kě SV: be thirsty
442. zhào xiàng VO: take a picture, be photographed
442.1 xiàngpiānr N: photograph
442.2 zhàoxiàngjī N: camera
- a. Wǒ gěi nín zhào yizhāng xiàng ba?
b. Tā zhàode zhèizhāng xiàng búcuò.
c. Nín xihuan zhào xiàng me?

443. guāng	N: light, ray
443.1 àikèsī-guāng	N: X-ray
443.2 zhào àikèsī-guāng	VO: take an X-ray
443.3 zhào àikèsī-guāng xiàng	VO: take an X-ray picture
444. zhùyuan	VO: stay in the hospital
444.1 zhù yīyuàn	VO: stay in the hospital
444.2 zhùyuan de bìng rén	N: in-patient
445. yàofāng	N: prescription (M: -zhāng)
445.1 kāi yàofāng	VO: to prescribe
a. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ kāi yige yàofāng.	
446. yàofáng	N: drugstore (cf. <u>yàopù</u>)
447. ānmiányào	N: sleeping pills

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Ambiguity of Languages:

In the Chinese language, there is no inflection of nouns for number or case, no inflection of verbs for person, number, tense, mood or voice. Hence the Chinese language is simple in form, but this very virtue of simplicity is accompanied by the evil of ambiguity.

1.1 English is simpler than French and is therefore more ambiguous than the latter. Civilization has trained us to assume friendly intent on the part of a friend when he asks, "May I have you for supper?" and not even to suspect him of cannibal intention. Nevertheless, there is ambiguity inherent in the question.

1.2 Four ambiguous expressions have been chosen from what we have learned for further clarification. Where there is a choice of expressions the student should use the clearest forms, although he should be able to understand the ambiguous ones from their context because people do use them.

1.21 zū fáng:

"Wǒ zūle yisuǒr fáng" may mean
 (I rented a house)--as a tenant, or
 (I rented out a house)--as a landlord.

This sentence usually means renting a house by a tenant. For a landlord planning to rent out a house, it is best to say:

Wǒ zūchu yisuǒr fáng qu; or
 Wǒ bǎ yisuǒr fáng zūchuqule; or
 Wǒ zūgei (so and so) yisuǒr fáng.

1.22 zhào xiàng:

"Wǒ zhàole yizhāng xiàng? may mean
 (I took a picture) or
 (I had my picture taken.)

It is much clearer to add a few words and say:

Wǒ gěi ta zhàole yizhāng xiàng.
(I took a picture for him.)

Wǒ qǐng ta géi wǒ zhàole yizhāng xiàng.
(I asked him to take a picture for me.)

1.23 Kàn bìng:

Kàn bìng is ambiguous. When the actor is the doctor, it means to diagnose a disease, to attend a patient or to practice medicine. When the actor is the patient, it means to see a doctor:

"Wǒ míngtiān yào qù kàn bìng" may mean
(Tomorrow I am going out to see a patient.) or
(Tomorrow I am going out to see a doctor.)

In order to avoid ambiguity, it is best to say "qǐng dàifu géi wǒ kàn bìng" for seeing a doctor, thus limiting the actor of kàn bìng to be the doctor only.

1.24 juān qián:

This VO may mean to contribute money or to ask somebody else to contribute money:

"Wǒ juānle yìbǎikuai qián" may mean
(I contributed \$100) or
(I got a \$100 contribution--for some organization.)

To express the idea of contributing, it is best to say juāngei such and such organization for how much:

Wǒ juāngei jiàohuì yìbǎikuai qián.

To express the idea of collecting contributions, it is best to use the following forms:

Wǒ gěi jiàohuì juānle yìbǎikuai qián.
Wǒ tì jiàohuì juānle yìbǎikuai qián.

1.3 Exercise I - Translate into English:

- 1.31 Zuótiān wǒ zhàole yizhāng xiàng, yě bùzhīdao zhàode hǎo buhǎo. Tāmen shuō jīntiān jiào wǒ qu kàn yàngzi. Yàoshi wǒ bùxǐhuan, tāmen zài géi wǒ zhào.
1.32 Nǐde fángzi zūhǎole meiyǒu? Yàoshi tāmen hái méigěi dìngqian ne, wǒ yǒu yige péngyou xiǎng qu kànkan, bùzhīdao xíng buxíng?
- 1.33 Nǐ xiǎng juān duōshao qián ne? Wǒ juéde zhèizhǒng shìqing nǐ děi zìjǐ juéding. Biéren méi fázi tì nǐ chū zhúyì. Yàoshi nǐ yuànyì duō juān, jiù duō juān diǎnr.
- 1.34 Zhèi jítīān zǒng tóuteng. Yě bùzhīdao shì shénme bìng. Suǒyì wǒ xiǎng zuìhao shì zǎo yìdiǎnr kànkan qu.
- 1.35 Zuótiān zài gōngyuánli, xiǎoháizi yào zhàoxiàng. Wǒ búràng ta zhào; tā jiù kǔle. Wǒde xīn zhàoxiàngjī, wǒ pà ta géi wǒ nònghuàile.

- 1.36 Xiànzài wǒmen yǐjīng yǒule sānwàn-qīqiānduōkuài qián le. Nǐ shuō wǒ hái dèi zài juān duōshao? Dāngrán zuìhǎo néng yǒu wūwàнкуài qián. Kěshì zài juān yíwànduō, kǒngpà bùróngyì ba.
- 1.37 nín jiwèi xiān zai zhèr zuò yihuǐr ba. Wǒ dèi kàn bìng qule. Zhēn qíguài, měicì dōu shì zhèyàngr. Jiāli yìyǒu kèren, jiu you bìngren dǎ diànhuà.
- 1.38 Zūfáng zhēn bùróngyì. zuì yào jǐn jiushi dèi héshì. Yǒurén shuō nǐ guān ta héshì bùhéshì ne, fǎnzhèng tā dèi géi nǐ fángqian. Wǒ xiǎng bùxíng. Yàoshi bùhéshì, yǐhòu yídìng máfan.
- 1.39 Wǒ zuótian kàn bìng qule, dàifu shuō dèi kàn wǒde X-guāngde xiàng. Tā yao géi wo zhào. Wǒ shuō wǒ yǒu yige péngyou, tā zhào piányì. Wǒ dao tā ner géi nǐ zhào yizhang qu, xíng bùxíng? Tā shuō bùxíng. Tā pà ta zhàobuhǎo.
- 1.40 Tā zuì xǐhuan juān qián. Qiántian wǒ kànjian ta zhànzai jiēshang jiāngyǎn, jiāngwǎnle jiu gēn rén yào qián. Jīntian yǒu dào zhèr lai juānlaile.

1.4 Exercise II - Make sentences with zū fáng, zhào xiàng, kàn bìng and juān qián, trying to avoid the possibility of ambiguity.

2. Some More Bǎ Construction:

The bǎ construction has been discussed in Lesson 12. Two more points are worthy of note.

2.1 It has been said (Lesson 12, Part III, 1.4) that in a bǎ construction, the main verb must be followed by a complement of some sort. In addition to the five types mentioned, the complement may be the descriptive type with de added after the main verb, (discussed in Lesson 15). The subject of a descriptive complement may be moved to a position in front of the main verb by means of a bǎ:

Descriptive complement: Shuōde wǒmen lèijíle.

The bǎ construction: Bǎ wǒmen shuōde lèijíle.

2.2 In Lesson 12 we learned that in a sentence using the bǎ construction an RVE may follow the main verb as a complement. When the RVE is an RV itself like shànglai, xiàqu, it is possible to insert a place between the double-syllable RVE:

Bǎ zhuōzi bānshang lóu qu.

2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.31 I was so tired that I could not speak a word.
- 2.32 He stared at me and made me feel embarrassed.
- 2.33 Please take this book back home.
- 2.34 He rowed my boat to the other side of the river.
- 2.35 He talked so long that I almost fell asleep.

2.36 May I drive your car up to the top of the mountain?

2.37 Look! He is flying the plane into that cloud.

2.38 I read so much that my eyes hurt.

2.39 The weather is so hot that everybody is too lazy to work.

2.40 They moved the table into the room.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Nèige yīyuàn shénme kē zuì hǎo?" "Wǒ xiǎng wàikē zuì hǎo. Yǎnkē yě búcuò."
2. "Zài zhèr kàn bìng yǒu shénme shǒuxu?" "Nǐ děi dao guàhàochù xiān tián yìzhang biǎo."
3. "Tā shízai huì shuō huà." "Zhèi shì tāde chángchu, yě shì tāde duǎnchu."
4. "Wǒ jìnlái cháng xīntiào, bùzhīdao shì shénme yuángu?" "Qǐng dài fu géi ni jiǎnchajiǎncha ba."
5. "Shízai bùzǎole. Wǒmen gāi zǒule?" "cái shídiàn zhōng. Máng shénme?"
6. "Guà tèbiéhào shì zai zhèr guà ma?" "Zhèr jiu guǎn guà pǔtōnghào. Guà tèbiéhào zài wúcéng lóu."
7. "Wǒ zuótian wǎnshang zuòle yíge mèng. Nǐ zhīdao wo mèngjian shénme le ma?" "Nǐ yíding mèngjian mǎile yíge zhàoxiàng jī."
8. "Nǐ zěnmè zhīdao ta bingle?" "Lǎo Lǐ gào song wo de. Tā yìshuō, xiǎle wo yítiào."
9. "Wǒ jīntian děi qu zhào xiàng qu." "Shì běi bié rén zhào, shì ràng biéren gěi nǐ zhào."
10. "Mǎi ānmiányào zěnmè mǎi?" "Ní dei yào dàifu géi ni kāi yige yàofāngr."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shénme yao dao yīyuàn qu? Tā dào le yīyuàn ménkǒur zhīdao bùzhīdao nǎr shì guàhàochù?
2. Tā gēn rén dǎting guàhàochù zai nǎr nèige rén zěnmè gào song ta? Shuō shénme?
3. Sī Xs. dēngzhe guàhàode shíhou, pèngjian shéi le? Nèige rén you shénme bìng? Nèige rén dào nèige yīyuàn qu guo jǐcì le?
4. Nèige rén shuō nèige yīyuàn hǎo buhǎo? Shénme kē zuì hǎo? Kǎnbìngde shǒuxu máfan bùmáfan? Wèi shénme dǎnwu gōngfu?
5. Guàhàochùlide rén wèn Sī Xs. shénme huà? Sī Xs. gēn ta shuō shénme?

6. Zài nèige yīyuànli, guà pǔtōnghào gen guà tèbié hào yǒu shénme fēnbié?
7. Guàhào de shíhou yǒu shénme shǒuxu?
8. Sī Xs. nàde páizi shì duōshaohào? Tā děi dào jǐcéng lóu qu? Duōshaohào de wūzi? Jiàn nèige dàifu?
9. Sī Xs. kànjian hùshi, gēn hùshi shuō shénme? Tā děngle duó jiǔ?
10. Sī Xs. gēn dàifu shuō tā juéde zěnme bùshūfu? Shuǐjiào shuìde zěnmeyàng? Hái zěnme bùshūfu?
11. Tā wèi shénme yào qǐng dàifu gěi ta jiǎnchá?
12. Dàifu tīngdechūlai tīngbuchūlái tāde bìng shì shénme bìng? Gěi ta shì wēndùbiào le meiyǒu?
13. Tā kě bùkě? Fāshāo méifāshāo?
14. Dàifu shuō děi zěnme jiǎnchá? Sī Xs. yào zěnme jiǎnchá?
15. Dàifu gěi ta kāile yige yàofāng, nèige yào shì shénme yào? Nèige yào zài shénme dìfang mǎi? Shénme shíhou chī?
16. Dàifu ràng Sī Xs. dào shénme dìfang qu zhàoxiàng? Ràng ta shénme shíhou zài lái?
17. Nǐ shì bushì měinián dōu dào yīyuàn qu jiǎnchá yíci? Nǐ qu jiǎncháde shíhou dào nǐkě qu jiǎnchá?
18. Zài Měiguode yīyuànli kànbing shǒuxu máfan bumáfan? Yǒu meiyǒu pǔtōnghào gen tèbié hào de fēnbié?
19. Yīyuànlide hùshi dōu guǎn shénme shì? Tāmen huì kànbing buhuì? tāmen yě guǎn kāi yàofāng ma?
20. Nǐ zuòguo meizuòguo kěpàde mèng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ zài yíge yīyuàn ménkǒu xiǎng wèn zài nǎr guàhào, nǐ zěnme wèn?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zhīdao, kànbing yǒu shénme shǒuxu, nǐ zěnme wèn?
3. Dào le guàhào chùde chuānghu qiántou, nǐ yào guàhào, nǐ zěnme wèn?
4. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zhīdao, wèi shénme guà tèbié hào bǐ guà pǔtōnghào guì, nǐ zěnme shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu yìdiǎnr shāngfēng, yào qǐng dàifu gěi nǐ kànkan, nǐ zěnme gēn dàifu shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 What is the benefit in doing that?
- 1.2 What are his bad points? Can you name any?
- 1.3 What is the procedure for getting a job in that hospital?
- 1.4 I wrote it as soon as you told me to; I didn't waste any time.
- 1.5 It's my turn to fill in the form, not yours.
- 1.6 Ordinarily he doesn't like to take pictures.
- 1.7 If you see her too often, I am sure you will dream of her.
- 1.8 That's impossible; that was just a dream.
- 1.9 When he heard this he was scared.
- 1.10 The weather is terribly hot; everybody is perspiring.
- 1.11 How did Dr. Ma examine you?
- 1.12 I haven't had my picture taken for years. I am going to ask him to take one.
- 1.13 May I have my picture taken with you?
- 1.14 The nurse said that I might need to have an X-ray taken, but the doctor said that it wasn't necessary.
- 1.15 The drugstore wouldn't let me have sleeping pills without a prescription.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (422) a. There is much benefit in studying.
- (424) a. He is a very honest fellow.
b. This word is really too difficult.
- (426) a. We wasted a lot of time waiting at the bus station.
- (427) a. It's your turn to go today. Whose turn is it tomorrow?
- (428) a. We don't ordinarily say it this way.
- (431) a. This building is three stories high.
b. He lives on the third floor.
- (433) a. Have you seen him recently?
- (436) a. I had a dream last night and dreamt that he had died.
- (437) a. That man is certainly to be feared.
- (438) a. He came and startled me.

- (439) a. He broke into a heavy sweat.
- (440) a. You must go to a doctor and get a physical examination.
- (442) a. Let me take a picture of you
b. This picture he took is not bad.
c. Do you like to take pictures? (or) Do you like to have your picture taken?
- (445) a. Please write a prescription for me.

DISHIJIÜKE - CHÜQU WÁN

I. Duìhuà

Yǒu yige xīngqīliùde zǎoshang, qíngtiān, tiānqi hěn hǎo.
Zhào Xs. gen Zhào Tt. shāngliang dàizhe hái zi chūqu wánr.
Tāmen liǎngge rénde yìsi xiān bùyíyàng. Hòulai Zhào Tt. yuè
shuō, zìjǐ juéde yuè yǒuli. Zhào Xs. méi bànfǎ, zhǐhǎo tàitai
shuō shénme, tīng shénme.

Zhào Tt: Jīntian tiānqi zhème hǎo. Wǒmen dài hái zi dao nǎr wánrwánr
qu? Èi! Wǒ xiǎngqīlaile. Wǒmen dao gōngyuán qu sànsanbù,
hǎo buhǎo? Hěn jiù méichūqule, wǒ zhēn xiǎng dao wàitou qu
zózou.

Zhào Xs: Gōngyuán yǒu shénme yìsi? Hái bùrú qu tīng xì huòshi kàn
diànyīng ne.

Zhào Tt: Tīng xì, kàn diànyīng, wǒ búqù. Tàiyang hǎode shíhou, wǒ
yuànyi dao wàitou qu. Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài gōngyuánlide huār
dōu kāile. Zhème nuǎnhuo, dàizhe hái zi qu kànkān huār,
kànkān dòngwu, tāmen yídìng hěn gāoxìng. Nǐ shuō ne?

Zhào Xs: Dào něige gōngyuán qù ne?

Zhào Tt: Zhōngyāng Gōngyuán jiù hěn hǎo. Yóuqíshì něige húbiānrshang,
huánjing fēicháng ānjing. Yòu yǒu shítou, yòu yǒu shù, hái
yǒu yīkuài cǎodì. Zài nèr zuòzuo, duóme shūfu.

Zhào Xs: Hái you shénme dìfang kěqù? Yàoburán, wǒmen dài hái zi dao
bówùguǎn qu kànkān ba. Zài bówùguǎnli hái zi kěyǐ dé hǎoxiē
zhīshi. Nǐ yǐwei zěnmeyàng?

Zhào Tt: Nǐ zǒng xiǎng dao wūzili qu, shì shénme yuángu? Nǐ kàn,
tàiyang zěnmé hǎo, wèi shénme fēi dao wūzili qu bùkě. Èi!
Wǒ xiǎngqī yíge zhúyī lai. Wǒ kàn wǒmen qǐng Sī Xs. gēn
wǒmen yìguàir qù. Zài lìngwài qǐng jìge biéren. Duìle,
qǐng zhāng Xs., Zhāng Tt. Qǐng tāmen xiān dao wǒmen jiā lái,
zuò yìdiǎnr chīde dōngxi dàizhe. Wǒmen jiù zài něige
húbiānrshang yěcān. Nǐ búshì yao zhàoxiàng ma? Dàizhe nǐde
zhàoxiàngjī. Gěi hái zimen zhào jìzhang xiàng. Biéren ne,
shéi yuànyi huáchuán, shéi huáchuán; shéi yuànyi qí zìxìngchē,
shéi qí zìxìngchē, shéi yuànyi dǎ qiú, shéi dǎ qiú. Búdàn
yǒuyìsi, érqie kěyǐ yùndongyùndong. Wǒ juéde wǒmen yīngdāng
xiǎng fázi zài tiānqi hǎode shíhou, dao wàitou qu zózou,
yùndong yùndong. Duìyu shěntǐ gēn jīngshen dōu yǒu hǎochu.
Jiù zhème bàn ba. Nǐ qu gěi tāmen dǎ diànhuà, qǐng tāmen
lìkè jiù lái.

Zhào Xs: Yùndongyùndong yě hǎo. Wǒ hěnjiù méiyùndongle.

Zhào Tt: Nǐ kànkān. Yíge rén zǒng zài wūzili búyùndong, nà zěnmé
chéng ne?

Zhào Xs: Bùzhīdào Sī Xs. hǎole meiyóu?

Zhào Tt: Sī Xs. méiyóu shénme dà bìng. Tā nà shì yīnwei tiāntiān zài
wūzili zuòshì. Yìdiǎnr yùndong dōu méiyóu. Yàoshi tā cháng

chūqu zóuzou, wǒ gǎn bǎoxiǎn tāde bìng yíding hěn kuài jiu
hǎole. Nǐ kuài qu dǎ diànhuà qu ba.

Zhào Xs: Hǎo. Wǒ wènwen tāmen yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu?

Zhào Tt: Bùguǎn yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu, nǐ qǐng tāmen yíding lái. Gàosong
tāmen, yǒu shénme shì míngtiān zài bàn. Shéi gǎn shuō,
míngtiān néng yǒu zhème hǎode tiānqi? Tiānqi bùhǎo jiùshì
xiǎng qu wǎnr, yě wǎnrbuliǎo.

Zhào Xs: Nǐ lǎoshi zhèyang shuō huà. Tāmen yàoshi yǒu yào jǐnde
shìqing ne?

Zhào Tt: Xīngqīliù tāmen yǒu shénme yào jǐnde shìqing? Nǐ xiān qu dǎ
diànhuà qu ba. Tāmen búqù, zài shuō.

(Zhào Xs. yíju huà yě méizài shuō, jiu qù dǎ diànhuà qule.)

Zhào: Wài, nín shì Sī Xs. ma?

Sī: Duìle, nín shì Zǐān ma?

Zhào: Nín zěnmē zhīdao?

Sī: Wǒ tīngdechūlái. Zhèi liangtiān zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Hěn hǎo. Nín shēnti hǎo diǎnr le ba?

Sī: Hǎo diǎnr le. Zhàole yìzhāng X-guāng xiàng, dàifu shuō méi
shénme. Jiùshì yào wǒ duō xiūxiūxi. Chī dōngxi liú diǎnr
shén. Wǒ xiǎng búyào jīn. Wǒ qu jiānchádé shíhou yě búguo
shì pà yǒu shénme dà bìng.

Zhào: Jīntian tiānqi hěn hǎo. Wǒ nèiren gen wo yào qǐng nín gēn
wǒmen yíkuàir dào gōngyuán qu yěcān. Bùzhīdao nín néng qu
bunéng.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Wǒ hěn xiǎng chūqu zóuzou. Kěshì wǒ xiànzài bùgǎn
juédìng. Wǒ shífèidiǎn zhōng gěi nín dǎ diànhuà gào song nín
chéng buchéng?

Zhào: Hǎo ba. Wǒ děng nín de diànhuà ba.

Sī: Hǎo. Zài jiàn.

(Zhào Xs. gěi Zhāng Xs. dǎ diànhuà.)

Zhào: Wài, nín shì Zhāng Xs. ma?

Zhāng: Duìle. Nín nǚwèi?

Zhào: Zǐān ne.

Zhāng: Ò, Zhào Xs. Hǎo ba. Nín yǒu shénme shì ma?

Zhào: Wǒ gēn nín shuō. Jīntian tiānqi hěn hǎo. Neiren shuō qǐng
nín gēn Zhāng Tt. dài zhe háizi dào gōngyuán qu yěcān.
Bùzhīdao nimen néng qu bunéng.

Zhāng: Hǎojíle. Nín děng yíhuìr, bié guà. Wǒ wènwen Lìróng yǒu
shì meiyǒu.

(Guòle yìhuìr -)

Zhāng: Wài, chéng, wǒmen néng qù. Zài nǎr jiàn ne?

Zhào: Wǒ nàiren shuō, qǐng nǐmen xiān dào wǒmen zher lái. Yìkuàir zuò yìdiǎnr dōngxi, děng yìhuìr yìkuàir qù. Qǐng nǐmen xiànzài jiù lái ba. Dào wǒmen zhèr chī wǔfàn lái.

Zhāng: Hǎo ba. Wǒmen lìkè jiù qù. Yìhuìr jiàn.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

448. gōngyuán N: park
448.1 yuánzi N: garden (M: -ge); theater (M: -jiā)
448.2 Zhōngyāng gōngyuán N: Central Park
448.3 huāyuánzi(huāyuánr) N: garden
448.4 càiyuánzi N: vegetable garden
448.5 xìyuánzi N: opera house, theater
448.6 diànyǐngyuánzi N: Movie theater
448.7 dòngwùyuán N: Zoo
449. yǒulǐ VO/SV: logical, reasonable
a. Tā shuōde hěn yǒulǐ.
450. zhǐhǎo A: the best thing is to...,
the only thing to do is...
a. Tā bújiào wǒ qù, wǒ zhǐhǎo jiù búqùle.
451. bùrú V: is not up to, is not as good as
451.1 A bùrú B = B bǐ A hǎo = A méiyou B hǎo.
451.2 A bùrú B dà = B bǐ A dà = A méiyou B dà.
a. Kàn diànyǐng bùrú tīng xì.
452. xì N: play, opera
452.1 tīng xì VO: go to a play
452.2 kàn xì VO: go to a play
452.3 chàng xì VO: sing opera
453. diànyǐng N: motion picture
453.1 kàn diànyǐng VO: go the movies
454. tàiyang N: sun, sunlight
454.1 chū tàiyang VO: sun comes out
455. dòngwù N: animals
456. hú N: lake
457. huánjīng N: environment
458. shítou N: rock, stone
459. cǎodì N: lawn
460. bówùguǎn N: museum

461. dé V: get
 461.1 dé qián VO: receive money (as a gift or prize)
 461.2 dé dōngxi VO: receive something (as a gift or prize)
 461.3 dé bìng VO: get sick
 461.4 dé érzi VO: have a baby
 461.5 dézhào RV: got
 461.6 dé jīngyan VO: gain experience
 461.7 dé xuéwen VO: acquire learning
462. zhīshi N: knowledge
 462.1 dé zhīshi VO: gain knowledge
 462.2 yǒu zhīshi VO: well informed; educated
 462.3 méi zhīshi VO: uninitiated; uneducated
463. zhúyì N: idea, way, plan
 463.1 xiǎng zhúyì VO: think of a way
 463.2 chū zhúyì VO: suggest a plan
- a. Shéi chūde zhèige zhúyì?
464. yěcān V/N: picnic
465. huá chuán VO: row boat
466. zìxíngchē V: bicycle
467. qí V: ride, straddle
 467.1 qí mǎ VO: ride horseback
 467.2 qí zìxíngchē VO: ride a bicycle
468. dǎ qiú VO: play ball
469. búdàn... { érqiě (ye) not only....but
 { bìngqiě (ye)
- a. Tā búdàn néng shuōhuà, bìngqiě hěn néng zuòshì.
 b. Nèige dìfang búdàn huánjing hǎo, érqiě dōngxi yě piányi.
470. duìyú CV: with respect to, in relation to, towards
 a. Wǒ duìyú zhèizhǒng shìqing, méi shénme jīngyan.
471. shēntǐ N: body, health
 a. Tā shēntǐ hěn jiěshi.
 b. Nǐ děi liúshén nǐde shēntǐ.
472. jīngshen N: spirit
 472.1 yǒujīngshen VO: be energetic, spirited
 472.2 jīngshénbìng N: mental disorder
 a. Nèiwei lǎo xiānsheng hěn yǒujīngshen.

III. Jùzi Gǒuzào

1. Jiù and cái Further Compared:

The comparison of jiù and cái in Lesson 13 showed them sometimes to be opposite in meaning. They differ also in another respect.

Jiù or cái is often used in a sentence to contradict a previous statement, but the sentence with jiù stresses the contradiction by giving an example, as in the following dialogue:

A: Zài Měiguó méiyǒu rén huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.
(Nobody in the United States speaks Chinese.)

B: Zěnme méiyǒu? Wǒ jiù huì shuō.
(Who said so? I, for one, can speak it.)

And, the sentence with cái indicates the contradiction by stressing the subject that comes before cái:

A: Wǒ gěi ni mǎile yige; wǒ xiǎng nǐ yěxū ài chī.
(I bought one for you, thinking you might like to eat it.)

B: Wǒ cái bùchī ne.
(Not I, I wouldn't eat it!)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.11 "I think nobody can understand what he said." "Oh, I can."

1.12 "I think everybody wants to buy one, so you must want to buy one too." "Oh, no, not I."

1.13 "Everybody here is a college graduate." "No, I am not."

1.14 "I think our library must have this book." "No, not our library."

1.15 "I have not yet had Chinese food." "Oh yes, you have. The food you had last night was Chinese food."

2. The Translation of "More" into Chinese:

The different uses of the word "more" call for different translations into Chinese.

2.1 More in amount. Used alone or followed by a noun, as in "Eat a little more" and "I need more money," "more" can be translated as:

duō	} V	yidianr	Nǐ duō chī yidiǎnr.
zài			Nǐ zài chī yidiǎnr.
zài duō			Nǐ zài duō chī yidiǎnr.

Sometimes it can be translated as hái, or in any one of the three ways above with hái added:

Nǐ hái yào diǎnr ma?
Nǐ hái duō yào diǎnr ma?
Nǐ hái zài yào diǎnr ma?
Nǐ hái zài duō yào diǎnr ma?

2.2 More in number. When preceded by a number or other word indicating a number, "more" is translated as hái or zài:

Hái yǒu liǎngge xuésheng yào lái.
(There are two more students coming.)

Qǐng zài gěi wǒ jǐge.
(Please give me a few more.)

- 2.3 "No more" or "not...any more" is best translated as "búzài..." or "bié zài..." While "never...any more" has the Chinese equivalent of "zài yě bù...":

Bié zài dào Niūyuē qùle.
(Don't go to New York any more.)

Wǒ búzài hē jiǔ le.
(I will drink no more.)

Wǒ zài yě bùhē jiǔ le.
(I will never drink any more.)

Note that zài before bù in the third illustration indicates a much stronger stress on the negative than when it follows bù as in the second illustration.

- 2.4 In the comparative degree, as we recall, the various forms of "more...than" can be translated in the following ways:

more...than: This is more difficult than that.
bǐ...SV: Zhèige bǐ nèige nán.

a little more...than: This is a little more expensive
(than that).
bǐ...SV yidiǎnr: Zhèige (bǐ nèige) guì yidiǎnr.

much more...than: This is much more expensive (than that).
bǐ...SV-deduō: Zhèige (bǐ nèige) guìdeduō.

even more...than: This is even more expensive (than that).
bǐ...hái SV: Zhèige (bǐ nèige) hái guì.
bǐ...gèng SV: Zhèige (bǐ nèige) gèng guì.

- 2.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.51 "Have you any more bread?" "I have no more."
2.52 It will not be ready for ten days more.
2.53 Don't do that any more.
2.54 I dislike her perhaps even more than you do.
2.55 One more word, and I will send you to the police station.
2.56 There are not many more of this kind of book.
2.57 I have known him for more than twenty years.
2.58 He's even more clever.
2.59 I gave him five dollars more than I should.
2.60 Doing a good job is much more important than finishing quickly.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

- "Tā wèi shénme lǎo tīng tā tàitai de huà?" "Yīnwei tā zǒng juéde tā zìjǐ měilǐ, suǒyǐ jiu zhīhǎo tīng tā tàitai de." "
- "Nǐ shuō shì tīng xǐ hǎo, shì kàn diànyǐng hǎo?" "Wǒ juéde shénme dou bùrú dǎ qiú." "
- "Nèige gōngyuánli húbiānrshangde huánjing zěnmeyàng?" "Chū tàiyang de shíhou zuì hǎo, ānjingjǐle." "
- "Nǐ huì qí zìxingchē buhuì?" "Wǒ qí mǎ xíng, qí zìxingchē qíbuliǎo." "

5. "Tā zěnme yǒu nème fēngfùde zhīshi?" "Yīnwei tāde jīngyan hěn duō."
6. "Zuótian qu yěcān de shíhou, nǐmen dǎ qiú le ma?" "Búdàn dǎ qiú le, hái huále yihuǐ chuán."
7. "Nǐ kàn ta zhèige zhúyì zěnmeyàng?" "Yě búcuò, kěshi wǒ bù yídìng néng ànzhe tā shuōde bàn."
8. "Nǐ shuō wǒmen zěnme bàn hǎo?" "Wǒ duìyu zhèijian shì yìdiǎnr zhúyì yě méiyǒu."
9. "Tāde shēntǐ zhēn hǎo, nǐkàn tā yǒu duōme dàde jīngshen!" "Duìle, ta yìdǎ qiú, jīngshen jiù láile."
10. "Nèige bówùguǎnli dōu yǒu shénme dōngxi?" "Yǒu hǎoxiē shítou, kěshi wǒ bùzhīdao dōu shì shénme shítou."

V. Wèntí

1. Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. yào dàizhe háizi chūqu wǎnr, tāmen shì zěnme xiàngqilaide? Nèitian shì xīngqìjì? Tāmen liángge rénde yìsi yíyàng bù yíyàng? Shì zěnme juédìngde?
2. Zhào Tt. shuō yào dào shénme dìfang qu? Zhào Xs. yuànyì dao shénme dìfang qu?
3. Zhào Tt. xǐhuan tīng xī, kàn diànyǐng ma? Tiānqì hǎode shíhou, tā yuànyì dao shénme dìfang qu?
4. Zhào Tt. yào dao něige gōngyuán qu? Nèige húbiānrshàngde huánjing zěnmeyàng? Zhào Xs. shuō dao bówùguǎn qu yǒu shénme hǎochu?
5. Zhào Tt. xiǎngqǐ yige shénme zhúyì lai? Tā dōu yào qǐng shéi? Dào gōngyuán qu zuò shénme? Ràng Zhào Xs. zuò shénme? Biéren ne? Zhèiyàng yǒu shénme hǎochu?
6. Zhào Tt. juéde Sī Xs. de bìng zěnmeyàng?
7. Zhào Xs. yào qu dǎ diànhuà wènwén tāmen yǒu gōngfú méiyǒu, tā tàitai shuō shénme? Wèi shénme Zhào Tt. juéde tāmen méiyǒu yào jǐnde shìqing?
8. Zhào Xs. gei Sī Xs. dǎ diànhuà, Sī Xs. shuō shénme? Sī Xs. zěnme zhīdao shì Zhào Xs. de diànhuà?
9. Sī Xs. de bìng zěnmeyàng le?
10. Dǎ diànhuà de shíhou, Sī Xs. shuō tā néng gen tāmen yíkuàir qu yěcān ma?
11. Zhào Xs. gei Sī Xs. dǎwǎnle diànhuà, yòu gei shéi dǎ diànhuà? shì shéi jiēde diànhuà?
12. Zhào Xs. zai diànhuàli shì zěnme gen ta shuōde? Tā shì zěnme huídáde?
13. Tāmen dǎsuan shénme shíhou zai shénme dìfang jiàn?
14. Tiānqì hǎode shíhou, nǐ yuànyì zuò shénme?
15. Gōngyuánli dōu yǒu shénme? Dào gōngyuán qu zuò shénme zuì yǒuyìsi?

16. Gōngyuánli dōu you dòngwùyuán ma? Dōu yǒu bówùguǎn ma? Bówùguǎnli dōu yǒu shénme?
17. Yěcān shi shénme yìsi? Nǐ shàngcì yěcān shi zài shénme dìfang? Gēn shéi yíkuair qùde?
18. Nǐ cháng yùndòng ma? Zuì xǐhuan zuo shénme yùndòng? Yìtiān yùndòng jige zhōngtóu?
19. Xīngqīliù rén dōu méiyǒu yào jǐnde shì ma? Nǐ juéde Zhào Tt. shuōde huà dōu yǒu lǐ ma?
20. Nǐ zhùde nège chéngli you gōngyuán meiyǒu? Nège gōngyuánlide huánjing zěnmeyàng? Qǐng nǐ bǎ nège gōngyuánlide qíngxíng shuō yìshuō.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎngqǐ yíjiàn shìqing lai, xiǎng shuō, nǐ xiān shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐde péngyou yíkuair qù tīng xī, nǐ zěnmē gēn tā shuō?
3. Yàoshi nǐ péngyou qǐng nǐ qu kàn diànyǐng, nǐ bùxiǎng qù, nǐ zěnmē gēn tā shuō?
4. Nǐ qǐng nǐde péngyou dào gōngyuán qu sànsan bù, tā shuō ta búyuànyì qù, yàoshi nǐ yíding jiào ta qu, nǐ zěnmē gēn tā shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gào sòng nǐde péngyou zài gōngyuánli dōu néng zuò shénme, nǐ zěnmē shuō?

VII. Bèishū

A: Nín zhèr yǒu fángzi chūzū ma?

B: Duìle. Yǒu yìsuǒr. Kěshi xiànzài hái yǒu rén zhùzhe ne.

A: Tāmen shénme shíhou bānzǒu?

B: Xiàlǐbaiyī bānzǒu. Kěshi wǒ hái děi shōushishōuchi.

A: Nín keyi dài wo kànkàn ma? Shì jǐjian ne?

B: Yìjiān wòfáng, yìjiān kètīng.

A: Yǒu chūfáng zǎofángr meiyǒu?

B: Dōu yǒu. Yígòng suàn sānjiān.

A: Fángzū duōshao qian yíge yuè?

B: Liùshi-liùkuaibàn.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 Did you go to the opera last week?
- 1.2 He has not only a vegetable garden, but a flower garden also.
However his flowers are not as good as his vegetables.
- 1.3 Going bicycling is not as good as going to the movies.
- 1.4 To go boating is better than anything.
- 1.5 There is a lake in the zoo.
- 1.6 There isn't even a lawn in that park.
- 1.7 There is no museum in the vicinity. The only thing we can do
is ride a bicycle in the park.
- 1.8 What he said is very reasonable. He doesn't say anything
which is not reasonable.
- 1.9 I went to a play yesterday. It was a good play. The name is
something like....I forget it. I can never remember names.
- 1.10 The environment of the opera house is very quiet.
- 1.11 He is well informed in the field of history. He's a
scholarly man.
- 1.12 He lost money in that business, but gained experience.
- 1.13 You must think of a way to get some exercise, so you will
have a strong body.
- 1.14 I have no idea what I am going to do.
- 1.15 He said that I was crazy, I think maybe he is right.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (449) a. What he said is very reasonable.
- (450) a. He won't let me go so the only thing I can do is not go.
- (451) a. Going to the movies is not as good as going to a play.
- (463) a. Whose big idea is this?
- (469) a. He can act as well as talk.
b. Not only is the environment good but the prices are low.
- (470) a. I've had no experience in this kind of thing.
- (471) a. He has a strong physique.
b. You ought to take care of yourself.
- (472) a. That old gentlemen is full of vigor.

DIÈRSHIKE - YĒCĀN YĪHÒU

I. Duìhuà

Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. qǐngle jiwèi péngyou, dàizhe háizimen dao gōngyuán qu yēcān qule. Tāmen yě qǐng Sī Xs. qù, kěshi Sī Xs. nèitiān yīnwei yǒu yìdiǎnr yào jīnde shìqing, méiqùliǎo. Hòulai Zhào Xs. jiànzhào Sī Xs., tāmen liǎngge rén tán yēcānde qǐngxing.

Sī: Nèitiān dào gōngyuán qu yēcān, wánrde hǎo ba. Wǒ méinéng qu, zhēn duìbuqǐ.

Zhào: Méishenme. Nèitiān shì wǒ tàitai yào chūqu wǎnr. Wǒ shì yīnwei lǎn, búda yuànyì qù, qíshí chūqu zóuzou yě shízài búcuò. Nèitiān Zhāng Xs. Zhāng Tt. gēn tāmen de háizi dōu qùle. Zài nèr yòu pèngjian Lǐ Xs.

Sī: Nǎiwei Lǐ Xs?

Zhào: Lǐ Qiūtáng, Lǐ Xs., shì wǒ yige tóngshì, shàngcì wǒ zài jiālì qǐng kè, yě yǒu tā. Wǒ gěi nín jièshaoguo, nín jìde bújìde?

Sī: O! Wǒ xiǎngqilaile. Jiùshi nǎiwei tǐng piàoliangde yǒu yìdiǎnr xiǎo húzi, dàizhe yǎnjǐngde nǎiwei, shì bushì?

Zhào: Duìle. Hái you Fāng Xj. Wǒmen zài yíkuàirde rén hěn duō, wánrde zhēn rènào.

Sī: Dōu zuò shénme wánrle?

Zhào: Yīnwei tiānqì búcuò, dàjiāde xìngqù dōu hěn hǎo. Tàitai, xiǎojiemen zài nèr yùbei fàn. Lǎo Lǐ niánqīng, yuànyì gen háizimen wánr. Tāmen dào yùndongchǎng dǎ qiú qule. Zhāng Xs. gēn wǒ qù huá chuán, zài chuánshang diào le yihuǐr yú.

Sī: Diàozaole ma?

Zhào: Huō! Kě shízài yǒu yìsi. Nèige hú litou, yǒu yìzhǒng yú, yòu dà, yòu hǎochī, jiùshi bùróngyì diào. Zuótian, wǒmen bǎ chuán huádao hú dāngzhōng, diào le méi duōdà gōngfu, wǒ jiu juéde yǒu yìtiáo yú láile. Wǒ yìdiǎnr dōu bùgǎn dòng, jiù zài nèr dēngzhe. Dēngle yihuǐr, wǒ juéde chéngle, jiu gǎnjīn wǎng shàng yìlā, yú cóng shuǐli chūlaile. Wǒ yíkan, huō! zhēn bùxiǎo, zhēn yǒu zhème dà. (yòng shǒu bǐfangzhe) Wǒ zhèng xiǎng: "Jīntiānde yùnyì zěnme zěnme hǎo!" Méixiǎngdào, Lǎo Zhāng kànjianle, yìgāoxìng, tā hūrán yìtuī wo, jiéguǒ nèitiáo yú yí dòng, yòu diào xiāqule. Nín shuō kěxī bukěxī.

Sī: Hòulai yòu diàozaole meiyou?

Zhào: Hòulai wǒ yuè xiǎng yuè shēngqì, jiu bǎ chuán huánhuiqule.

Sī: Lǎo Zhāng diào le meiyou?

Zhào: Tā búhuì diào. Yàoshi ta huì tiào, tá hái néng tuī wo ma? Nín xiǎngxiang. Zhēn zāogāo!

Sī: Diào yú shì hěn yǒuyìsi. Kěshi bùnéng zhāojí. Wǒ yìqián yě yǒushíhou diào zhe wánr. Kěshi cónglái yě méidiàozaoguo. Nǐmen méi rén qu yóuyǒng ma?

Zhào: Nèr yǒu yige yóuyǒngchí. Kěshi wǒmen měiyǒu rén qù. Nín xǐhuan yóuyǒng ma?

Sī: Yóuyǒng, wǒ dàoshi xiāngdāng yǒu xìngqu. Nín ne?

Zhào: Bùchéng. Wǒ yìdiǎnr dou búhuì. Xuéguo, kěshi méixuéhǎo. Yíxiàqu, jiu hē shuǐ. Yǒu yìnián gēn péngyou dào hǎibiānr qu. Péngyoumen dou shuō jiào wo xiàqu. Tāmen shuō tāmen bāngzhe wǒ. Hǎo. Wǒ yíxiàqu, tāmen dōu pǎole. Méi fázi, wǒ zìjǐ shìle shì, gāng yíxiàqu, jiu shuāidǎole. Hēle hǎoxiē shuǐ, xiánjié, cóng nàicǐ qǐ, wǒ jiù bùgǎn zài xià shuǐ le.

Sī: Nà dēi duō liànxiliànxi cái xíng ne. Yóuyǒng hěn yǒuyǒng. Nín tīngshuōguo zhèige gùshi meiyǒu? Yǒu yige dàifu dào yige rén jiāli gěi rén kànbìng. Kǎile yìzhāng yàofāng. Nèi bìngren chīle tāde yào, jiu sǐle. Kěshi tā bùzhīdào. Diètiān tā yòu qu kànbìng. Nèige bìngren jiālide rén, jiu yao dǎ ta. Tā xiàde gǎnjīn jiu pǎo. Nèixiē rén jiu zài hòutou zhuī ta. Tā pǎodao yige hé biānrshang, yīnwei ta huì yóuyǒng jiu tiàozai héli, yóuyǒngzhe huí jiā le. Dào le jiāli, kànjian tā érzi zài wūzili niàn shū ne. Tā wèn ta érzi, "Nǐ wèi shénme niàn shū?" Tā érzi shuō, "Wǒ yào xué dàifu." Tā shuō: "Yào xué dàifu, niàn shū buniàn shū, búyào jīn. Nǐ dēi gǎnjīn xiān xué yóuyǒng." Nín kànkàn yóuyǒng duóme yóuyǒng!

Zhào: Xìngkuī wǒ búshì dàifu. Yěxǔ búhuì yóuyǒng, méi shénme dà guānxi.

Sī: Yě yǒuli. Nǐmen yěcān chīle shénme tèbié hǎode dōngxi le?

Zhào: Qù yěcānde rén, dàgài dōu búdá zàihu chī. Jiù wèideshì dàjiā zai wàitou wánwanr, bùzhīdào nín juéde duì buduì? Búguò nàitiān wǒmen chīde xiāngdāng fēngfù. Chūle diǎnxīn, bǐnggān, shuǐguǒ bīngjīlíng, kěkǒukělě yíwài, hái yǒu chǎomiàn gēn zhǎjiǎozǐ.

Sī: Zhèi yídìng shì nín tàitai de zhúyǐ ba?

Zhào: Shéi shuō búshì ne? Wǒ tàitai zuì huì chū zhúyǐ. Tāde zhúyǐ duōjié. Kěshi chàbuduō dōushi Zhāng Tt. zuòde. Zuòde fēicháng hǎo. Yóuqíshì nèige chǎomiàn, wèir jiǎnzhéde hǎojié. Nín chīguo chǎomiàn meiyǒu?

Sī: Zài Měiguó cháng chī. Měiguóde Zhōngguo fànguǎnr dōu yǒu chǎomiàn.

Zhào: Tāmen zuò chǎomiàn, gen Zhōngguorén píngcháng zuòde búdá yíyàng. Shénme shíhou yǒu gōngfu, dào wǒmen jiā qu chī yìdiǎnr chángchang.

Sī: Wǒ nèige chúzi néng zuò bunéng?

Zhào: Néng. Tā zuòde yě búcuò.

Sī: Shuōde wǒ dou èle. Xiànzài yě chàbuduō shì chīfànde shíhou le. Dào wo jiā qu jiào chúzi zuò yìdiǎnr chī, hǎo buhǎo?

Zhào: Jiào chúzi zuò kǒngpà láibujíle. Wǒmen yíkuàir dao fànguǎnr qu chī, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Yě hǎo.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

473. lǎn SV: be lazy
 a. Zhè shíhou hǎi bùqīlai, nǐ shuō ta lǎn bulǎn?
474. qíshí A: in fact, as a matter of fact
 a. Zhèike shū, tā shuō hěn róngyi. Qíshí wǒ kàn jiǎnzhíde nánjīle.
475. tóngshì N/VO: co-worker, colleague
 475.1 tóngxué N/VO: schoolmate, fellow students
 475.2 tóngbān N/VO: classmate
 475.3 gēn...tóng-... VO: work or study together with...
 a. Tā gēn wǒ tóngshì.
 b. Tā shì wǒde tóngxué.
476. húzi N: beard, mustache
 476.1 liú húzi VO: grow a beard or mustache
 476.2 guā húzi VO: shave (interchangeable with guā liǎn)
477. rènao SV: be noisy and bustling, prosperous
 a. Niǚyuē Sìshìèrjiē hěn rènao.
478. xìngqu N: interest (cf. yǒuyìsi)
 478.1 yǒu xìngqu SV/VO: be interested in, show interest in
 478.2 duì...yǒu xìngqu be enthusiastic about
 a. Tā duì kāi qìchē xìngqu hěn gāo.
479. niánqīng SV: be young
 479.1 niánqīng ren N: young person
 479.2 niánqīngde N: young person
 479.3 qīngnián(ren) N: young person
 a. Nèige rén hěn niánqīng.
480. diào yú VO: fish (with hook and line)
 a. Nǐ xǐhuan diào yú ma?
481. dòng V: move, touch
 RVE: (indicates capacity for moving or being moved)
 481.1 bié dòng don't move, don't touch
 481.2 bùxǔ dòng hands off, don't move
 481.3 zǒubudòng RV: too tired to walk any farther
 481.4 dòngbuliǎo RV: cannot move
 a. Nèige mén dàgài suǒzhe ne. Wǒ tuīle bàntiān, méituīdòng.
482. hūrán MA: suddenly
 a. Jīntian ta hūran gēn wǒ shuō, ta yào jiéhūn le.
483. tuī V: push
 483.1 tuīkai RV: push open
 483.2 tuīshàngqu RV: push up
 483.3 tuīxiàlai RV: push down
 483.4 wàng shàng tuī push upwards
 a. Nèige men méisuǒzhe, yitūi jiu kāile.

1.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.31 The child fell from the window but wasn't hurt.
1.32 I was careless and dropped the pen on the floor.
1.33 He jumped from the plane, he didn't fall off.
1.34 He threw his books rudely on the table and walked out.
1.35 As soon as that tumbler fell on the floor, it broke.
1.36 This is very sturdy. No matter how you drop it, it won't break.
1.37 This color is fast.
1.38 The wind blew all the flowers off the tree.
1.39 As that bird was flying, it bumped into the building and dropped dead.
1.40 I dropped my key on the chair.

2. The Translation of "Enjoy" and "Send":

There are certain English words which can be translated into Chinese in many different ways and sometimes cause confusion. In this lesson, we discuss translations of "enjoy" and translations of "send".

- 2.1 The verb "to enjoy" finds no simple equivalent in the Chinese language. When one wants to express the idea of enjoyment, one has to more or less beat around the bush by saying wánrde hěn hǎo, juéde yǒuyìsi, ài, xǐhuan, etc.:

We enjoyed the party very much at his house.
(Wǒmen zài tā jiā wánrde hěn hǎo.)

Did you enjoy his speech?
(Nǐ juéde tāde yǎnjiǎng yǒuyìsi ma?)

He enjoys eating good food.
(Tā ài chī hǎo dōngxi. or Tā xǐhuan chī hǎo dōngxi.)

2.11 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.111 I enjoy writing Chinese characters very much.
2.112 I didn't enjoy the food at all.
2.113 We went to the park yesterday. I enjoyed it very much.
2.114 I don't think there are many people who enjoyed his speech last night.
2.115 How do you enjoy yourself every evening?

2.2 The verb "to send" has several Chinese equivalents:

2.21 It is translated as jì when it means to send by mail:

He sent me a letter last week.
(Shànglǐbài tā gei wo jìlaile yifēng xìn.)

2.22 To send to...is translated as sòngdao:

Send this book to Miss Wang.
(Bǎ zhèiben shū sòngdao Wáng Xj. ner qu.)

2.23 To send for...is translate as pài rén qu qǔ, ná, mǎi, etc.

Don't bother to send it over. I'll send for it.
(Bié sònglai. Wǒ pài rén qu qǔ ba.)

2.24 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.241 I have sent my cook for some fruits.

2.242 He sent me fifty dollars to buy a table.

2.243 By whom shall I send this letter?

2.244 I sent him over to England.

2.245 If you wish to see this book, I'll send for a copy.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Zěnméle? Nǐ liú húzi le?" "Méiyóu. Wǒ jiushi lǎn, sāntian méiguā húzi le."
2. "Zuótian nǐmen wánrde zěnmeyàng?" "Dàjiāde xìngqu hěn hǎo, wánrde hěn rènao."
3. "Diào yú zěnmé diào?" "Diàoode shíhou bùnéng dòng, yàoshi yú láile, nǐ yídòng, yú jiu pǎole."
4. "Nèige niánqīngde yě shi nǐde tóngshì ma?" "Duìle. Wǒde tóngshì dōu hěn niánqīng."
5. "Tā shì zěnmé cóng fángshang diàoxialaide?" "Nèige rén hūrán yìtuī ta, tā jiu diàoxialaile."
6. "Tā cóng fángshang diàoxialai, shuāizhaole meiyóu?" "Shuāizhao dàooshi méishuāizhao, kěshi xià yítiao."
7. "Tā niánqīngde shíhou yóuyǒng yóude zěnmeyàng?" "Yóude xiāngdāng hǎo, kěsī xiànzài lǎole."
8. "Duìbuqǐ wǒ méimǎizháo bǐnggān." "Búyào jǐn, yǒu bǐngjílíng jiu xíngle, bǐnggān yǒu meiyóu, wǒ yìdiǎnr dou búzài hu."
9. "Tā kāi chē kāide zhēn kuài, wǒ jiǎnzhíde zhuībushàng." "Nǐ hébì zhuī ta ne?"
10. "Nǐ wèi shénme yídìng yao xué Zhōngwén ne?" "Wèideshì dào Zhōngguó qu zuò mǎimai."

V. Wèntí

1. Zhào Xs. tāmen qu yěcān, Sī Xs. wèi shénme méiqù? Hòulai Sī Xs. jiànzhào Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?
2. Nèitian qu yěcān, Sī Xs. wèi shénme búyuànyì qù? Zhào Xs. shuō dōu yǒu shéi qùle? Yǒu pèngjian shéi?
3. Lǐ Xs. jiào shénme? Zhào Xs. zěnmè rènshi ta? Sī Xs. jiànguó ta meiyǒu? Lǐ Xs. shénme yàngr?
4. Nèitiānde tiānqì zěnmeyàng? Tāmen dōu zuò shénme wánr le?
5. Tāmen diào yú diàozaole meiyǒu? Nèige hú lǐtǒude yú zěnmeyàng? Tā diào yú de shíhou zěnmè diào? Wèi shénme nèitiáo yú yòu diàoxiāqule?
6. Zhāng Xs. huì diào yú buhuì? Wèi shénme Zhào Xs. shuō tā búhuì? Sī Xs. huì diào yú buhuì?
7. Zhào Xs. huì yóuyǒng buhuì? Tā xué yóuyǒng shì zěnmè xuéde?
8. Tāmen qù yěcān de shíhou dōu chīle shénme dōngxi le?
9. Wèi shénme Sī Xs. shuō yóuyǒng hěn vǒuyǒng? Tā nèige gùshi shì zěnmè shuōde?
10. Tāmen chīde dōngxi dōu shì shéi zuòde? Shì shéi chīde zhúyì?
11. Tāmen nèitan chīde dōngxi shénme zuì hǎochī?
12. Sī Xs. chīguó chǎomiàn meiyǒu? Měiguóde Zhōngguó fànguǎnr dōu yǒu chǎomiàn ma?
13. Zhōngguó rén píngcháng jiāli chīde chǎomiàn, gēn Měiguó fànguǎnr lǐde chǎomiàn yíyàng buyíyàng? Sī Xs. de chúzi huì zuò chǎomiàn buhuì?
14. Tāmen dào shénme dìfang qu chī dōngxi qule? Wèi shénme méidào Sī Xs. jiā qu?
15. Nǐ xǐhuan yěcān ma? Zuì xǐhuan dào shénme dìfang qu yěcān? Shì shānshang, shì hǎibiānrshang, hái shì gōngyuánli?
16. Yěcānde shíhou chīde dōngxi dōu chàbuduō yíyàng ma? Dōu chī shénme?
17. Yěcānde shíhou jiù wèideshì chī dōngxi ma? Chúle chī dōngxi hái néng zuò shénme shì?
18. Nǐ huì diào yú buhuì? Nǐ tīngjiànguó diào yú de gùshi meiyǒu? Nǐ shuō yíge diào yú de gùshi.
19. Nǐ huì yóuyǒng buhuì? Shì zài shénme dìfang xuéde? Liànxíle duōshao cì jiù huìle?
20. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐ shàngcì yěcānde qíngxíng shuō yìshuō.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshì nǐ xiǎng wèn yíge péngyou, tā zuótiān qǐng kè de qíngxíng, nǐ zěnmè wèn?

2. Yàoshì nǐ yào gào sòng nǐ de péngyou dào gōngyuán qu yěcānde qíngxíng, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
3. Nǐ shuō yìshuō Zhào Xs. diào yú de shìqing.
4. Nǐ shuō yìshuō yěcān zuìhǎo chī shénme dōngxi?
5. Yàoshì dào le chīfàn de shíhou nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ de péngyou, suíbiàn qù chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi, nǐ zěnmē shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 The child says that he isn't lazy, but too tired. I think that while he may be tired, he is also lazy. But his mother thinks he merely says he is tired while actually he is just lazy.
- 1.2 The one who has a mustache and wears glasses is my colleague.
- 1.3 Everyone was interested in playing ball. They had an exciting time.
- 1.4 He told me that he was interested in fishing. But as a matter of fact I don't think he likes it, because I have asked him to go several times, and he hasn't gone with me even once.
- 1.5 He told me that Mr. Chen had suddenly passed away. I was so surprised.
- 1.6 This table is too heavy; I don't think I can move it by myself.
- 1.7 He said that the door wasn't locked, but I couldn't push it open.
- 1.8 I told him not to go by air, but he wouldn't listen to me. Now, look. The result is that he crashed and was killed.
- 1.9 He wasn't careful and fell into the lake.
- 1.10 There is a beautiful swimming pool, but unfortunately none of us can swim.
- 1.11 All of the food he bought, such as cookies, ice cream, Coca Cola, etc., is fairly good, but the prices are high.
- 1.12 If he hadn't chased me, how could I have fallen down!
- 1.13 It isn't the price I am concerned about; it's the style I don't like.
- 1.14 I came all the way from China so that I could see you.
- 1.15 I want to take the eleven o'clock train. Do you think I can make it?

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (473) a. As late as this and he isn't up yet! Wouldn't you say he's lazy?
- (474) a. He said this lesson was very easy, but as a matter of fact, I think it is extremely difficult.
- (475) a. He and I work together.
b. He is my schoolmate.
- (477) a. 42th Street in New York is a very exciting place.
- (478) a. He is very much interested in driving.
- (479) a. That person is very young.
- (480) a. Do you enjoy fishing?
- (481) a. That door probably is locked. I pushed for a long time and it didn't move.
- (482) a. He suddenly told me today he was going to get married.
- (483) a. That door wasn't locked. As soon as I pushed, it opened.
- (484) a. He said he would come. He talked a long while about it, but in the end he didn't show up.
- (485) a. He wasn't careful and fell downstairs.
b. This garment has a soiled spot. I washed and washed but didn't get it out.
- (486) a. Too bad I couldn't go.
b. What a shame for so fine a table to get broken.
- (487) a. He swims well.
- (488) a. He speaks fairly fast.
- (489) a. Take care, don't fall off.
b. He fell down flat, but was not hurt.
- (490) a. He ran too fast. I ran after him for a long while but couldn't catch up with him.
- (491) a. Whether you (want to) go or not makes no difference to me.
- (492) a. I am giving you money so you may go out and have some fun.
- (498) a. "Can I make the nine o'clock train?" "No, you can't."

DIERSHIYIKE - XIHU LUXING

I. Duihua

Yǒu yitiān Sīmǐzī Xs. gēn Zhào Zīān Xs., Zhào Tt.
shāngliang guānyu dào Hángzhou qu lǚxíngde shìqing.

Zhào Tt: Sī Xs., nín dao Zhōngguo láile zhème jiǔle, lǎoshi hěn máng, búshì cānguān, jiùshi jiāngyǎn. Zǒng yě méidé gōngfu dao Shànghǎi fùjìn qu wánwanr, shì bushì?

Sī: Shéi shuō búshì ne! Zhèi jige yuè zhēnshi mángde bùdéliǎo. Bǐ wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou hái máng. Yìzhí yě méidé jīhui dao gèchù qu kànkàn.

Zhào Tt: Zhèige yuèdǐ, Zīān yǒu gōngshì yào dào Hángzhou qu. Tā jiào wo péi ta qù, wǒ yě xiǎng shùnbìan qu kàn yige péngyou. Wǒ gāngcái xiàngdao nín. Yàoshi nín yǒu xìngqu, yě yīkuàir qu wánr jítian, wǒmen yě kéyi péizhe nín kànkàn Xīhú. Nín shuō zěnmeyàng?

Sī: Nà zhēn hǎo. Wǒ zhèng yao gēn nín dǎting Xīhúde fēngjǐng, zěnmeyàng ne. Zhèi liangtiān, gōngshifángli jīwei tóngshì, zhèng zài jìhua, yào zǔzhi yige Chūnjià-lǚxíngtuán, shuō yào dao Hángzhou qu. Wǒ yīwei chūqu wánr, yídìng děi yǒu shú péngyou zai yīkuàir, cái yǒuyìsi. Wǒ gen neixiewèi tóngshì hái yǒuyidiǎnr shēng, suóyi hái méijuéding cānjiā bucānjiā. Yàoshi wǒ néng gen nimen yīkuàir qu, nà kě zhēn tài hǎole. Nimen juéding nēitian dòngshēn le ma? Dāsuan zhù jítian ne?

Zhào Xs: Wǒ shì sānshiyihào zài nèr kāihuì. Sānshiyihào shì xīngqī-sì, wǒ xiǎng yàoshi zài ner zhūdao xīngqīrì, wǒmen yǒu sāntianduōde gōngfu, kéyi kànkàn chéng lìtóu gen Xīhú fùjìnde fēngjǐng, yě jiu chàbuduōle. Yàoshi wǒmen xīngqīrì xiàwǔ huílai, xiūxixiūxi, xīngqīyī zǎoshang shàngbān, zhèng hǎo. Nín xiǎng zěnmeyàng?

Sī: Hǎojíle. Zhèige jìhuà duì wo hěn héshì. Nín shuō wǒmen zuò shénme chē qù ne?

Zhào Xs: Zuò huǒchē qù, búdao sìge zhōngtóu jiu dào le. Míng hòutiān, wǒ dao chēzhàn qu dǎting dǎting, shénme shíhou yǒu chē. Yě děi xiě fēng xìn qu, dìng yige lǚguǎn. Děng wǒ dǒu nònghǎole, zài dǎ diànhuà gào song nín ba.

(Dào le sānshiyihào, Sī Xs. dào le Zhào jia, tāmen yīkuàir dòngshēn dào chēzhàn qu. Dào le chēzhàn.)

Zhào: Jiǎoháng, jiǎoháng.

Zhào Tt: Wǒmende xíngli hěn shǎo, nimen zìjǐ ná, hái bùxíng ma? Búbì jiào jiǎoháng le.

Zhào Xs: Yě xíng. Qǐng nimen zài zher kǎnzhe xíngli, wǒ qù mǎi piào.

Sī: Hǎo. Wǒmen kǎnzhe, nín qù ba. (Zài piàofáng chuānghu qiántou.)

Zhào Xs: Wǒ yào mǎi sānzhāng dào Hángzhōu qùde láihuǐpiào.

Màipiàode: Hǎo, gěi nǐn piào. Yígòng shì sānshíliùkuàiliùmáo qián.

Zhào: Zhèige piào, zuò shénme chē dōu néng yòng ma?

Màipiàode: Yàoshi yòng zhèige piào zuò tèbié-kuàichē, děi jiā yìdiǎnr qián. Zài chēshàng jiāogei chápàode jiù xíngle.

Zhào Xs: (duì Zhào Tt. gēn Sī Xs.) Piào mǎilaile, wǒmen shàngchē ba. Wǒmende xínglǐ yào guà páizi búyào? Guàle páizi shěngde nǎshàngnǎxiāde.

Zhào Tt: Jiùshì zènme sāngē xiǎo xiāngzi, zìjǐ nǎzhe yě búfèishì, hébì hái guà páizi? Búbì guà páizi le, shěngde xiàle chē yǐhòu, hái děi dēngzhe qǔ. Nǐmen shuō ne?

Zhào Xs: Hǎo, jiù tīng nǐde ba. Wǒmen shàng chē qu ba. Shěngde zhǎobuzhào zuòr.

(Tāmen jìnle zhàntái, shàngle chē.)

Sī: Zhèr yǒu jige kōng zuòr. Wǒmen jiù zuòzai zhèr ba.

Zhào Xs: Wǒ shàngxīngqī gěi Xīhú Fàndiàn xiěle yìfēng xìn, qǐng tāmen gei liú liǎngjiān wūzi, tāmen yìzhí yě méihuìxìn. Wǒ xīwang tāmen yǒu fángzi, yàoburán, jiù hái děi zhǎo biéde lǚguǎn.

Zhào Tt: Wǒ xiǎng zài zhèige yuè yǐnèi xiě xìn qu dīngde, yídìng yǒu fángzi. Yàoshi zai guò jige xīngqī, tiānqī yìnuǎnhuo, dào Hángzhōu qùde rén yìduō, lǚguǎn kōngpà jiù búhaozhǎole. Sī Xs., tīngshuō guìguó rén dōu xǐhuan lǚxíng, shì zhēnde ma?

Sī: Kě búshì ma. Zuòshìde rén, yìnián dōu yǒu liǎngge xīngqīde jià. Chàbuduōde rén, píngcháng dōu shěngxia yìdiǎnr qián lai, dēng fàngjià de shíhou hǎo chūqu lǚxíng. Kěshì lǚxíngde rén yìduō, nèixiě fēngjǐng hǎo yìdiǎnr de dìfang, jiù zǒngshì yǒu hěn duō rén, fēicháng rēnao. Xǐhuan qīngjǐng de rén, dào búyuànyì qùle. Hángzhōu zhèige dìfang, qùde rén duō buduō?

Zhào Tt: Hángzhōu hěn yǒumíng. Xīhú fùjīnde fēngjǐng yòu hǎo. Suóyì qu wǎnrde rén bùshǎo. Búguò nǎlìde dìfang hěn dà, yòu shì shān, yòu shì hú, rén suǐrán duō, kěshì hái búsuàn tài luàn.

Sī: Wǒmen xiàle chē, dǎsuan xiān zuò shénme ne? Xiànzai xiān shāng-liangshāngliang, shěngde dàoide shíhou, bùzhīdao zuò shénme hǎo.

Zhào Tt: Xiàchē yǐhòu, dìyī, xiāndào Xīhú Fàndiàn. Yàoshi yǒu fángzi, dāngrán hěn hǎo. Wǒmen jiù dōu xiān xiūxi yìhuìr. Chīle wǔfàn, Zǐān děi qu kāihuì. Tā sǎnle huì jiù méi shì le. Tā qù kāihuì de shíhou, wǒ kéyì péi nǐn dao húbiānrshàng qu kànkàn. Wǒmen gen ta yuēhǎo yìge shíhou, zài yíkuàir chī wǎnfàn. Chīwǎn fàn, wǒmen kéyì gù yìge chuán huáhuà. Zhèiliangtiān, yuèliang zhèng hǎo. Míngtiān, hòutian zuò shénme ne, dēng dàoide yǐhòu, kànkàn zài jìhuà ba.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Yàoshi yǒu gōngfu, hái xiǎng qǐng nǐn dàiizhe wǒ mǎi yìdiǎnr běndìde chūchǎn. Wǒ xiǎng jìhuì Měiguó qu, sòng rén.

Zhào Tt: Dāngrán kéyì. Wǒmen zìjǐ yě yào mǎi diǎnr dōngxi. Zhèng hǎo yíkuàir qù.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

499. Xīhú PW: West Lake (of Hangchow)
500. guānyu CV: about, concerning, in relation to
 a. Zhèige gùshi shi guānyu zai Měiguó de Zhōngguó rén de shìqing.
501. lǚxíng V/N: travel/travel, trip (M: cì)
 a. Fàngjiàde shíhou nǐ yào dào shénme dìfang qu lǚxíng ma?
 b. Zhèici lǚxíng yǒu yǒu yìsi, yǒu méiyǒng duōshao qián.
502. gè- SP: each, every
 502.1 gèchù N: everywhere
 502.2 gèzhǒng N: different kinds
 502.3 gèyàngr N: different kinds
503. yuèdǐ TW: end of the month
 503.1 niándǐ TW: end of the year
 503.2 xiàyuè(yuè)dǐ TW: end of the next month
 503.3 qùnián niándǐ TW: end of last year
504. gōngshì N: official or public business, in contrast to sīshì, personal or private matters
 504.1 bàngōng VO: to conduct official business
 504.2 gōngshifáng N: office
 a. Nín zài shénme dìfang bàngōng?
505. Hángzhou PW: Hangchow
506. péi V: accompany, escort, keep someone company
 506.1 péi kè VO: help entertain a guest, keep a guest company
 506.2 péike N: guest who is not the guest of honor
 506.3 péi(zhe) ta to keep him company
 506.4 péi(zhe) ta zuò yìhuǐr sit with him for a while
 506.5 péi(zhe) ta qù go along with him and keep him company
 a. Nǐ yàoshi qù, wǒ jiù péi ni qù.
507. shùnbìan A: when convenient, at your convenience
 a. Nǐ chūqude shíhou, shùnbìan gěi wǒ mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
508. jìhuà V/N: plan
 a. Wǒmen děi xiān jìhuàjìhuà, míngtiān zěnme qù.
509. zǔzhi V/N: organize/organization
 a. Wǒmen xiǎng zǔzhi yige lǚxíngtuán.
510. Chūnjià-lǚxíngtuán N: Spring Vacation Travel Club
511. yīwéi V: suppose, think that, consider
 a. Wǒ yīwei ta bùlái(ne), kěshi ta lái.
 b. Zhèijian shì, wǒ yīwei děi zěnme bàn.

512. shú (or shóu)... SV: be well acquainted with; ripe, be cooked, done
 N: acquaintance
 512.1 shú ren RV: read (a book) until familiar with it
 512.2 niànshúle RV: go over (a piece of road) until familiar with it
 512.3 zǒushúle RV: do (something) until familiar with it
 512.4 zuòshúle
- a. Wǒ gen ta hěn shú.
 b. Zhèiben shū ta niànde búgòu shú.
 c. Zhèitiáo lù, nǐ suànshi zǒushúle.
513. shēng SV: be unfamiliar, raw, fresh
 N: new word
 513.1 shēng zì uncooked meat
 513.2 shēng ròu raw vegetables
 513.3 shēng cài stranger, new comer
 513.4 shēng rén
- a. Tā shuō ta gēn Lǐ Xs. tài shēng, bùhǎoyìsi shuō nèiju huà.
 b. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ tàitai zuòde ròu, méizuòshú, hái shēngzhe ne. Wǒ búdàn méigǎn gào song ta, bìngqiě wǒ hái dèi shuō, "Zhēn hǎochī".
514. cānjiā V: participate in, join
 a. Wǒ méicānjiā tāmen nèige zǔzhi.
515. dòngshēn VO: start on a journey
 a. Zuótian nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dòngde shēn?
516. míng hòutiān TW: tomorrow or day after tomorrow
517. kān V: watch
 VO: take care of a child
 517.1 kān hái zi
 VO: take care of things
 517.2 kān dōngxi
 VO: take care of a house
 517.3 kān fáng
- a. Lǎojià, nín géi wo kānzhe dianr dōngxi.
518. jiā V: add, increase, raise
 VO: increase money; get a raise
 518.1 jiā qián
 VO: be a little more careful
 518.2 jiā yìdiǎnr xiǎoxin
 RV: add up, add together
 518.3 jiāqilai
 add this in
 518.4 jiāshang zhèige
 add together
 518.5 jiāzai yíkuàir
- a. Èr jiā èr shì sì.
 b. Jiāshang ta. wǒmen yí gòng shì wǔ ge rén.
519. shěngde A: lest, avoid, in order to prevent (some one from doing something)
 a. Wǒ dèi shěng yìdiǎnr qián, shěngde yíhòu méi qián yòng.
 b. Nèiben shū wǒ yǒu. Nǐ yào shì yào kàn, wǒ jiègei ni ba. Shěngde nǐ mǎile.
520. fàndiàn N: hotel
 520.1 Xīhú Fàndiàn West Lake Hotel

2.12 It means "before..." when it follows a time-clause other than a number-measure time expression:

Chī wǎnfàn yǐqián, bié niànshū.
(Don't study before supper.)

2.13 It means "ago" when it follows a number-measure time expression:

Sānnián yǐqián wǒ méizài zhèr.
(I wasn't here three years ago.)

2.2 Yǐhòu can be translated as "afterwards" and "after":

2.21 As an MA it means "afterwards":

Wǒ yǐhòu jiù shénme dōu bùzhīdào.
(Afterwards, I blacked out completely.)

2.22 When it follows a time expression, it means "after":

Chīfàn yǐhòu wǒ bùhǎi shuǐ.
(I don't drink after eating.)

Sānnián yǐhòu wǒ jiù bìyè le.
(I will graduate after three years.)

Míngtiān yǐhòu wǒ jiù búqù le.
(I will not go any more after tomorrow.)

2.3 Exercise - translate into English:

2.31 Nèige rén zǔzhīle yige lǚxíngtuán. Ta zǔzhī yǐqián, xiān wèn wo cānjiā bùcānjiā.

2.32 Yǐqián wǒ gen ta bùshú, hòulai zài yige gōngshifángnǐ zuò shì, zuòle jige yuè jiù shúle.

2.33 Sānnián yǐqián, wǒ yǐwei tā nèige jìhua hěn hǎo, xiànzài bùzhīdào wèi shénme, juéde bùxíngle.

2.34 Yàoshi nǐ kěn zuò fēijī, jīntiān dòngshēn, liǎngtiān yǐhòu yíding dào.

2.35 Yǐqián tā měicì jiè qián wǒ dōu jiègěi ta. Cóng qùnián niándī wǒ méi shìqing yǐhòu jiù méi fázi zài jiègěi ta qián le.

3. Other Yi- Compounds:

Besides yǐqián and yǐhòu, there are a number of other compounds with the yǐ prefix. The meaning of yǐ itself varies. It may mean "by", "with", "where", etc. It is more important to the student to remember what each compound means as a whole.

3.1 Yǐ is often joined with expressions of place:

yīdōng	to the east of
yīxī	to the west of
yīnán	to the south of
yīběi	to the north of
yīshàng	above
yīxià	below, beneath
yīlǐ (or yīnèi)	within
yīwài	outside, beyond

- 3.2 The directional compounds (yīdōng, yīxī, etc.) often stand after a place word:

Zhèige dìfang yīdōng dōu shì hǎi.
(It is all sea to the east of here.)

- 3.3 The shàng, xià, lǐ, nèi and wài compounds often appear after a number-measure:

Yàoshi sānshikuai qián yǐshàng wǒ jiù bùmǎile.
(I won't buy it if it's over thirty dollars.)

Yíge lǐbài yǐnèi wǒ yàoshi bùhuí lái, nǐ jiù yíge rén qù ba.
(If I don't come back within one week, please go without me.)

- 3.4 Like yìqián and yǐhòu, yǐshàng and yìxià may sometimes be used as movable adverbs:

Wǒ yǐshàng suǒshuōde dōu shì tā gào song wǒ de.
(All that I said above was what he told me.)

Yìxià wǒ jiù dōu bùdǒngle.
(From here on, it's beyond my comprehension.)

- 3.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 3.51 They fought to the north of the Yellow River.
3.52 I will not leave this country before the end of March.
3.53 All the trees inside this wall are ours.
3.54 There are more than 300 pages in that book.
3.55 I enjoyed the book up to page 200; from there on I didn't like it very much.
3.56 The railroad station is east of our school.
3.57 The wall is built of rock up to here, from here on up, it is made of dirt.
3.58 I have to finish it within three days.
3.59 I have learned the first half of that song. From the fifth line on, I haven't yet learned it.
3.60 I think a house like this for less than twenty-thousand dollars is very reasonable.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Gāngcái zài gōngshifángnǐ, nǐmen tánde shì shénme?"
"Women tánde shì guānyu lǔxíngde jìhua."
2. "Guānyu zǔzhi lǔxíngtuán de jìhua nǐ yǐwei yīngdāng zěnme bàn?"
"Wǒ méiyǒu shénme zhúyi."
3. "Nǐ zuótian zuò shénme le?" "Zuótian wǒ péizhe yīwei shēng péngyou dào gèchū cānguanle cānguan."
4. "Yàoshi nǐ dao Nǐyuē lái, kéyǐ shùnbiàn dao wǒ jiā zuòzuò."
"Wǒ yíding kàn nín qù."
5. "Wǒ yuēle yige shú rén yíkuàir qu chī wǎnfàn, nǐ yě cānjiā hǎo buhǎo?" "Hǎo jǐle. Shénme shíhou? Zài shénme dìfang jiàn?"

6. "Nǐmen qu lǚxíng, dǎsuan shénme shíhou dòngshēn?"
"Dàgài mínghòutiān jiu yao dòngshēn le."
7. "Jīntian lěng, nǐ duō chuān yìjian yīshang ba." "Duìle. Děi duō jiā yìdiǎnr xiǎoxīn. Shěngde zhāoliáng."
8. "Nǐ dǎsuan zhùzai nǎr ne?" "Wǒ děi zhǎo yige qīngjing dìfang, hǎo niànshū."
9. "Nǐ zhèicì dao zhèr lái yǒu shénme gōngshì ma?" "Méiyou. Jiu wèideshì lai kànkan nimen."
10. "Tā shuōde búshì guānyu lǚxíngde jìhua ma?" "Ò! Wǒ yīwei ta hái shuō xiǎohua ne."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. dào le Zhōngguo yǐhòu, wèi shénme méidào Shànghǎi fùjìn qu wánrwanr?
2. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme yao dao Hángzhou qu? Tā shénme shíhou qù?
Zhào Tt. wèi shénme qù?
3. Zhào Tt. wèi shénme yao qǐng Sī Xs. yíkuàir qù?
4. Sī Xs. wèi shénme méijuédìng cānjiā bùcānjiā nèige Chūnjià-lǚxíngtuán?
Nèige Chūnjià-lǚxíngtuán yào dào shénme dìfang qu? Shì shéi zǔzhi de?
5. Tāmen shénme shíhou dòngshēn? Dǎsuan zai Hángzhou zhù jǐtian? Nèitian qu, nèitian huílai?
6. Zhào Xs. nèitian kāihuì? Tā jìhua zai ner zuò shénme? Tāde jìhua Sī Xs. juéde zěnmeyàng?
7. Tāmen zuò huǒchē qu zài lùshang děi zǒu duōshao zhōngtóu? Tā shuō ta yao zěnmeyàng?
8. Tāmen cóng shénme dìfang dòngde shēn? Tāmende xíngli shì zìjǐ ná de háishi jiǎoháng gěi tamen ná de? Zhào Xs. mǎide piào shì láihuí-piào ma? Duōshao qián? Tā mǎide piào kéyi zuò tèbié-kuàichē ma?
9. Tāmende xíngli guà páizi le meiyou? Wèi shénme? Zhào Xs.de yìsi zěnmeyàng?
10. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme gěi Xīhú Fàndiàn xiě xìn? Tā jiēzhao huíxìn meiyou?
11. Xīhú Fàndiàn yàoshi méi fángzi, tāmen zěnmeyàng bàn? Wèi shénme Zhào Tt. xiǎng Xīhú Fàndiàn yǒu fángzi?
12. Sī Xs. shuō Měiguó rén dou xǐhuan lǚxíng ma?
13. Xīhú zhèige dìfang, qùde rén duō buduō? Luàn búluàn?
14. Xiàle chē yǐhòu tāmen dǎsuan xiān zuò shénme? Chīwánle wǎnfàn tāmen zuò shénme? Chīwánle wǎnfàn tāmen zuò shénme?
15. Sī Xs. hái yao zuò shénme?
16. Nǐ xǐhuan lǚxíng ma? Xǐhuan zuò shénme chē lǚxíng? Dào shénme dìfang qu lǚxíng?

17. Lǚxíng yǐqián yīngdāng zěnmē yùbeì?
18. Zuò huǒchē de shíhòu, xínglǐ shì zìjǐ dài hǎo, shì guà páizi hǎo? Yǒu shénmē hǎochū?
19. Nǐ juéde Měiguó rén dòu xǐhuan lǚxíng ma? Tāmen xǐhuan shénmē shíhòu lǚxíng? Dào shénmē dìfang qù?
20. Qíng nǐ bǎ nǐ shàngcì lǚxíngde qíngxíng shuō yìshuō?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénmē?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng dào yìge dìfang qu lǚxíng, nǐ xiǎng yuē nǐde péngyou yíkuàir qù, nǐ zěnmē gēn ta shuō?
2. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou yuē nǐ gēn ta yíkuàir qu lǚxíng, nǐ xiǎng wèn ta shénmē wèntí?
3. Yàoshi nǐ yuànyì gēn ta yíkuàir qù, nǐ zěnmē shuō? Yàoshi nǐ búyuànyì gēn ta yíkuàir qù, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
4. Nǐ xiǎng yìge lǚxíngde jìhuà, gēn wǒmen shuō yìshuō. Bífāng, dào shénmē dìfang qù? Qù duōshǎo rìzi? Shénmē shíhòu dòngshēn? Shénmē shíhòu huílái? Zuò shénmē chē qù? Dào nèr yǐhòu zhùzài nǎr shénmēde.
5. Nǐ shuō yìshuō nǐ lǚxíngde jīngyàn.

VII. Bèishū

A: Jīntian zhēn rè a!

B: Kě búshì ma!

A: Zhèr xiàtian zhēn bùshūfu. Chūhàn chūde tài duō.

B: Nín wèi shénmē búdao hǎibiānr qu liángkuailiángkuai?

A: Wǒ búhuì yóuyǒng.

B: Búhuì yóuyǒng, méi guānxì. Nín yàoshi méi shì, wǒmen xiànzài qu hǎo buhǎo?

A: Kéyi. Kěshì wǒ méiyǒu yóuyǒngyī.

B: Búyào jǐn. Wǒ yǒu liǎngjiàn. Děng wǒ bǎ yóuyǒngyī nálai, wǒmen jiù zǒu.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 This story is about his trip to Japan.

1.2 I want to know something about the situation in China.

- 1.3 How long a trip was it?
- 1.4 Where are you planning to travel on your spring vacation?
- 1.5 They sell all sorts of native products.
- 1.6 You cannot join several kinds of organization at the same time.
- 1.7 I will be in Italy by the end of next month.
- 1.8 If you are going to town, will you please show him around at your convenience.
- 1.9 If you are going to make coffee, please make one more cup. Thanks.
- 1.10 This plan suits me perfectly.
- 1.11 As far as I'm concerned, I don't think his speech is well organized.
- 1.12 I thought he was an American, but actually he was a Frenchman.
- 1.13 I am acquainted with this town.
- 1.14 I don't feel at home when I meet strangers.
- 1.15 We have to start off a little earlier tomorrow.
- 1.16 This fish isn't salty enough. I'll have to add a little more salt.
- 1.17 I have to study hard, to avoid being embarrassed tomorrow, when the teacher calls on me.
- 1.18 I will buy another pen, so that in case I lose this one I will have something to use.
- 1.19 If you can give me some, that will save my buying it.
- 1.20 I must remember these Cantonese sentences so that when I go to a Chinese restaurant I can order a meal.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (500) a. This story is about Chinese people in America.
- (501) a. Are you going to travel some where during the vacation?
b. It was an interesting trip and didn't cost much.
- (504) a. Where do you work?
- (506) a. If you are going, I will go along to keep you company.
- (507) a. When you go out, buy some things for me at your convenience.
- (508) a. We have to plan beforehand how we are going tomorrow.
- (509) a. We want to organize to travel club.
- (511) a. I thought he wasn't coming, but he showed up.
b. I think this matter should be done this way.
- (512) a. I am very well acquainted with him.
b. He's not familiar enough with this book.
c. You can be considered familiar with this road.

- (513) a. He said he doesn't know Mr. Lee well enough to say that.
b. Yesterday the meat my wife cooked was not done. I not only did not dare tell her, but also had to say: "It's very delicious."
- (514) a. I did not join their organization.
- (515) a. When did you start yesterday?
- (517) a. Please watch these things for me.
- (518) a. Two and two is four.
b. Counting him in, there are five of us.
- (519) a. I have to save some money lest I should have nothing to spend in the future.
b. I have that book. If you want to read it I will lend it to you, to save your buying it.
- (521) a. I'll keep these two sheets of paper, so that I will have some paper to use tomorrow.
- (522) a. If it is within thirty dollars, I will buy it.
- (523) a. I live in a quiet neighborhood.
- (524) a. He came and asked me to eat out with him, but I couldn't make it.
b. I have arranged with him to meet at six o'clock tomorrow.
- (525) a. That newspaper man sells not only local papers, but also papers from other places.

DIÈRSHIÈRKE - KÀN SHŪ, KÀN BÀO

I. Duìhuà

Yǒu yitiān, Zhào Xs. xiàle bān, méi shì, jiu dao Sī Xs. nèr qu kànkān, tán yitán.

Zhào: Sī Xs., méichūqu a?

Sī: Āi! Zīān. Cóng nǎr lái?

Zhào: Wǒ xiàle bān, méi shì, lái kànkān nín.

Sī: Hǎojíle. Wǒ zhèng xīwang yǒu yige rén lái tán tān ne. Zěnmeyàng? Yǒu shénme xīnwén?

Zhào: Wǒ mǎile yifèn wǎnbào, jiù kànle kan dà tímu, hái méizìxì kàn ne. Yǒu yǒu fēijī chūshì le. Sīle shíjigè rén. Zhēn zāogāo.

Sī: Kě búshì ma. Wǒ gāngcái tīng wúxiàndiàn. Wǒ yě tīngjianle. Bùzhīdao shì shénme yuángu, jīnlái fēijī zǒng chūshì.

Zhào: Wǒ xiǎng shì yīnwèi xiànzàide fēijī bǐ yǐqián duōle, fēijī duō, dāngrán chūshìde jīhuì yě duō. Zàishuō, kǒngpà tāmen jiǎnchá jīqì, jiǎncháde búgòu zìxì. Hái yǒu hěn duō biéde yuángu, xiǎng, tiānqì bùhǎo, kāi fēijī de bùliúshén, dōu néng chūshì.

Sī: Nín shuōde hěn duì. Zhèixiē rìzi Ōuzhoude qíngxíng zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Hài! Dàgài hái shì nème luàn ba. Wǒ duìyu shìjiè-dàshì jiǎnzhide méitài zhùyì. Píngcháng kàn bào, búguò kànkān dàtímu, zài tīngting wúxiàndiàn, jiu wánle. Zhīdaode tài shǎo. Xiànzài, zhèngzhì, jīngjì, zōngjiào, jiàoyù, gè zhǒngde wèntí dōu tài fùzá. Shízài méi fázi wàng shēnli yánjiu. Búguò wǒ juéde shìjièshàng kělián de rén tài duō. Hěn duōde rén dōu hěn kǔ. Zhēn bùzhīdao yīngdāng zěnmeyàng bàn.

Sī: Wǒmen xīnjiàode rén xiǎng, zhǐyǒu zōngjiào néng jiějué yíqìde wèntí. Yàoshi rénren dōu yǒu àixīn, ài rén de xīn, shìjièshàngde wèntí, jiu jiǎndānduōle. Bùzhīdao nín yīnwèi zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Nín shuōde búcuò. Búguò wǒ duìyu zōngjiàode dàoli, zhīdaode tài shǎo, yǐhòu děi hǎohāorde yánjiuyánjiu. (Zhào Xs. kànjian Sī Xs. zhuōzishàng fàngzhe yībēn shū.) Nín kàn shénme shū ne?

Sī: Shì yībēn guānyu gōngchǎnzhūyì de shū. Wǒ xiǎng duō zhīdao yìdiǎnr gōngchǎnzhūyìde dàoli. Nín yě xǐhuan kàn shū ma?

Zhào: Hěn xǐhuan. Méi shìde shíhou, kàn shū shì zuì yǒuyìside shìqing.

Sī: Nín cháng kàn shénme shū?

Zhào: Wǒ shénme dōu kàn. Xiǎoshuōr, zázhi, huàbào, dōu kàn, wǒ shì kànzhe wánr. Kànde shíhou juéde yǒuyìsi, kànwánle, jiu wàngle. Nín yě yǒushíhou kàn Zhōngwén shū ma?

Sī: Yě kàn. Jiùshi kànde màn yìdiǎnr. Wǒ xiǎng shì yīnwei liànxi búgòu. Dàgài cháng kànkàn jiù xínglè.

Zhào: Nà yídìng. Wényánde shū nín yě néng kàn ma?

Sī: Néng kàndǒng yìdiǎnr. Yǒushíhou děi chá zìdiǎn. Báihuàrde shū, bào, zázhi, kànzhe dao búsuàn tài nán. Kěshi yě bùnéng shuō yìdiǎnr wèntí dōu méiyǒu. Yǒushíhou yǒu kànbùdǒngde dìfang, dàgài yě kéyi cāichulai. Bǎ Zhōngwén zhēn xuéhǎole, yě shízài bùróngyi.

Zhào: Kě búshì ma. Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén xué Yīngwén, yě shì yíyàngde nán. Zuì yào jǐnde jiùshi děi cháng yòng, cháng wēnxi, yàoshi búyòng, guòbuliǎo duōshao rìzi, jiù wànglè. Wúlùn xué shénme wàiguowén, dōushi zhèyàngr.

Sī: Búguò wǒmen Měiguó rén, juéde Déwén, Fàwén, méiyǒu Zhōngwén zènme nán shìde.

Zhào: Nàshi yīnwei, Yīngwén zìde xiěfǎ, gēn Déwén, Fàwén, hěn xiàng. Bǐngqiě, yǒu hěn duō zì, jiǎnzhiéde yíyàng. Zhōngguó zì búdàn bùróngyi jìzhu fāyīn yě yǒu hěn duōde nánchū.

Sī: Shéi shuō bushì ne! Wǒ shuō huà, sìzhēng jiù zǒngshì bùzhǔn.

Zhào: Nín shuōde hěn hǎo. Cuòde shíhou hěn shǎo. Búguò sìshēng zài Zhōngguó huà hěn yào jǐn. Yǒushíhou yàoshi shuōde chà yìdiǎnr, yìsì jiù chàduōle. Bǐfang ba, "huà" gen "huā", "shù" gen "shū", nín kàn yìsì chà duōshao!

Sī: Shì a. Wǒmen wàiguó rén yīnwei shuōde sìshēng búduì, buzhīdao chūle duōshao xiàohuà.

Zhào: Zhōngguó rén shuō Yīngwén shuōbuhǎo, yě yíyàngde chángcháng chū xiàohuà. Nín shuō duì búduì?

Sī: Yě duì.

Zhào: Nín tīngjianguó zhèige gùshi ba. Yǒu yige Zhōngguó xuésheng, tīngjian yǒude rén zài jièshàowánle yíhòu, shuō, "I'm charmed." Kěshi ta méitīngqīngchū. Yǒu yìcì biérén gěi tā jièshào yīwei xiǎojie, nèige rén shuō, "Zhèiwei shì Lǐ Xj." Tā gǎnjǐn shuō, "I'm charming."

Sī: Zhèige hěn xiàng nèige gùshi. Yíge wàiguó rén, xiǎng shuō, "jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng." Tā shuōcuòle. Tā shuō, "jiàngyóu, jiàngyóu". Nín shuō kěxiào bukěxiào?

Zhào: Zhēn youyìsi. (Kànkàn biǎo) Huō! Yǐjīng liùdiǎn le. Wǒ děi zǒule.

Sī: Máng shénme?

Zhào: Wǒ jīntian wǎnshang yǒu yige yuēhui.

Sī: Jǐdiǎn ne?

Zhào: Qīdiǎn. Wǒ hái děi xiān huí jiā.

Sī: Hái kéyi zài zuò shífen zhōng.

Zhào: Bùle. Guò liǎngtian jiàn ba.

Sī: Hǎo, nème zài jiàn.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

526. xīnwén N: news
527. -fènr M: issue, number (of something published periodically)
- a. Tā tiāntiān zǎoshang mǎi yifènr bào.
528. tímu N: topic, theme
528.1 bàoshangde dàtímu headlines
529. zǐxì SV/A: be careful/carefully (cf. liúshén, xiǎoxin)
- a. Tā nège rén hěn zǐxì.
 b. Qǐng nǐ zài zǐxìde kàn yìcì.
530. wúxiàndiàn N: radio
531. jīqì N: machine
532. zhùyì VO: pay attention (cf. liúshén)
 AV/V: pay attention to /pay attention
- a. Shàng kè de shíhou qǐng nǐ zhù yidiǎnr yì.
 b. Qǐng nǐ zhùyì nège rén.
 c. Tā hěn zhùyì niànshū.
533. zhèngzhì N: politics
534. jīngjì N/SV: economy/be economical
535. zōngjiào N: religion
535.1 xīn zōngjiào VO: believe in religion
536. jiàoyù N: education
537. fǔzá SV: be complicated (opposite of jiǎndān)
- a. Zhèijian shìqing hěn fǔzá.
538. kělián SV: be pitiful (cf. kěxī)
- a. Nège qióng rén zhēn kělián.
539. jiějué V: solve, settle
- a. Zhèige wèntí, méi fázi jiějué.
540. zhǔyì N: principle (-ism)
540.1 gōngchǎnzhǔyì N: communism
541. xiǎoshuōr N: novel
542. zázhi N: magazine
543. huàbào N: pictorial magazine
544. wényán N: literary language, classical style
- a. Nèiběn shū shì yòng wényán xiěde.

545. chá V: investigate, inspect, look up
 545.1 cháchulai RV: find out about
 545.2 chá zì VO: look up words
546. zìdiǎn N: dictionary
 546.1 chá zìdiǎn VO: consult the dictionary
- a. Qǐng ni géi wo chácha zhèige zì.
547. cāi V: guess
 547.1 cāizháole RV: guessed it
- a. Nǐ cāicai shìshi.
 b. Wǒ cāile bàntiān, méicāizháo.
548. báihuà(r) N: colloquial language, vernacular style
 548.1 báihuà xiǎoshuōr novel in the vernacular
- a. Wényán, báihuà tā dōu kàndǒng.
549. xiěfǎ N: the way of writing
 549.1 shuōfǎ N: the way of speaking
 549.2 kànfǎ N: point of view, way of looking at things.
550. sìshēng N: four tones (of the Chinese Mandarin language)
551. zhǔn SV/A: be accurate/certainly
 551.1 zhǔn shíhou on time
- a. Wǒde biǎo bùzhǔn.
 b. Qǐng ni zhǔn shíhou lái.
 c. Wǒ míngtiān zhǔn lái.

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Xiǎoxin, Liúshén, Zhùyì and Zǐxì Compared:

These four expressions are interchangeable in the sense of being careful. In addition, zhùyì carries the meaning of being attentive or concentrating one's attention on something; zǐxì means to be meticulous. The following chart clarifies their parts of speech in usage:

	<u>xiǎoxin</u>	<u>liúshén</u>	<u>zhùyì</u>	<u>zǐxì</u>
SV	X			X
A	X	X	X	X
V	X	X	X	
VO		X	X	
AV		X	X	

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.11 Be careful in your work.
- 1.12 Spend your money carefully.
- 1.13 He is careful about his clothes.
- 1.14 Please be very careful about your diet.
- 1.15 Pay attention to what I say.
- 1.16 He takes no care of his things.
- 1.17 Look out, the train is coming.
- 1.18 Be careful, don't drop it.
- 1.19 Give this matter your careful attention.
- 1.20 Accidents occur when people are not careful.

2. The Translation of "Care":

Although this English word is not as bad as "make" in its wide varieties of meaning, it is bad enough to warrant special attention to its many uses. Listed in the following are its most common uses:

- 2.1 It may be translated as guǎn or zàihu, meaning "mind" or "pay a damn":

Wǒ bùguǎn (or búzàihu) ni qù buqù?
(I don't care whether you go or not?)

- 2.2 It may be translated as guǎn in the sense of taking care of:

Zhèijian shì, shéi guǎn?
(Who takes care of this matter?)

Wǒ zuì bùxǐhuan guǎn jiālìde shìqing.
(I hate to take care of household chores.)

- 2.3 It may be translated as zhùyì, liúshén, zìxì or xiǎoxin in the sense of being careful. (Sec 1. above)

- 2.4 It means xǐhuan or ài in the sense of caring for:

Wǒ bùxǐhuan chī yú.
(I don't care for fish.)

- 2.5 When used in the pattern "leave in...care", it may be translated as jiāo...guǎn:

Bǎ zhèijian shì jiāo(gei) ta guǎn ba.
(Let's leave this matter in his care.)

2.6 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.61 The child is ill for lack of care.
- 2.62 He doesn't take care of his money.
- 2.63 I confided my property to his care.
- 2.64 This matter demands special care.
- 2.65 Too much care cannot be exercised in writing letters.
- 2.66 He takes great care in the use of words.
- 2.67 I don't care a bit for what he says.
- 2.68 He may go anywhere he likes for all I care.
- 2.69 I do not care much for swimming.
- 2.70 The children were left in the care of their grandfather.

3. kělián and kěxī Compared:

We should not be confused about the meaning and usage of these two words. Kělián means to pity, be pitiful or pitiable while kěxī means "too bad", "what a pity" or "unfortunately". The former can serve as a verb or a stative verb while the latter is most often used as a movable adverb. The former is used in a situation that deserves pity and sympathy while the latter is used in one that creates disappointment.

Kěxī zuótian tā méilái.
(Too bad he didn't come yesterday.)

Nèige qiónggrén duóme kělián ne! Wǒ hěn kělián ta.
(How pitiful that poor man is! I really pity him.)

(Note that when kělián is used as a verb, the second syllable usually becomes unaccented.)

- 3.1 Because of the specific differences in meaning between these words, kělián only refers to people and other living things that arouse human sympathy while kěxī may refer to both animate and inanimate things:

Tā zhēn kělián, qióngde lián chīfànde qián dōu méiyǒule.
(He is truly pitiable. He is too poor to know where his next meal will come from.)

Kěxī nège zhuōzi huàile.
(Too bad that table is broken.)

3.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 3.21 She is very intelligent. Too bad she isn't very pretty.
3.22 God pities those who pity others.
3.23 Unfortunately it rained yesterday; otherwise we would have had a grand time.
3.24 People who have wives are pitiful; people who don't are pitiful too.
3.25 Look what a pity it is!

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Jīntian wǎnbàoshang yǒu shénme xīnwén?" "Wǒ lián dà tímu hái méikàn ne."
2. "Wúxiàndiànlide guǎnggào nǐ zhùyìle meiyou?" "Wǒ cónglái bùtīng guǎnggào."
3. "Zhèige qìchēde jīqi, qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ zìxì jiǎnchajiǎncha, hǎo bùhǎo?" "Míngtian xíng buxíng? Jīntian wǒ méi gōngfu."
4. "Tā búshì yánjiū jiàoyù ma?" "Wǒ yǐwei tā shì xué zhèngzhi jīngji de ne."
5. "Zhèige wèntí nǐ shuō zěnme jiéjué?" "Zhèige wèntí tài fǔzá, wǒ kàn wǒmen liǎngge rén jiéjuébuliǎo."

6. "Nǐ juéde shénme rén zuì kělián?" "Wǒ xiǎng búxìn zōngjiào de rén zuì kělián."
7. "Zhèige zázhìshangde xiǎoshuōr nǐ kànguo meiyóu?" "Tīng shuō nèige zázhì cháng jiǎng gōngchǎnzhǔyì, wǒ búkàn."
8. "Nǐ huì chá zìdiǎn búhuì?" "Wǒ bùchá zìdiǎn. Yǒu búrènshìde zì, wǒ kéyì cāi."
9. "Shuō Zhōngguó huà, yàoshi sìshēng bùzhǔn, biéren néng dǒng ma?" "Yěxǔ kéyì dǒng yìdiǎnr."
10. "Tā fānde nèige xiǎoshuōr, shì yòng wényán fānde, shì yòng báihuà fānde?" "Dàgài suànshì báihuà."

V. Wèntí

1. Nèitīan Zhào Xs. wèi shénme dao Sī Xs. nèr qu? Sī Xs. yuànyì ta qù ma? Sī Xs. wèn ta shénme?
2. Zhào Xs. kàn bào le meiyóu? Tā kànde shì shénme bào? Tā zìxì kànle meiyóu? Bàoshang yǒu shénme xīnwén? Nèige xīnwén Sī Xs. shì zěnme zhīdaode?
3. Zhào Xs. shuō wèi shénme fěijī cháng chūshì? Nǐ yǐwei tā shuōde duì búduì?
4. Zhào Xs. shuō Ōuzhoude qíngxíng zěnmeyàng? Tā duìyú shìjiè-dàshì hěn yǒuyánjiu ma?
5. Sī Xs. yǐwei shìjièshangde wèntí yīngdāng zěnmeyàng jiějué? Zhào Xs. duìyú zōngjiào yǒuyánjiu ma?
6. Sī Xs. de zhuōzishang fàngzhe yìben shénme shū? Tā wèi shénme yào kàn nàiben shū?
7. Zhào Xs. yě xǐhuan kàn shū ma? Tā kàn shénme shū? Tā juéde kàn shū yǒuyìsi ma? Tā kànde shū, ta jìdezhu ma?
8. Sī Xs. néng kàn Zhōngwén shū bùnéng? Tā shì kàn wényánde háishi kàn báihuàde?
9. Sī Xs. kàn shū kànde kuài bukài? Yòng chá zìdiǎn buyòng? Tā kàn shū shì bushì yìdiǎnr wèntí dou méiyǒu? Tā kànbudǒngde dìfang zěnmeyàng bàn?
10. Sī Xs. yǐwei Zhōngwén nán ma? Zhào Xs. yǐwei xué wàiguowén yīngdāng zěnmeyàng liànxi?
11. Měiguó rén xué Zhōngwén wèi shénme méiyóu xué Déwén Fàwén nème róngyì?
12. Shuō Zhōngguó huà, sìshēng hěn yào jìn ma? Yàoshi sìshēng bùzhǔn, yǒu shénme huàichū?
13. Zhōngguó rén xué Yīngwén yǒu shénme nánchū? Nǐ bǎ Zhào Xs. shuōde nèige xiàohuà shuō yìshuō.
14. Sī Xs. shuōde nèige xiàohuà nǐ tīngjianguo ma? Qǐng ni shuō yìcì.

15. Zhao Xs. wèi shénme yào zǒu? Tā děi xiān dao shénme dìfang qu?
16. Jīntian yǒu shénme xīnwén? Nǐ měitiān kàn bào ma? Měitiān tīng wúxiāndiàn ma?
17. Nǐ yǐwéi shìjièshàngde wèntí yīngdāng zěnmē jiějué?
18. Nǐ yǐwéi fēijī cháng chūshì shì shénme yuángu?
19. Nǐ xǐhuan kàn shū ma? Dōu kàn shénme shū? Nǐ dǒng gòngchǎnzhǔyì bùdǒng?
20. Nǐ xué Zhōngwén yǒu shénme nánchū?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou lái kàn ni, nǐ kànjian ta, nǐ shuō shénme?
2. Qǐng ni bǎ jīntian bàoshàngde dà tímu shuō yìshuō.
3. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn ni, Zhōngguó shū, nǐ kàndedǒng ma? Nǐ shuō shénme?
4. Qǐng ni bǎ Měiguó rén xué Zhōngwén de nánchū shuō yìshuō.
5. Yàoshi nǐ qu kàn nǐde péngyou, tánle yìhuìr, nǐ yào zǒu, nǐ zěnmē gēn nǐde péngyou shuō?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:
 - 1.1 Have you bought an evening newspaper? What does it say?
 - 1.2 I only get the political news from the headlines. I never read the details.
 - 1.3 You have to read this book carefully.
 - 1.4 He is a meticulous person.
 - 1.5 Please turn off the radio.
 - 1.6 She uses a machine for laundering.
 - 1.7 Will this machine work?
 - 1.8 I can't get anyone to take notice of what I wear.
 - 1.9 Pay attention to what he said.
 - 1.10 Did you notice the radio news this morning?
 - 1.11 He said he is not interested in religion.

- 1.12 The relationship is fairly complicated.
- 1.13 Not only has that old lady lost her son, but she is terribly poor. She is such a pitiful case.
- 1.14 I think both the people who haven't any religion, and these who have a religion but don't live it, are to be pitied.
- 1.15 Could you help me to solve this problem?
- 1.16 Some people believe that communism can solve the problems of this world.
- 1.17 That novel is written in vernacular style.
- 1.18 When I read a book which is written in classical style, I have to look up words in a dictionary.
- 1.19 I don't like to look up words in a dictionary. It's too much trouble. Whenever I run into words I don't know I just guess at them. Sometimes I guess right.
- 1.20 I don't think there is any way of making my tones accurate.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (527) a. Every morning he buys an issue of newspaper.
- (529) a. He is a very careful man.
b. Please read it through carefully once more.
- (532) a. Please pay a little attention when you are in class.
b. Please watch that man.
c. He pays attention to study very much.
- (537) a. This matter is very complicated.
- (538) a. That poor man is very pitiful.
- (539) a. There is no way to solve this problem.
- (544) a. That book is written in classical style.
- (546) a. Please look up this word for me.
- (547) a. Try to guess it.
b. After trying for a long time, I still didn't guess it.
- (548) a. He can read both classical and vernacular styles.
- (551) a. My watch is inaccurate.
b. Please come on time.
c. I will certainly come tomorrow.

DIERSHISĀNKE - TĀN FÀNGJIÀ

I. Duìhuà

Yǒu yitiān, Sī Xs., Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. zai yíkuàir hē chá.

Zhào Xs: Kuài fàngjià le. Sī Xs., nín yǒu shénme jìhuà?

Sī: Wǒ hái méijuédìng. Wǒmen yǒu duōshao rìzi jià, wǒ hai bùzhī-dào ne. Nín ne?

Zhào Xs: Yé méidìng. Yàoshi kěnéng, xiǎng dao běifang, Běipíng gēn Tianjing kànkān qu.

Sī: Ō, duìle. Zhào Tt.de fùqīn mǔqīn dōu zai Běipíng, shì bushi?

Zhào Tt: Bù. Dōu zai Tiānjing. Kěshi wǒmen ye dāsuan dao Běipíng qu wánr jitiān.

Sī: Nà tài hǎole. Jiānglái yǒu jīhui de shíhou, wǒ yídìng děi dào Běipíng qu kànkān.

Zhào Tt: Nín yíkuàir qu, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Hǎo shì hǎo, kěshi wǒ qùbuliǎo. Wǒmen dǐng duō jiu yǒu yíge xīngqīde jià.

Zhào Xs: Yíge xīngqī shì duǎn yidiǎnr. Zuìhǎo néng zai nèr zhù yìliǎngge. yuē. Shùnbiàn yě dào fùjīnde dìfang, xiǎng shénme Xīshān ne, Wànlǐ-chángchéng a, Mínglíng a, shènzhìyú, Běidaihé, dōu qu kànkān, cái hǎo.

Sī: Kě búshì ma! Wǒ tīngshuōguo Běidaihé. Nín qùguo ma? Nèige dìfang dàodì zěnme yàng?

Zhào Xs: Qùguo. Kěshi wǒ juéde bùrú Qīngdǎo hǎo.

Zhào Tt: Tā shì Shāndong rén, dāngrán shuō Qīngdǎo hǎole.

Zhào Xs: Nà yě bù yídìng. Nǐ kàn, Qīngdǎo búdàn fēngjìng, qìhòu, dōu fēicháng hǎo, tóngshí, nèige chéng lǐtòu, kōngqì xīnxian, gēn biéde chéng wánquán bǔtóng. Běidaihé wǒ jiù qùguo yíci. Nèige hǎibiǎnr yě búcuò, zuì dà de hǎochu, jiu shì liángkuai. Biéde, wǒ dou bújìdele.

Zhào Tt: Nǐ shuōhuà xiànglái jiu shì zhèyàng, Bújìdele, hái shuō. Nǐ bújìdele, zěnme zhīdao Qīngdǎo bǐ Běidaihé hǎo ne? Wǒ suǐrán méidào Qīngdǎo qùguo, tīng nǐ zěnme yishuō, wǒ jiu gǎnshuō nǐ shuōde búduì.

Sī: Yíge dìfang gen lìngwài yíge dìfang bǐ, běnlái shì hěn nán. Wǒ xiǎng liǎngge dìfang yídìng shì "gè yǒu suǒ cháng". Zhào Tt., nín zai Běipíng zhùle jīnián?

Zhào Tt: Qiánhòu yǒu qībānnián. Xiān zài nèr shàng xiǎoxué, hòulai jiā bānhui Tiānjing què, jiu zai Tiānjing shàng zhōngxué. Dēng zhōngxué bìyè le, yǒu huídao Běipíng shàng dàxué. Wǒ suǐrán shì Tiānjing rén, kěshi wǒ xǐhuan Běipíng. Zài Běipíng, chīfàn, tīng xī, bǐ nǎr dou hǎo. shēnghuó yě piányi.

Pùzìlide huǒji, tèbié héqi. Nín dao pùzìli qu mǎi dōngxi, gāng yíjìnqu, tāmen jiù qǐng nín zuòxia, yǒu dào chá, yǒu diǎn yān. Tāmen péizhe nín tán zhège, tán nàge. Tánle bàntiān, zhè cái wèn nín, "Nín yào yòng diǎnr shénme?" Nín yìshuō nín yào mǎi shénme, tāmen lìkè jiù bǎ suǒyǒude dōngxi dōu náchulai gěi nín kàn. Yìdiǎnr dōu búpà máfan. Nín tiāohǎole. Tāmen gěi nín sòngdao jiā qu. Yàoshi shù pùzi, hái búyòng lìkè gěi qián. Kéyi jìzhàng. Zhēn fāngbian.

Zhào Xs: Běipíng zhèige dìfang, dàgài shì rénren xǐhuan. Dàoǐ shì zuǒle duōshao nián de shǒudǐ, hòulai yǒu yǒu hěn duōde xuéxiào, zhēn kéyi shuō shì yíge wénhuà chéng. Suǒyi yíqiède fēngsu xíguàn yě dōu gēn biéde dìfang búyíyàng.

Zhào Tt: Nà dào bújiàndé. Fēngsu xíguàn búyíyàng, búyíding shì yīnwei shǒudǐde guānxi. Gèchùde fēngsu xíguàn dōu búyíyàng. Bǐfang ba, Shànghǎide fēngsu xíguàn, gēn Hángzhou yíyàng ma? Zhè shì yīnwei jiāotōng bùfāngbiande yuángu. Sī Xs. nín shuō duì buduì?

Sī: Búcuò. Yàoshi jiāotōng fāngbian, gèchùde rén dōu cháng lǚxíng, yǒu hǎoxiē fēngsu xíguàn, zìrán jiù dōu chàbuduǒle.

Zhào Xs: Yàoshi nème shuō, jiāotōng bùfāngbian yě yǒu jiāotōng bùfāngbian de hǎochu. Gèchù you gèchù tèbiéde kǒngqi, tèbiéde yàngzi hǎoxiàng gèng yǒuyìsi. Yàoshi nǎr dou yíyàng, nà lǚxíng hái yǒu shénme yìsi?

Zhào Tt: Nǐ kàn, nǐ zhèige rén duōme zìsī. Jiù wèideshì nǐ juéde yǒuyìsi, nǐ yuányi jiāotōng bùfāngbian. Nǐ yě bùxiāngxiang, jiāotōng duìyu rénde shēnghuó, shì duōme yào jǐn? Yàoshi fēijī, chuán, huǒchē, qìchē, diànbào, diànhuà, xìn, dōu bùtōngle, nǐ xiāngxiang zhèige shìjie hái chéng shénme yàngzi?

Zhào Xs: Déle, déle. Fǎnzhèng wǒ shuō shénme dou búduì.

Zhào Tt: Nà dao bújiàndé. Yàoshi nǐ shuōde yǒulǐ, wǒ jiù bùnéng shuō nǐ búduì.

Sī: Nǐmen dàgài shénme shíhou dòngshēn ne?

Zhào Xs: Hái méiyíding. Nín fàngjiàde shíhou dǎsuan zuò shénme?

Sī: Yěxǔdào fùjìn xiāngxia qu zhù jitiān. Yǒu yíge péngyou, zài Shànghǎi fùjìn de xiāngxia zhù. Tā qǐng wǒ dao tāmen jiā zhù jitiān. Wǒ yě xiǎng qu huàn huan huánjing, tóngshí yě xiūxi xiūxi.

Zhào Tt: Nín zhèige jìhua yě búcuò. Xiāngxia shēnghuó lìngwài yǒu yìzhǒng kěàide dìfang. Yóuqíshì wǒmon zài chéng lǐtōu zhùjiùlede rén, dào nèizhǒng zìrán de huánjingli zhù jitiān, yíding juéde fēicháng yǒuyìsi.

Sī: Wǒ xiǎng yě shì. (Kànkàn biǎo) wǒ gāi zǒule.

Zhào Tt: Bié máng. Zài zhèr chī wǎnfàn ba.

Sī: Bùchéng. Wǒ yǒu yíge yuèhuì. Nín hái yǒu xié rìzi cái zǒu ne. Zài nín zǒu yíqián wǒmen hái yǒu jìhuì jiàn ne.

Zhào Tt: Nème nín lǐbailiù lái chī wǎnfàn, wǒmen zài tántan, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Hǎojíle. Wǒ lǐbailiù lái.

Zhào Xs gen Zhào Tt: Zài jiàn.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

552. jiānglái MA: in the future, hereafter, later
a. Jiānglái nǐ zhǎngdàle xiǎng zuò shénme shì?
553. dǐng A: most
553.1 dǐng hǎo excellent
553.2 dǐng kuài fastest
553.3 dǐng yǒuqián richest
554. shènzhìyú A: even, to the point of
554.1 búdàn...shènzhìyú not only...but even...
a. Tā lèijíle, lèide shènzhìyú zǒuzhe jiu shuìzháole.
b. Tā búdàn búgēn nǐ yào qián, shènzhìyú nǐ gěi ta qián,
tā dou búyào.
555. dàodǐ A: after all, at bottom; (what) in the
world?
555.1 suǐrán...dàodǐ... although...after all...
a. Tā dàodǐ yào zuò shénme?
b. Zhāng Xs. suǐrán zài Měiguó zhùle hěn jiǔ, dàodǐ tā shì
Zhōngguó rén, yǒu hěn duō Měiguóde shìqing, háishi bú tài dǒng.
556. qìhòu N: climate
557. tóngshí A: at the same time
a. Nèige rén cōngming, tóngshí yě kěn yònggōng.
558. kōngqì N: atmosphere, air
559. xīnxian SV: fresh; new
559.1 xīnxian niú'nǎi fresh milk
559.2 xīnxian jīdàn fresh egg
a. Niú'nǎi bùxīnxianle, bié hēle.
560. wánquán SV/A: be complete/completely
a. Tā wánquán bùdǒng.
561. bùtóng SV: be different (more literary than
bù yíyàng)
a. Zhèi liǎngge bùtóng.
562. xiànglái A: always and customarily, up to now
a. Wǒ xiànglái bùxǐhuan kàn tā xiěde shū.
563. "gè yǒu suǒ cháng" I.E.: each one has its own good points
a. Tāmen liǎngge rén shì "gè yǒu suǒ cháng".

is one of the most troublesome. Here are some of the most common uses of the verb "to make", translated into idiomatic Chinese:

- 1) He made a table for his wife.
(Tā gēi ta tàitai zuòle yige zhuōzi.)
- 2) That car can make eighty miles an hour.
(Nèige chē yige zhōngtóu néng zǒu--or pǎo--bāshilǐ.)
- 3) I will make this wall blue.
(Wǒ yao bǎ zhèige qiáng nòngchéng lánde.)
- 4) Don't make me buy something I don't like.)
(Bié jiào wo mǎi wǒ bùxǐhuande dōngxi.)
- 5) The train will make New York within two hours.
(Huǒchē zai liǎngge zhōngtóu yǐnèi jiu kéyi dào Niuyue.)
- 6) Can you make a fire in this wind?
(Nǐ néng zai fēngli shēng huǒ ma?)
- 7) Does this make sense to you?
(Nǐ juéde zhèige yǒu dàoǐ ma?)
- 8) We can make better time if we take this road.
(Wǒmen yàoshi zǒu zhèitiáo lù jiu kéyi shěng shíhou.)
- 9) I will make out a list tomorrow.
(Wǒ míngtian kāi yige dānzi.)
- 10) She had her old coat made over.
(Tā bǎ yijiàn jiù yīshang gǎile.)
- 11) My mind is made up.
(Wǒ yǐjing juédingle.)
- 12) Can you make out what he means?
(Nǐ zhīdao tā shì shénme yìsi ma?)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 1.11 This is made by hand.
- 1.12 He made fifty miles that day.
- 1.13 I cannot make anything out of that book.
- 1.14 The train makes fast time.
- 1.15 That makes me very glad.
- 1.16 He just cannot make up his mind.
- 1.17 I think what he said doesn't make sense even to himself.
- 1.18 We will make home by two thirty.
- 1.19 I'll make you like me.
- 1.20 It's too cold here. Let's make a fire.
- 1.21 He has made his car red, but I don't like it.
- 1.22 Will you make out a list of the things you want.
- 1.23 I had this fur coat made over for her, but she still doesn't like it.
- 1.24 This cloth will make me a good coat.
- 1.25 He was made a teacher.

2. The Translation of "Take":

This word is probably only next to "make" in its complexity in meaning. Here are some of the most common uses of the word:

- 1) Which room will you take?
(Nǐ yào nǎijian wūzi?)
- 2) Let's take a house in the country for the summer.
(Wǒmen xiàtiān zài xiāngxiā zū yisùǒr fáng zhù ba.)
- 3) Let me take your suitcase.
(Wǒ gei nǐ nǎ zhège xiāngzi.)
- 4) Will you let me take your car?
(Wǒ kéyi yòng nǐde qìchē ma?)
- 5) It took me a long time to get here.
(Wǒ yǒngle hěn duōde gōngfu cai dào de zhèr.)
- 6) We ought to take it easy in this kind of weather.
(Zhème rède tiānqi, wǒmen zuìhǎo mǎnmǎnrde zuò.)
- 7) I took for granted that he wouldn't come.
(Wǒ yīwei tā búláile ne.)
- 8) The speech was taken down.
(Nèige jiǎngyǎn yíjīng xièxiàlaile.)
- 9) Let's take this road.
(Wǒmen zǒu zhèitiao lù ba.)
- 10) Where will this road take us?
(Zhèitiao lù tǒng shénme dìfang?)

2.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

- 2.11 I'll take this article with me.
- 2.12 It took me two weeks to finish that book.
- 2.13 He was taken for dead.
- 2.14 I have taken a house which is very close to yours.
- 2.15 What do you generally take for breakfast?
- 2.16 I took down what he said.
- 2.17 Which train are you going to take?
- 2.18 This river will take us to his house.
- 2.19 I wish I could take it easy as you do.
- 2.20 Which car will you take ?
- 2.21 How long does it take to go there?
- 2.22 He took a room at my friend's house.
- 2.23 I offered him five hundred dollars but he wouldn't take it.
- 2.24 He took me home afterwards.
- 2.25 I took it for gold, but it was only made of copper.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. "Nǐ jiānglái dàodī dǎsuàn zuò shénme?" "Wǒ xiànglái bùxiǎng jiānglái de shìqing."
2. "Jīnniānde qìhou hǎoxiàng gen měinián bùtóng, nǐ shuō ne?" "Wǒ kàn bùjiàndé ba?"
3. "Huáshèngdùnde jiāotōng fāngbian bùfāngbian?" "Měiguóde shǒudū, nǐ xiǎng jiāotōng hái néng bùfāngbian ma?"
4. "Zhèi liǎngge dìfangde fēngsu xíguàn, něige dìfang hǎo?" "Wǒ xiǎng shì gè yǒu suǒ cháng."

5. "Zhèi chēlide kōngqì wèi shénme zènme huài?" "Chōu yān de rén tài duō."
6. "Zhèi jinián Lǎo Zhāngde shēnghuó zěnmeyàng?" "Hěn qióng. Shènzhìyú qióngde méi fàn chī."
7. "Lǎojià, qíng ni gei wo dào yiwǎn chá, shuǐ yě xíng." "Nǐ dàodǐ yào shénme?"
8. "Nǐ mǎi yú de shíhou, wèi shénme tiāo nème dà gōngfu?" "Wǒ děi tiāo yìtiáo xīnxiānde."
9. "Nǐ zuótian wèi shénme méigéi wo dǎ diànhuà?" "Dǎle sāncì dou méidǎtōng."
10. "Nǐ shuō zěnmeyàng rén jiu búzìsīle?" "Wǒ kàn wénhuà yàoshi gāo, rén jiu búzìsīle."

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. gen Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. yíkuàir hē chá de shíhou, tāmen tán shénme wèntí?
2. Fàngjiàde shíhou Sī Xs. yǒu shénme jìhuà? Tā zhīdao bùzhīdao tā you duōshaotian jià?
3. Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. dǎsuan dào nǎr qu? Tāmen juédingle meiyou?
4. Sī Xs. wèi shénme bùnéng gen Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. yíkuàir qu?
5. Dào Běipíng qu lǚxíng zuìhǎo děi zhù duó jiǔ? Dōu yīngdāng dào fùjìn shénme dìfang qù?
6. Zhào Xs. dao Běidaihé qùguo meiyou? Tā shuō Běidaihé zěnmeyàng?
7. Zhào Xs. juéde Qīngdǎo zěnmeyàng?
8. Zhào Tt. dào Qīngdǎo qùguo meiyou? Tā shuō Zhào Xs. shuōde huà duì búduì?
9. Zhào Tt. zai Běipíng qiánhòu zhùguo duōshao shíhou? Tā shi zai Běipíng shàngde zhōngxué ma?
10. Zhào Tt. shuō Běipíng yǒu shénme hǎochu? Běipíngde shēnghuó zěnmeyàng?
11. Zài Běipíng pùzili mǎi dōngxì de qíngxíng zěnmeyàng?
12. Zhào Xs. shuō Běipíngde fēngsu xíguàn wèi shénme gen biéchu bùtóng? Zhào Tt.de yìsi zěnmeyàng?
13. Zhào Xs. shuō jiāotōng bùfāngbian yǒu shénme hǎochu? Zhào Tt. shuō jiāotōng bùfāngbian you shénme huàichu? Sī Xs.de yìsi zěnmeyàng?
14. Shì bushì Zhào Xs. shuō shénme Zhào Tt. dou juéde búduì?
15. Fàngjiàde shíhou Sī Xs. dǎsuan zuò shénme?
16. Fàngjiàde shíhou nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme? Dào shénme dìfang qu lǚxíng?
17. Nǐ juéde fàngjiàde shíhou qu lǚxíng yǒu shénme hǎochu?
18. Zài chéng lǐtóu zhùde rén, dào xiāngxia qu zhù jitiān yǒu shénme hǎochu?

19. "Gè yǒu suǒ cháng" zhèijū huà shì shénme yìsi? Zěnmē yòng? Zài shénme shíhòu yòng?
20. Qǐng nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà jiǎng yíjiǎng zìsī zhèige zì.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi yǒu rén yuē nǐ yíkuàir qu lǚxíng, kěshi nǐ qùbuliǎo, nǐ zěnmē gēn tā shuō?
2. Yàoshi biérén shuōde huà, nǐ tīngzhe búduì, nǐ zěnmē bàn?
3. Yàoshi yǒu rén lǎo juéde nǐde huà búduì, nǐ zěnmē bàn?
4. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn nǐ, shì tāde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hǎo, háishi tā tàitàide Zhōngguó huà hǎo, nǐ zěnmē shuō?
5. yàoshi nǐde péngyou zài nǐ jiāli zuòle yìhuǐr yào zǒu, nǐ shuō shénme?

VII. Bèishū

- A: Nínde Zhōngguó huà shì zài nǎr xuéde?
- B: Wǒ méixuéguo. Wǒ shēngzai Zhōngguó.
- A: Wǒ cāi nín jiu shēngzai Zhōngguó. Yàoburán fāyīn bùnéng zěnmē zhǔn.
- B: Yě cháng cuò. Zhōngguó huàde sìshēng zhēn nán.
- A: Nínde Zhōngwén shì zai xuéxiào xuéde ma?
- B: Duìle. Wǒ zai Zhōngguó shàngguo zhōngxué.
- A: Nín Zhōngguó shū dōu néng kàn ma?
- B: Báihuàde xíng. Wényánde děi chá zìdiǎn.
- A: Nín kàn zázhi de shíhòu yǒu wèntí meiyǒu?
- B: Yě yǒu bùrènshide zì. Kěshi yìsi chàbuduǒ kēyǐ dǒng.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 I not only find it hard to know future events, but I don't even know what's going on now.
- 1.2 The most I can do is to give all the money I have.
- 1.3 He said he hadn't even heard of him.
- 1.4 Why in the world don't you want to charge it to his account?
- 1.5 The food there is not always tasty, but after all, it is fresh.
- 1.6 If the climate is so bad, how is it possible for people to live there?

- 1.7 At the sea shore, not only is the scenery beautiful, but the air is fresh, too.
- 1.8 You don't like that fellow, and yet (at the same time) you say he's OK!
- 1.9 The atmosphere of the meeting was excellent.
- 1.10 I know the story, but not completely; after all I didn't see it myself.
- 1.11 These two methods differ somewhat, but each has its good points.
- 1.12 He has borrowed fifty dollars from me all told.
- 1.13 How is life over there?
- 1.14 Will you please pour me a cup of tea?
- 1.15 It is difficult to choose. The more you try to make a choice the less you succeed.
- 1.16 Do you have a charge account in this store?
- 1.17 This is the capital. You probably notice that the customs and habits differ from other places.
- 1.18 People who have culture are not necessarily unselfish.
- 1.19 All communications such as train, boat, plane, mail, telephone, telegraph are cut off.
- 1.20 Even if you try to call him, you won't necessarily get through.
2. Translate back into Chinese:
- (552) a. Later when you grow up, what do you want to do?
- (554) a. He was terribly tired, so tired that he went to sleep walking.
b. He not only isn't asking money from you, but even if you give it to him, he won't accept it.
- (555) a. What in the world does he want to do?
b. Although Mr. Chang has been living in America for a long time, yet he's a Chinese after all and there are still quite a few American ways he doesn't understand too well.
- (557) a. That person is clever, and at the same time he is willing to study hard.
- (559) a. The milk is spoiled. Don't drink it.
- (560) a. He doesn't understand a thing.
- (561) a. These two are not alike.
- (562) a. I have never liked to read his books.
- (563) a. Each of those two men has his own talents.
- (564) a. He used two hundred dollars of mine altogether.
b. I lived in China for more than thirty years all told.

- (565) a. How is he lately?
b. Things are too high; how can we live?
- (567) a. I have chosen a red one.
- (568) a. I didn't bring any money today. Could you charge it?
- (573) a. Although he has a car, he isn't necessarily wealthy.
- (575) a. That fellow is too selfish. Don't you think so?
- (576) a. Is that place reached by train?
b. The wind was very strong last night, so all the telephones are out of order today.

DIERSHISIKE - KÈQIHUÀ GEN SÚHUÀ

I. Duihua

Yǒu yìtiān Sī Xs. gen Zhào Xs. tánqi Zhōngguóde kèqihuà laile.

- Sī: Nín kàn, cháng yòngde Zhōngguo huà wǒ chàbuduō kéyi shuō jìjù, kěshi guìguóde kèqihuà, wǒ zǒngshi búdà huì yòng.
- Zhào: Nín tài kèqi. Nín huìde bùshǎo. Bǐfang, "xièxie", "duìbuqǐ", "lǎojià", "jièguāng" shénmede, búyòng shuō nín zǎojiu shuōde hěn shúle, jiùshi shénme "guòjiǎng" a, "jiǔyǎng" a, "bùgǎndāng" a, nín búshi yě cháng shuō ma?
- Sī: Duìle. Zhèi jìjù dàoshi shuōcuòlede shíhou shǎo. Kěshi xiàng "fǔshàng", "nèirén", zhèi yìlèide zì, duì wǒmen Měiguó rén shízài tài nán.
- Zhào: Búcuò. Zhèilèide zì shì nán yìdiǎnr. Búguò zhèixiē nián, zhèilèide zì yǐjīng yòngde bǐ yìqián shǎole. Bǐfang shuō, nín búyuànyì yòng "nèirén", nín shuō "wǒ tàitai", niánqīngde rén tīngzhe, yě bùnéng shuō nín méiyǒu lǐmào. Zǎishuō, suǐrán shì "lǐ duō rén búguài", kèqihuà yòngde tài duōlede shíhou, yǒu shíhou dào hǎoxiàng jiǎ shìde. Rúguò yǒu xiē huà gen fēngsu, xíguàn yǒu guānxi. Búyòng, búdà hǎo. Yàoshi Zhōngguo gen Měiguode fēngsu xíguàn yíyàng, nà jiu bùrán xué. Bǐfang ba, nínde péngyou guò shēngri, nín gen ta shuō "bàishòu, bàishòu". Yǒurén dé xiǎoháir huòshi jiéhūn, nín gēn tāmen shuō, "dào xǐ dào xǐ". Guònián, guòjiéde shíhou, shuō "bàinián" huòshi "bàijié". Yǒu kèren láiide shíhou shuō: "huānyíng huānyíng". Zhèixiēge dìfang, yīnwei fēngsu, xíguàn chàbuduō, nème xuéqilai, bǐjiào bútai nán. Yǒude fēngsu xíguàn bùtóng, huòshi shuōfǎr bùyíyàng, nà jiu nán yìdiǎnr. Bǐfang, nín dao nín péngyou jiāli qu, nínde péngyou sòng nín chūlai, nín yīnggāi shuō "búsòng búsòng", huòshi "bié sòng bié sòng", huòshi "qīnghuī qīnghuī". Nín yàoshi sòng nínde péngyou dào nínde ménkǒur, Nín kéyi shuō "màn zǒu màn zǒu, wǒ búyuǎnsòngle, yǒu gōngfu qǐng zài lái tán." Yàoshi nín qīng kè, chīfànde shíhou wǒmen cháng shuō, "Méi shénme cài," huòshi "jiǎndànde hěn". Kèren zǒude shíhou, wǒmen cháng shuō "dàimàn dàimàn". Hǎiyǒu, yàoshi nín xiǎng wèn rén yige wèntí, zài wèn wèntí yìqián, nín zuìhǎo xiān shuō, "Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr shì, gēn nín lǐngjiào lǐngjiào." Huòshi "wǒ gēn nín lǐngjiào diǎnr shì". Zhèilèide huà, dōu hǎoxiàng nán yìdiǎnr.
- Sī: Zhèixiē huà dōu fěicháng yǒuyòng. Dèng yìhuǐr wǒ děi xièxiálai. Wǒ chàbuduō dōu tīngjianguo, kěshi jìbuzhù. Hái yǒu yìlèide huà wǒ xiǎng xué, xiǎng nín gāngcái shuōde "lǐ duō rén búguài", xiǎng shénme "guìde búguì, jiànde bújiàn". Zhèiyàngde huà, nǐmen jiào sùhuà, shì bushì?
- Zhào: Duìle. Zhèiyàngde huà kě duōle. Nín dàgài yě huì bùshǎo ba?
- Sī: Bùduō. Tīng rén shuōguo bùshǎo. Yǒu yìjù, nǐmen Zhōngguo rén búzhème shuō, kěshi wǒ gǎile. Nín tīngting xíng búxíng? "Tiān búpà, dì búpà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguo huà."
- Zhào: Aiyā. Zhēn hǎojíle. Kěshi nín zhèige yángguǐzi, yǐjīng bùnéng suàn yángguǐzi le. Nínde Zhōngguo huà lián kāi wánxiào, shuō xiàohuar, dōu méi wèntí. Nà zěnme hái néng suàn yángguǐzi ne.

579. lǐmào
579.1 yǒulǐmào
N: manners, courtesy
SV: be polite, have manners
a. Nèige háizi hěn yǒulǐmào.
b. Lāshǒu zai wàiguo shi yizhǒng lǐmào.
580. lǐ
580.1 sòng lǐ
N: courtesy, ceremony; gift, present
VO: give gifts
581. guài
581.1 guàibude
581.2 nánguài
V/SV: blame, be offended at/be strange, queer, odd
A: no wonder that
A: no wonder that
a. Wǒ shuōde búduì, nín bié guài wo.
b. Nèige rén zhēn guài.
c. "Lǐ duō rén búguài."
582. jiǎ
582.1 jiǎ
SV: be false
a. Tāde húzi shi jiǎde.
583. shēngrì
N: birthday
584. jié
N: festival
585. guò
585.1 guò shēngrì
585.2 guò nián
585.3 guò jié
V: celebrate
VO: celebrate a birthday
VO: celebrate the new year
VO: celebrate a festival
586. bàishòu
586.1 bàinián
586.2 bàijié
I.E.: birthday best wishes
I.E.: New Year congratulations
I.E.: seasonal greetings
587. dào xǐ
I.E.: congratulations
588. huānyíng
V: welcome
589. bǐjiǎo
589.1 bǐjiǎo
V/A: compare/comparatively
a. Nǐ bǎ zhèi liǎngge bǐjiǎobǐjiao.
b. Nèige bǐjiǎo dà yìdiǎnr.
590. bú sòng
590.1 bié sòng
IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest); I won't accompany you further (by host)
IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest only)
591. qǐnghuí
IE: Please return (by guest)
592. màn zǒu
IE: Depart slowly, be careful (said to a friend who has been visiting and is leaving)
593. dài mǎn
IE: I have treated you shabbily (said to a friend at the close of a party)
594. lǐngjiào
594.1 lǐngjiào
IE: May I receive your instruction? (used to introduce a query)
a. Wǒ yǒu yige wèntí gen nín lǐngjiào lǐngjiào.

A Sample of Polite Conversation

- Chén: Mr. Wèi, I'd like you to meet my friend, Mr. Liú. Chén: Wèi Xs., wǒ gěi nín jièshao yige péngyou. Zhèiwei shi Liú Xs.
- Wèi: How do you do, Mr. Liú. I have heard about you for a long time. Wèi: Liú Xs., jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.
- Liú: Same here, Mr. Wèi. Liú: Wèi Xs., bǐcǐ, bǐcǐ. (lit: mutually)
- Wèi: Please come in and make yourself at home. This is a (in formal) birthday party in honor Mr. Chén here. It's very nice to have you join us. I'm sure you will find plenty of people whom you know here. Wèi: Qǐng jìnlai suǐbiàn zuò. Jīntian wǒmen zai zhèr gěi Chén Xs. guò shēngrì. Nín lái cānjiā wǒmen fēicháng huānyíng. Zhèr yídìng yǒu nín bùshǎo shù péngyou.
- Chén: Mr. Wèi, you really shouldn't have done this. You have put yourself to a great deal of trouble. Chén: Zhěnsi bùgǎndāng, Wèi Xs. Tài máfan nimen le.
- Wèi: (That's all right.) You deserve it. Happy birthday to you. And now will you be so good as to take Mr. Liú in and introduce him to the people inside. I must get back to the door and greet the people who have just arrived. Wèi: Zhè shi yīngdāngde. Gěi nín bàishòu. Qǐng nín péi Liú Xs. dao lǐtòu qu, gěi ta jièshaojièshao. Wǒ dao ménkǒu qu kǎnkǎn yòu yǒu shéi láiile.

(Later in the reception hall)

- Mrs. Wèi: (to a servant) Wèi Tt: (duì yòngren) Ná jiǔ lai ba. (duì kèren) Qǐng suǐbiàn, zìjǐ lái, bié kèqi. (to Mr. Xiè) Won't you have some more? (duì Xiè Xs.) Nín zài lái diǎnr.
- Xiè: After you please. This drink is delicious. May I ask what brand it is? Xiè: Nín xiān lái. Zhè jiǔ zhēn hǎo. Shì shénme páizi de?
- Mrs. Wèi: Mr. Wèi brought it from France. I'm glad you like it. Wèi Tt: Shi Wèi Xs. cóng Fàguo dàilaide. Nín xǐhuan, qǐng duō hē diǎnr.
- Servant: Dinner is served, Madam. Yòngren: Tàitai, fàn hǎole.
- Mrs. Wèi: Shall we all go out to the dining room? Wèi Tt: Qǐng dōu dao fàntīng zuò ba.
- (After all seated in the dining room) (Zai fàntīngli dōu zuòhǎole yǐhòu)
- Mrs. Xiè, which kind of meat would you prefer, or would you like some of each? Xiè Tt., nín xǐhuan něige cài, háishi yíyàng yào yidiǎnr?

- Mrs. Xiè: I beg your pardon? Xiè Tt: Duìbuqǐ, nín shuō shénme?
- Mrs. Wèi: Which one do you prefer? Wèi Tt: Nín yào něige cài?
- Mrs. Xiè: A little of the fried chicken, if you please. Xiè Tt: Qǐng nín géi wǒ diǎnr něige zhǎjī.
- (Later, Mr. Liú turns to Mr. Wèi) (Guòle yihuǐr, Liú Xs. gen Wèi Xs. shuō)
- Liú: Mr. Wèi, may I ask a favor of you? Perhaps this isn't the proper time for such matters, but I want to take advantage of the opportunity. Liú: Wèi Xs., wǒ xiǎng qiú nín diǎnr shì. Yěxǔ wǒ bùyinggāi zhèige shíhou shuō, kěshi wǒ pà guò yihuǐr wǎngle.
- Wèi: Go right ahead, Mr. Liú. What can I do for you? Wèi: Nín shuō ba. Méi shénme.
- Liú:I shall be everlastingly obliged to you if you can do this. Liú: ...Yàoshi nín néng bāng wǒ zhèige máng, nà zhēn tài hǎole.
- Wèi: That's nothing at all. It will be a pleasure to do it for you. Wèi: Méi shénme. Nín búyòng kèqi. Wǒ yídìng gěi nín bàn.
- Liú: You are so obliging. I appreciate it very much. Liú: Nín zènme kěn bāngmáng. Zhēn xièxie nín.
- Wèi: The pleasure is all mine. Wèi: (Smiles appreciatively)
- (Later) (Yòu guòle yihuǐr)
- Mrs. Wèi: Mrs. Lín, which kind of ice cream would you like? This is coffee and this is orange. Wèi Tt: Lín Tt., nín yào něi yàngde bīngjīlíng? Yǒu kāfēide gen júzide.
- Mrs. Lín: Thank you, Mrs. Wèi, but if you will pardon me I won't take any dessert. It has been so appetizing a meal that I have had more than enough already. Lín Tt: Xièxie nín. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ shénme dōu chībuxiǎ qùle. Fàn tài hǎochīle. Wǒ chīde tài bǎole.
- (Later) (Yòu guòle yihuǐr)
- Chén: Mr. Liú, I think we'd better be going, don't you? Chén: Liú Xs., wǒ xiǎng wǒmen děi zǒule ba?
- Liú: Let's see. It's ten-thirty. Would it be polite for us to leave so soon? Liú: Wǒ kànkàn. Shídiǎnbàn. Zènme zǎo zǒu búdà hǎoyìsi ba?
- Chén: Oh, this isn't a formal occasion. We can leave any time we like. Besides, Mr. and Mrs. Wèi will understand that we have a long way to go home. Chén: Búyào jǐn. Dōu shì shù péngyou. Shénme shíhou zǒu dou xíng. Wǒmen zhūde dīfang yuǎn, tāmen yě dōu zhīdao.

Liú: Just as you say. (stepping up to Mrs. Wèi) Mrs. Wèi, this has been a delightful evening and it was every good of you to welcome a stranger to your party.

Liú: Hǎo, tīng nǐde ba. (Zǒu-guoqu gen Wèi Tt. shuō) Wèi Tt., duōxiè, duōxiè. Jīntian wǎnshang de cài zhēnshi hǎojíle. Nín kàn, méiqǐng wo jiu láiile, zhēn bùhǎoyisi.

Mrs. Wèi: I'm so glad you could be with us, Mr. Liú. It's been a pleasure meeting you, and I trust you will come to see us again when there aren't so many people and we can get really acquainted. Good night, Mr. Liú.

Wèi Tt: Nǎrde huà! Nándé nín jīntian wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu lái. Kěxī rén tài duō, méinéng gen nín hǎohǎorde tán. Yǒu gōngfu qǐng nín yíding zài guò-lai tántan. Zàijiàn, Liú Xs.

Liú: Good night, Mrs. Wèi. I certainly shall. (to Mr. Wèi) Good night, Mr. Wèi.

Liú: Hǎo, yíding yíding. Zàijiàn, zàijiàn. (duì Wèi Xs.) Wèi Xs., zàijiàn.

Wèi: Good night, Mr. Liú. I'm so glad Mr. Chén brought you. We must see more of each other.

Wèi: Liú Xs., zàijiàn. Jīntian nín néng gen Chén Xs. yíkuàir lái, zhēnshi hǎojíle. Yǐhòu hái yào duō gen nín qǐngjiào ne.

Chén: Good night to both of you. I've had an awfully good time, and thank you ever so much for giving me such a lovely party.

Chén: Zhēnshi tài xièxie nimen le, jīntian wǎnshang wèi wǒ zhème fèi shì. Zàijiàn, zàijiàn, duōxiè, duōxiè. Nín qǐnghuì ba.

Mrs. Wèi: Do come and see us. And thank you for coming.

Wèi Tt: Yǒu gōngfu qǐng lái wánr. Mǎnzǒu, mǎnzǒu.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Lǐ duō rén búguài.
2. Guǐde búguì, jiānde bújiàn.
3. Tiān búpà, dì búpà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguó huà.
4. Shuō huà róngyì, zuò shì nán.
5. Huódào lǎo, xuédào lǎo.
6. Huǐde bùrán, nǎnde búhuì.
7. Shuō Cáo Cao, Cáo Cao jiu dào.
8. Búpà mǎn, jiù pà zhàn.
9. Pàngzi búshi yìkǒu chīde.
10. Bǎishǒu, bǎishǒu.
11. Dào xǐ, dào xǐ.
12. Huānyíng, huānyíng.
13. Búsòng búsong.
14. Wǒ bùyuǎnsòngle. Yǒu gōngfu qǐng zài lai wánr.
15. Wǒ gēn nín língjiào diǎnr shì.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. gen Zhào Xs. tánqǐ shénme láiile? Sī Xs. huì shuō Zhōngguóde kèqihuà ma? Tā dōu huì shénme?

2. Sī Xs. juéde shénme yàngrde kèqihuà zui nán? Zhào Xs. yīwei nǐ-yàngrde kèqihuà kéyi búyòng? Nǐyàngrde fēi yòng bùkě?
3. Zhào Xs. yīwei shénme yàngrde kèqihuà róngyi xué? Shénme yàngrde kèqihuà nánxué?
4. Shénme yàngrde fēngsu xíguàn Měiguo gen Zhōngguo yíyàng? Shénme yàngrde búyiyàng?
5. Dào péngyou jiā qu, péngyou sòng kèren chūlai, kèren yīnggāi shuō shénme? Yàoshi nǐ sòng nǐde kèren dào ménkǒur, nǐ shuō shénme?
6. Zhōngguo ren qǐng kè, chīfàn, yǐqián cháng shuō shénme? Kèren zǒude shíhou shuō shénme?
7. Sī Xs. juéde kèqihuà yǒuyòng meiyou? Tā hái xiǎng xué shénme huà?
8. Sī Xs. huì shuō nǐ jìjù sùhuà? Nǐ huì shuō nǐ jìjù sùhuà?
9. Wèi shénme Zhào Xs. shuō Sī Xs. bùnéng suànshi yángguǐzi? Sī Xs. juéde ta zìjǐde Zhōngguo huà zěnmeyàng?
10. Zhào Xs. juéde shuō huà nǎn bunán? Tā juéde Měiguo rén duì shuō huà hěn zhùyì, wèi shénme?
11. Sī Xs. yīwei Měiguo ren shuō huà dōu hěn qīngchu ma?
12. Zhōngguode sùhuà yǒu gēn Měiguo de chàbuduōde ma? Nǐ zhīdao jǐge?
13. Yǒu meiyou guānyu Zhōngguo sùhuàde shū? Yǒu meiyou guānyu Měiguo sùhuàde shū? Yǒu meiyou Zhōngwén yīngwén zài yīkuàir de?
14. Zhào Xs. yào xiě nǐyàngrde shū ma? Sī Xs. néng bunéng xiě nǐ-yàngrde shū?
15. "Bàishòu", "bàinián", "bàijié", "dàoxǐ" dōushi zài shénme shíhou yòng?
16. "Lǐ duō rén búguài" shì shénme yìsi? "Lǐ duō rén búguài" de "lǐ" zì shì shénme yìsi?
17. "Tiān búpà, dì búpà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguo huà," shì shénme yìsi?
18. "Shuō huà róngyi, zuò shì nán," gēn "huódao lǎo, xuédao lǎo," dōu shì shénme yìsi?
19. "Huìde bunán, nán de búhuì," shì shénme yìsi? "Pàngzi búshi yìkǒu chīde," shì shénme yìsi? Zài shénme shíhou yòng?
20. "Búpà màn, jiù pà zhàn," shì shénme yìsi? Nèige "pà" zì shì shénme yìsi? Zhèijū huà shénme shíhou yòng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yǒu rén guò shēngrì, guònián, huòshi guò jié de shíhou, nǐ gēn tāmen dōu shuō shénme?
2. Yǒu rén jiéhūnde shíhou shuō shénme? Shēng xiǎoháir ne?
3. Nǐ yào wèn wèntí, zài wèn yǐqián, nǐ yīngdāng xiān shuō shénme?

4. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐ hěn yǒulǐmào, nǐ shuō shénme?
5. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hěn hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?

VII. Gùshi

(On Record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

- 1.1 They are all the same kind of people.
- 1.2 He has very good manners.
- 1.3 Tomorrow will be his birthday. What kind of gift are you going to give him?
- 1.4 I gave him a generous present, because as the Chinese saying goes: "People don't criticize you for being over courteous."
- 1.5 He himself broke the glass but he blamed it on me.
- 1.6 What do you say! Is it genuine or a fake?
- 1.7 What do you say in Chinese on New Year's day?
- 1.8 When he came back, we had a big party to welcome him.
- 1.9 Just compare them, you'll find out which is thick and which is thin.
- 1.10 There is something I don't quite understand; I want to ask you about it.
- 1.11 Some Chinese call foreigners foreign devils; I don't know why. Maybe they just want to make fun of them.
- 1.12 This is very important, don't be careless.
- 1.13 He is so old that he's getting muddled.
- 1.14 Don't worry. Sooner or later I will give you back the five dollars.
- 1.15 Eat it. Just a mouthful won't hurt you.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

- (577) a. As the saying goes: "To those who know how, it is not difficult; those who find it difficult, don't know how."
- (578) a. I don't like to talk with this kind of people.
- (579) a. That child has good manners.
b. In the West, hand shaking is a form of courtesy.

- (581) a. If I say something wrong, please don't be offended.
b. That person is very odd.
c. "People don't criticize a person for being over courteous."
- (582) a. His beard is false.
- (589) a. Compare these two.
b. That one is a little bigger.
- (594) a. I have a question to ask you. (Please enlighten me.)
- (595) a. I fear neither heaven nor earth, but only the way a foreigner speaks Chinese.
- (596) a. Don't make fun of me.
- (597) a. He is always careless.
- (598) a. He's too muddled. He doesn't get anything straight.
- (599) a. Speak of the devil and he appers.
- (600) a. Sooner or later he'll go to China.
- (601) a. "A fat person doesn't become fat in one mouthful."

LIST OF NOTES ON SENTENCE STRUCTURE

- Lesson 1: (1) The Topic of a Sentence
(2) Purpose of Coming and Going and Directional Ending
(3) Use of Wàng and Cóng
- Lesson 2: (1) Shì---de Construction
(2) The Use of Bǐ
(3) Lián...Dōu (or Yě)
- Lesson 3: (1) Adverbs in Associated Pairs
(2) Xiàng and Hǎoxiàng
(3) Reduplicated Stative Verbs
(4) Reduplicated Functive Verbs
- Lesson 4: (1) Time Expressions
(2) The Position of SV-Yidiǎnr
(3) If Not...Then...Otherwise
- Lesson 5: (1) VOde VO, VOde VO
(2) Duō as an Indefinite Number
(3) Adverbial Use of Stative Verbs
(4) Unusual Relationship of S-V-O
- Lesson 6: (1) Time-Spent Expressions (Continued)
(2) (Dào)shì..., Kěshì (Jiùshì or Búguò)
(3) Must and Mustn't
- Lesson 7: (1) Placewords as Objects
(2) Generalizations of Quality, Quantity or Degree
(3) Resultative Verb Endings
- Lesson 8: (1) Resultative Verb Endings (Continued)
(2) Various Uses of Suàn
- Lesson 9: (1) Lend and Borrow
(2) The Use of Lìngwài
(3) Duó(me), Zěnme, Zhème (Zènme) and Nème
- Lesson 10: (1) The Various Uses of Question Words
(2) The Uses of Zài
- Lesson 11: (1) Lái and Qù as RV Endings
(2) The Various Uses of Qǐlái as an RV Endings
(3) The Various Uses of Jiù

- Lesson 12: (1) The Bǎ Construction
(2) The Various Uses of Cái
- Lesson 13: (1) Zài, Jiù and Cái Compared
(2) Zài and Cái Compared
(3) Jiù and Cái Compared
- Lesson 14: (1) Measures
(2) Reduplicated Measures
(3) Reduplicated Number-Measures
- Lesson 15: (1) Descriptive Complement and Resultative Verb Compared
(2) The Usage of Chúle
- Lesson 16: (1) Multiples and Fractions
(2) Prestated Topic of a Sentence
- Lesson 17: (1) NU-M as a Predicate
(2) Action-time Relationship
- Lesson 18: (1) Ambiguity of Languages
(2) Some More Bǎ Construction
- Lesson 19: (1) Jiù and Cái Further Compared
(2) The Translation of "More" into Chinese
- Lesson 20: (1) Shuāi and Diào Compared
(2) The Translation of "Enjoy" and "Send"
- Lesson 21: (1) The Difference Between Guānyu and Duìyu
(2) The Translation of Yīqián and Yīhòu
(3) Other Yī-Compounds
- Lesson 22: (1) Xiǎoxin, Liúshén, Zhùyì and Zìxì Compared
(2) The Translation of "Care"
(3) Kělián and Kěxī Compared
- Lesson 23: (1) The Translation of "Make"
(2) The Translation of "Take"
- Lesson 24: (1) Translation of Conventional Courtesy Remarks

CHINESE DIALOGUES

VOCABULARY

<u>A</u>		Page
A bùrú B = B bǐ A hǎo = A méiyǒu B hǎo		178
A bùrú B dà = B bǐ A dà = A méiyǒu B dà		178
àsīpīlǐng	N: aspirin (M: -piànr)	96
ài chī bùchī	IE: eat it or not as you please	125
ài qu búqù	IE: go or not as you please	125
ài zǒu bùzǒu	IE: leave or stay as you please	125
àikèsī-guāng	N: X-ray	169
ānjǐng	SV: be quiet	138
ānmiányào	N: sleeping pills	169
àn guīju	VO: according to custom	126
àn(zhe)	CV: according to	65
<u>B</u>		
báihuà(r)	N: colloquial language, vernacular style	209
báihuàr xiǎoshuor	novel in the vernacular	209
báicài	N: cabbage (M: -kǎi, for trees and some vegetables)	19
bàijié	IE: seasonal greetings	227
bàinián	IE: New Year congratulations	227
bàishòu	IE: birthday best wishes	227
bān	M/N: class (the group of students or the period of class)	148
bànfǎ	N: method of doing, way to do something	157
bàngōng	VO: to conduct official business	197
bāo	V/M: wrap/package, parcel	56
bāoqilai	RV: wrap up	56
bāoguǒ	N: parcel, parcel post (M: -jiàn, -ge)	46
bāoshang	RV: wrap up	56
bǎoxiǎn	VO: buy insurance, guarantee	107
	V/SV: guarantee/be safe	
bǎo huǒxiǎn	VO: buy fire insurance	107
bàoshangde dàtímu	headlines	208
-bēi	M: glass of, cup of	85
bēi(zi)	N: cup, glass	85

běifāng	N: the North	28
běifāng rén	N: Northerner	28
Běijīng Dàxué	National Peking University	36
-bèi	M: times, - fold	149
bèishū	VO: recite (a lesson); to memorize, to learn by heart	137
běndì	N: local place, indigenous native	199
běndì rén	N: natives (of a place)	199
biǎo	N: chart, blank, form (M: -zhāng)	167
bié sòng	IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest only)	227
bǐfang	N/V: example/describe with gesture	96
bǐfangshuō	V: for instance	96
bǐjiǎo	V/A: compare/comparatively	227
biyè	VO: graduate	36
bīng	N: ice	188
bīngjīlíng	N: icecream	188
bǐnggān	N: cookies or crackers (M: -kuài, -hé)	188
bīngjià	N: sick leave	149
bīngsǐle	RV: die of illness	139
bízi	N: nose	10
bówùguǎn	N: museum	178
búdàn....	{ bǐngqiě(yě) érqiě(yě)	not only...but 179
búdàn...shènzhìyú...		not only...but even... 217
búdào	V: less than, not quite (usually followed by a numeral)	18
búguò	A: but, only	116
bújiàndé	IE: not necessarily (so)	218
búlùn (wúlùn)	A: it doesn't matter, no matter what	86
búsòng	IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest); I won't accompany you further (by host)	227
búsuàn	doesn't count, not reckoned as, not considered	65
búzàihu	IE: it doesn't matter, I don't care, it makes no difference to	188

bùdéliǎo	IE: extremely, very; terrific	94
bùgǎn shuō	IE: one doesn't dare say, uncertain	96
bùguǎn	V: don't care whether, no matter whether	3
bùhǎoyìsi	A/SV: be embarrassed, be shy	11
bùrú	V: is not up to, is not as good as	178
bùxǔ dòng	hands off, don't move	187
bùtóng	SV: be different (more literary than bùyíyàng)	217
bù	N: cotton cloth (M: -pǐ, bolt; -mǎ, yard; -chǐ, foot; cùn, inch)	54
bù zuòde	made of cloth	54
bùxié	N: cotton shoes	54
bùyīshang	N: cotton garment	54
buōli	N: glass, plastic	85
buōlibēi	N: glass, tumbler	85
buōlide	glass	85
buōli píbāo	plastic hand bag	85
buōli zuòde	made of glass or plastic	85

C

cāi	V: guess	209
cāizháo	RV: guessed it	209
càidānzi	N: menu	106
càiyóu	N: vegetable oil	18
càiyuánzi	N: vegetable garden	178
cānguān	V: pay a visit to (a public place) inspect informally, go sightseeing	148
cānjiā	V: participate in, join	198
Cáo Cǎo	A hero of the Three Kingdom's period.	228
cǎo	N: grass, straw	29
cǎodì	N: lawn	29
cǎomào	N: straw hat	29
céng	M: story (for lóu)	168

cóng...qǐ	CV...V: from...on	85
cónglái...bù...	never before, never do	139
cónglái...(jiù)	MA: heretofore, in the past	139
cónglái...měi...	never before, never did	139
chá	V: investigate, inspect, look up	209
cháchulai	RV: find out about	209
chá piào	VO: to punch tickets, to examine tickets	126
chápiaode	N: conductor	126
chá zì	VO: look up words	209
chá zìdiǎn	VO: consult the dictionary	209
chábēi	N: teacup	85
cháyè	N: tea leaf	29
cháng	V: taste	18
chángchūlai	RV: make out (tasting)	158
chángchu	N: strong point (of people)	167
chángduǎn	N: length	55
cháng wǎzi	stocking	56
-chǎng	BF: field	149
chàngqi gēr laile	RV: begin to sing	96
chàng xi	VO: sing opera	178
chàng zànměishī	VO: sing a hymn	137
chǎo	V: saute, fry	19
chǎo cài	VO: to prepare a fried dish	19
chǎocài	N: a fried dish	19
chǎo fàn	VO: to fry rice	19
chǎofàn	N: fried rice	19
chǎo jīdàn	VO: scramble an egg	19
chǎojīdàn	N: scrambled egg	19
chǎomiàn	N: "chow mein"	189
chènshān	N: shirt (M: -jiàn)	106
chéng	SV: be O.K., be satisfactory	46
chéng	V: become	158
	RVE: (change) into	
chéngshí	SV: be honest, sincere	84
chī àisīlín	VO: take aspirin	96
chīchūlai	RV: make out (tasting)	158
chīkǔ	VO: suffer bitterly	139
chǒu yān	VO: smoke	35
chū	V: produce (natural and manufactured goods)	115
chūchǎn	V/N: produce/product, produce (natural)	115
chūhàn	VO: sweat, perspire	168
-chūlai	RVE: make out, distinguish	158
chūshì	VO: have something go wrong, have an accident	106
chū tàiyang	VO: sun comes out	178
chūzū	V: for rent	64
chū zhúyì	VO: suggest a plan	179

chūjí-zhōngxué	N: junior high school	149
chūzhōng	N: junior high (abbr. of 378.1)	149
chūzhōngyī (niánjí)	first year of junior high	149
chūnjià	N: spring vacation	149
chūnjià-lǚxíngtuán	Spring Vacation Travel Club	197
chūnxiàqiūdōng	N: spring, summer, fall and winter	28
chūntian	TW: spring	28
chúle (chúqu...yǐwài)	in addition to..., besides	115
chúzi	N: cook	75
chù	BF: place, office, point feature M: (for dìfang) specifies localization	167
chùchù	N: everywhere	167
chuán	V: pass, spread	138
chuán jiào	VO: propagate religion, to preach the gospel	138
chuánlai chuánqu	pass around	138
chuánzhǎng	N: captain (of a boat)	148
chuáng	N: bed (M: -zhāng)	10
chuángdānzi	N: bed sheet (M: -chuáng, -gè)	106

D

-dá	M: dozen	56
dǎbuqilái	RV: will not start to fight	96
dǎdeqilái	RV: will start to fight	96
dǎ diànhuà dǎbutōng	cannot put through a phone call	218
dǎkāi	RV: open up	138
dǎqilailè	RV: begin to fight	96
dǎ qiú	VO: play ball	179
dǎsǐle	RV: killed (by beating or a gun)	139
dǎtīng	V: to inquire or ask about	45
dǎzhēn	VO: inoculate	96
dàqiántian	TW: three days ago	66
dàhòutiān	TW: three days from today	66
dàjiā	N: everybody	2
(dà) lǐtáng	N: auditorium	149
dàxiǎo	N: size	55
dàxué	N: College, University	36
dàxué yīniánjí	freshman	36
dàyī	N: overcoat (M: -jiàn)	106
dàifu	N: medical doctor, physician	96
dài(zhe)	V: lead	157
dàimàn	IE: I have treated you shabbily (say to a friend at the close of a party)	227

dài yǎnjìng(r)	VO: wear glasses	148
dānchéngpiào	N: one way ticket	125
dānzi	N: list (M: -zhāng, -gè)	106
dānwu	V: to delay, waste (cf. fèi)	167
dānwu gōngfu	waste time, take time	167
dānwu shíhou	waste time, take time	167
dānwu shìqìng	delay a business affair	167
dāngzhōng	PW: the center of, middle of	46
dāochā	N: knife and fork (M: -fèn, -tào)	85
dǎoméi	SV: be unlucky	106
dào	V: pour	218
dào chá	VO: pour tea	218
dào shuǐ	VO: pour water	218
dào(shi)	A: and yet, on the contrary	46
dàodǐ	A: after all, at bottom; (what) in the world?	217
dào'li	N: teaching, doctrine	138
dào'xǐ	IE: congratulations	227
dé	V: be ready	94
	RVE: ready, completed	
dé	V: get	179
dé bìng	VO: get sick	179
débuliǎo	RV: cannot be ready on time	94
dé dōngxì	VO: receive something (as a gift or prize)	179
dé érzi	VO: have a baby	179
dé jīngyan	VO: gain experience	179
dé qián	VO: receive money (as a gift or prize)	179
dé xuéwen	VO: acquire learning	179
dézhào	RV: got	179
dé zhīshi	VO: gain knowledge	179
dēng	N: lamp, light	64
dēng	V: insert (an advertisement, notice, etc.)	64
dēng bào	VO: put in the paper	64
dēng guǎnggào	VO: put an advertisement in the paper, magazine, etc.	64
dēngsānlúnrde	VO: pedicab - man (lit. one who pedals a pedicab)	125
-děng	M: grade, class	125
dīxià	RC: bow down	137
dītóu	VO: bow the head, lower the head	137
diǎn	V: light, ignite, apply a match to	37
diǎn huǒ	VO: light a fire	37
diǎn yān	VO: light a cigarette	37
diǎn yánghuǒ	VO: light a match	37
diǎnzhǎole	RC: lighted	37

diànbào jú	N: Telegraph Office	45
diàndēng	N: electric light	64
diànhuà jú	N: Telephone Office	45
diàn mén	N: switch (electric)	65
diànyǐng	N: motion picture	178
diànyǐngyuànzi	N: movie theater	178
diào	V: drop, fall	188
	RVE: come off	
diàoxiálái	RV: drop, fall	188
diàoxiáqu	RV: drop, fall	188
diào yú	VO: fish (with hook and line)	187
dìbǎn	N: floor	65
dìlǐ	N: geography	149
dītǎn	N: rug, carpet (M: -kuài, -zhāng)	75
diwǔcéng	fifth floor	168
diyīyè	the first page	157
dǐng	A: most	217
dǐng hǎo	excellent	217
dǐng kuài	fastest	217
dǐng yǒuqián	richest	217
dìng	V: fix, order	65
dìng dìfang	VO: agree on a place, reserve a place	65
dìnghǎole	RV: settled	65
dìngqian	N: deposit (on purchase or rent)	65
dìng shíhou	VO: make an appointment, set a time	65
dìng yuēhui	VO: make a date or an appointment	116
dìng zuòr	to reserve a seat	126
dōngtian	TW: winter	28
dōngyuàn	N: east yard	27
dòng	V: move, touch	187
dōngbuliǎo	RV: cannot move	187
dòngshēn	VO: start on a journey	198
dòngwù	N: animal	178
dòngwùyuán	N: the Zoo	178
dòng	N: hole	105
duǎnchu	N: shortcoming (of people)	167
duǎn wǎzi	socks	56
duì...yǒu xìngqu	be enthusiastic about	187
duì...yǒuyánjiu	have specialized knowledge in...	36
duìyu	CV: with respect to, in relation to, towards	179
duōbàn, duōbàn	A: most likely, most of, the majority	19
duōshǎo...V...ji...	A: a little bit (more or less)	126
duōshǎo...V...yìdiǎnr...	A: a little bit (more or less)	126
duōxiè	IE: many thanks	125

E

èsīle	RV: die of hunger, starve (to death)	139
ěrbíhóukē ěrduō	N: ear, nose, throat department N: ear (M: -zhī, one of a pair)	167 10
èrděng	second class	125

F

fāshāo fāyīn	VO: have a fever VO/N: pronounce/pronunciation	96 157
fāncheng Zhōngwén fān(yì) fānyì shū	RV-O: translate into Chinese V/N: translate/translation; translator VO: translate books	158 158 158
fǎnzhèng	MA: anyway, anyhow	46
fàndiàn	N: hotel	198
-fāng	BF: direction, a region	28
fángdōng fángzū	N: landlord, landlady N: house rent	64 64
fàng jià fàng sāntiān jià fàngxia	VO: close school for a vacation, to have a vacation have three days vacation RV: put down	149 149 56
fēi...bùkě	IE: must, it won't do otherwise	76
fēijīchǎng	N: air field	149
fèi fèiqián/fèi qián fèishíhou/fèi shíhou fèishì/fèi shì	V: waste, use a lot SV/VO: expensive/cost money, take money SV/VO: time consuming/use time, take time SV/VO: laborious, troublesome/ take a lot of work	86 86 86 86
fēn fēnbié fēnbié zai zhèr fēnbié hěn dà fēncheng sānkuài fēn dōngxi fēngei wǒ wǔkuai qián fēnkai -fēnzhī-	V: divide, separate, share N: difference the difference is right here the difference is considerable RV-O: divided into three pieces divide things give me my five dollars share RV: separate M: pattern for fractions	139 158 158 158 139 139 139 149
fēngfù	SV: be abundant, rich	115
fēng fēngjǐng fēngsú	N: wind N: scenery, view N: custom	28 28 218
-fènr	M: issue, number (of something published periodically)	208

fǔshang	IE: home, residence, family (courteous reference to other people's)	35
fǔzá	SV: be complicated (opposite of jiǎndān)	208
fùjìn	N: vicinity, near by	45
<u>G</u>		
gāi	V: it is fitting that, should	167
gāi zǒule	it's time to go	167
gāi shéi?	whose turn?	167
gǎi	V: correct, change, alter, revise	116
gǎibuliǎo	RV: cannot change	116
gǎideliǎo	RV: can change	116
gǎihǎoie	RV: corrected	116
gǎihuàile	RV: change for the worse	116
gǎi yīshang	VO: alter clothes	116
gǎn	V: dare, venture	96
gǎnjǐn	A: hurriedly, at once, promptly	55
gāoji-zhōngxué	N: senior high school	149
gāozhōng	N: senior high (abbr. of 379.1)	149
gāozhōngsān (niánjí)	N: third year of senior high	149
gè-	SP: each, every	197
gèchù	N: everywhere	197
gèyàngr	N: different kinds	197
"gè yǒu suǒ cháng"	IE: each one has its own good point	217
gèzhǒng	N: different kinds	
gěi...juān qián	raise money for...	138
gēn	V: follow	126
gēn...jiéhūn	get married to	36
gēn...juān qián	ask for contribution, solicit fund	138
gēnshang	RV: catch up	126
gēnzhe	V/A: follow	126
gōnggòng-qìchē	N: bus, public vehicle (M: -liàng for cart, -tàng for trip)	3
gōnglì(de)	BF: publicly established (school, factory, etc.)	115
gōngshì	N: official or public business, in contrast to <u>sīshì</u> , personal or private matters	197
gōngshifáng	N: office	197
gōngsī	N: company, corporation	94
gōngyuán	N: park	178
gōngkè	N: field of learning, course, lessons, school work (M: -mén, course)	37
gōngkèbiǎo	N: schedule of day's classes	149
gōngqian	N: wage	85

gòngchǎnzhǔyì	N: communism	208
gù	V: hire, employ (used with reference to the laboring class, compare with <u>qǐng</u>)	84
gù chē	VO: hire a conveyance	84
gù chúzi	VO: employ a cook	84
gù rén	VO: employ people	84
gù sānlúnr	VO: to hire a pedicab	125
gù yòngren	VO: employ a servant	84
guā húzi	VO: shave (interchangeable with <u>guā liǎn</u>)	187
guā fēng	VO: wind blows	28
guà	V: hang (something)	95
guàqilai	RV: hang up	95
guàhào	VO: register	46
guàhàochù	N: registration (desk, window, etc.)	167
guàhào xìn	N: registered letter (M: -fēng)	46
guà páizi	VO: to check baggage	126
guàshang	RV: hang up	95
guài	V/SV: blame, be offended at, be strange, queer	227
guàibude	A: no wonder that	227
guān	N: officer	105
guānyu	CV: about, concerning, in	197
guānxi	N: relation, connection, relevance	85
guǎn	V: manage, take care of, attend to	3
guǎndeliǎo	RV: can manage (actual form uncommon)	3
guǎnzi	N: tube, pipe (M: -gēn)	65
-guǎn	N: hall, building	149
guāng	N: light, ray	169
Guǎngdōng	PW: Kwangtung (province)	19
Guǎngdōng huà	N: Cantonese (dialect)	19
Guǎngdōng rén	N: Cantonese (people)	19
guǎnggào	N: advertisement	64
guīju	N: customs, rules and regulations	126
guì(zì)	N: chest, cabinet	75
yī(shang)guì	N: wardrobe, chest of drawers	75
shūguì	N: book shelf	75
wǎngui	N: cupboard	75
guò	V: pass, cross over	3
guò jiǎng	IE: you flatter me	18
guò jiē	VO: cross a street	3
guò jié	VO: celebrate a festival	227
guòlai	RV: come over	3
guò NU -tiáo jiē	go NU blocks	3
guò nián	celebrate the New Year	227
guò shēngrì	VO: celebrate a birthday	227
guòqu	RV: go over, pass away (die)	3
guòzhòng	SV: overweight, too heavy	47

H

hánjià	N: winter vacation	149
hàn	N: sweat	168
Hángzhōu	PW: Hangchow	197
hángkōngkuàixìn	N: air mail special delivery (M: -fēng)	45
hángkōngxìn	N: air mail (M: -fēng)	45
hángkōngxìnfēng	N: air mail envelope	46
hángkōngxìnzhǐ	N: air mail letter paper	46
hángkōngyóupiào	air mail stamp	46
hǎo	A: in order to, so that	199
hǎochu	N: good point, benefit	167
hǎoshuōhuà	SV: be affable, easy to get along with	86
hǎowén	SV: be good to smell	18
hǎoxiàng	V/A: resemble/a good deal like, just as though, it seems that	19
hǎoxiàng...de yàngzi	resemble, appearance of	19
hǎoxiàng...shìde	resemble	19
-hào(r)	M: number, size	54
hébi	A: why is it necessary to?	95
hébi fēi...bùkě	why insist on...? why must?	95
héqi	SV: be friendly, affable	94
héshì	SV: be suitable, fit	55
hézi	N: box (small)	56
-hé(r)	M: a box of	56
hēibǎn	N: blackboard (M: -kuài)	159
hěnjiǔ méijiàn	Ph: haven't seen you for a long time	64
hóng màozi	N: red cap	125
hóngtóng	N: copper	115
hóngyè	N: red leaf	36
hòu	SV: thick (in dimension)	46
hòuyuàn(r)	N: backyard	27
hūrán	MA: suddenly	187
hú	N: lake	178
húdu (or hútú)	SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid	228
húlihúdu (or húlihútū)	SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid	228
hújiāomiàn	N: (ground) pepper	18
húzi	N: beard, mustache	187

hùshì	N: nurse (M: -wèi)	168
huāyuánzi (huāyuánr)	N: garden	178
huá chuán	VO: row boat	179
huàbào	N: pictorial magazine	208
huàichu	N: bad point	167
huānyíng	V: welcome	227
huánjīng	N: environment	178
huàn	V: exchange, change	65
huàn dōngxi	exchange something	65
huàn qián	exchange money	65
huàn yīshang	change clothes	65
huángzhǒng rén	yellow race	36
huángtóng	N: brass	115
huán (gei)	V: return (borrowed money or things)	74
huār	N: flower (M: -duǒ)	28
huídá	V: answer	158
huídá wèntí	VO: answer a question	158
huì	AV: may, would	37
huì	N: meeting	137
huó	SV: be alive, living	139
huóbuliǎo	RV: be unable to live	139
huóguolai	RV: come to	139
huózhe	living	139
huǒ	N: fire, stove	37
huǒchēpiào	N: railroad ticket	3
huǒji	N: waiter, clerk (in stores)	54

J

jī	N: chicken (M: -zhī)	19
jīdàn	N: (chicken) egg (M: -dá, dozen)	19
jīdàntāng	N: egg drop soup	19
Jīdūjiào	N: Christianity (usually refers to the Protestant church as vs. the Catholic church)	116
jīhuì	N: opportunity, chance	18
jīqī	N: machine	208
jīfēnzhījī	NU: what fraction?	149
jīkǒu(r) rén?	how many persons (in a family)	228
jīniánjī?	PW: what grade or year (in school)?	10

ji	V: mail, send by mail	45
ji bāoguǒ	VO: mail parcel post	46
ji chūqu	RV: mail out	45
ji dōngxi	VO: mail things	45
ji gěi	V: mail to	45
ji lái	RV: send by mail (here)	45
ji qu	RV: send by mail (there)	45
ji xìn	VO: mail letters	45
ji zǒu	RV: mail out	45
ji	remember, keep in mind	45
ji de	V: remember	45
ji xíng	M: memory	45
ji zhàng	VO: put on account, charge	218
ji zhe	V: keep in mind	45
ji zhù	RV: fix or hold in mind	45
jiā	V: add, increase, raise	198
jiā qián	VO: increase money; get a raise	198
jiā qilai	RV: add up, add together	198
jiā shàng zhèige	add this in	198
jiā yīdiǎnr xiǎoxīn	VO: be a little more careful	198
jiā zai yīkuàir	add together	198
jiā ménkǒur	gateway of a home	84
jiǎ	SV: be false	227
jià	N: vacation	149
jiājū	N: furniture (M: -jiàn, -tào)	74
dài jiājū	VO: be furnished, include furniture	74
jiàqian	N: price, cost	55
jiàqian dī	low priced	55
jiàqian gāo	high priced	55
jiàqian guì	expensive	55
jiàqian hǎo	priced right	55
jiàqian piányi	inexpensive, cheap in price	55
jiàzi	N: rack, shelf, frame	75
shūjià(zi)	N: book shelf, book case	75
yīshàngjià(zi)	N: frame for hanging clothes, clothes hanger, clothes tree, clothes rack	75
-jiān	M: (for rooms)	10
jiǎnchá	V: examine	168
jiǎnchá bìng	be examined (for a disease)	168
jiǎnchá xíngli	inspect baggage	168
jiǎndān	SV: be simple	85
jiǎnzhǐ(de)	A: simply, just	10
jiàn	SV: be cheap	55
jiàn dàifu	VO: see the doctor	96
jiānglái	MA: in the future, hereafter, later	217

jiǎng	V: explain	114
jiǎngdào	VO: to preach	138
jiǎnghuà	VO: speak	114
jiǎng jiàqian	VO: bargain	114
jiǎngshū	VO: explain the lesson, lecture (in class)	114
jiǎngtáng	N: class room	149
jiǎngyǎn	V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech	114
jiǎngjiu	SV: be meticulous, particular	75
	V: be meticulous or particular about; care a great deal about	
jiàngyóu	N: soya sauce	18
jiāo(gei)	V: turn over to, hand over to	126
jiāogei tā	turn over to him	126
jiāotōng	N: communication and transportation	218
jiǎo	N: foot (of a person)	55
jiǎoháng	N: porter (baggage)	125
jiǎozi	N: meat dumplings	189
jiàohuì	N: church (organization)	115
jiàohuì bānde	operated by the church	115
jiàohuì xuéxiào	church or mission school	115
jiàohuì yīyuàn	church or mission hospital	115
jiàotáng	N: church (building)	116
jiàoyù	N: education	208
jiàoyuán	N: teacher (M: -wèi)	149
jiào shénme míngzi?	What is it called?	84
jiàoxǐng	RV: awaken	138
jiē diànhuà	VO: answer a phone call	2
jiē rén	VO: meet and escort someone	2
jiēzhao	RV: received, met	2
jiēzhe	A: continuing, going on, or tying in where one left off when interrupted	157
jiēzhe niàn	continue reading	158
jiēzhe shuō	continue speaking	158
jiēzhe xiě	continue writing	158
jiēshi	SV: be strong, durable, sturdy	55
jié	N: festival	227
jiéguǒ	A: as a result, finally	188
	N: result, solution	
jiéhūn	VO: marry	36
jiějué	V: solve, settle	208
jiè	V: borrow, lend, loan	74
jiè(gei)	V: lend to	74
gēn...jiè	CV..V: borrow from	74
jiè qián	VO: borrow money, lend money	74

jièguāng	please excuse me, pardon me	127
jièshàoxìn	N: letter of introduction	148
jìhuà	V/N: plan	197
jīn-	BF: gold	115
jīnbiǎo	N: gold watch	115
jīnde	N: of gold	115
jīnyíntóngtiěxī	N: gold, silver, brass, iron and tin (known as the five metals)	115
jīnzi	N: gold (M: -liǎng, ounce)	115
jīnzi zuòde	made of gold	115
jìnlái	A: recently	168
jīngjì	N/SV: economy/be economical	208
jīngyàn	N: experience	148
jīngshen	N: spirit	179
jīngshénbìng	N: mental disorder	179
jǐngchá	N: policeman	105
jǐngchájú	N: police department	105
jǐngguān	N: police officer	
-jiǔ	SV: long (of time)	64
jiǔyǎng	IE: I've longed to meet you	9
jiǔbēi	N: wine, cup or glass	85
jiù nème bàn	IE: Good, let's do it that way	66
jiùshi...yě...	A: even if (in supposition)	85
-jú	BF: office	45
júzhǎng	N: the one in charge of the office, as -- yóuzhèngjú júzhǎng -- postmaster	148
júzi	N: orange, tangerine	85
júzishuǐ	N: orange juice	85
jǔ	V: raise	159
jǔqilai	RV: raise up	159
jǔshǒu	VO: raise one's hand	159
juān	V: give, donate, contribute	138
juān qián	VO: donate money, raise money by donation	138
juāngei	V: donate to	138
juéding	V: decide	66

K

kāi	V: make out, write out (a note, slip, etc.)	105
kāi dānzi	VO: make out a slip	106
kāi huì	VO: open a meeting, hold a meeting	137
kāi liúshēngjī	VO: play the phonograph	157
kāi wánxiào	VO: make fun of, to crack a joke	228
kāi xialai	RV: list	105
kāi yàofāngr	VO: to prescribe	169
kāi yige tiáor	VO: write a note	105
kān	V: watch	198
kān dōngxì	VO: take care of things	198
kān fáng	VO: take care of a house	198
kān háizi	VO: take care of a child	198
kànchūlai	RV: make out (seeing)	158
kàndàifu	VO: see the doctor	96
kàn diànyǐngr	VO: go to the movies	178
kànfǎ	N: point of view, way of looking at things	209
kànlái kànqù	consider from one angle and another	138
kàn xì	VO: go to a play	178
kànzhe bàn	IE: do as you see fit	86
kànzhe xiàng	look like	10
kǎo	V: toast, bake	85
kǎomiànbāo	N: toast	85
kǎo miànbāo	VO: toast or bake bread	85
kǎo	V: examine, take an examination (in studies)	158
kǎoshì	V: examine, take an examination (in studies)	158
kǎo shū	N: examination examine, take an examination (in studies)	158
kē	N: department	167
késou	V/N: cough	96
kě-	prefixed to verb with much the meaning of the English-- able, -ible	168
kě búshì ma!	IE: isn't that the truth!, sure enough!	28
kěkǒukělè	N: coca cola	189
kělián	SV: be pitiful (cf. kěxī)	208
kěnéng	SV/A/N: possible/possibly/possibility	168
kěpà	SV: be productive of fear	168
kěqùde dìfang	SV: places one can go to	168
kěxī	SV: be pitiful, be regretful (cf. zāogāo)	188
kěxiào	SV: be laughable, funny	168, 116
kě	SV: be thirsty	168
kèshì	N: class room	149
kètáng	N: class room	149

kōng	SV: be empty, vacant	126
kōng fáng	vacant house	126
kōng hézi	empty box	126
kōngle	it's become empty	126
kōngqì	N: atmosphere, air	217
kōng wūzi	vacant room	126
kōng zuòr	vacant seat	126
-kǒu	M: mouthful, measure for person	228
kūqilaile	RV: begin to cry	96
kǔ	SV: be bitter to the taste; be hard, difficult (of life)	139
kùzi	N: pants, trousers (M: -tiáo)	106
kuàixìn	N: special delivery (M: -feng)	45
kuān	SV: be wide, broad	54
kuānzhǎi	N: width	55
kùn	SV: be sleepy	168
<u>L</u>		
lā	V: pull	148
lāguolai	RV: pull over	148
lāshanglai	RV: pull up	148
lāshǒu	VO: shake hands	148
lāxiàqū	RV: pull down	148
lái bují	RV: there isn't enough time, can't make it	189
lái de jí	RV: there is time, can make it	189
lái huipiao	N: round trip ticket	125
lái xìn	VO: send a letter (here)	37
lǎn	SV: be lazy	187
lèi	M: kind, class, category	226
lǐ	N: courtesy, ceremony; gift, present	227
lǐbàitáng	N: church (lit. worshipping hall)	116
lǐmào	N: manners, courtesy	227
Lǐ Bái	N: Li Po (one of the most celebrated poets of the T'ang Dynasty)	159
lìshǐ	N: history	148
liánzi	N: curtain	75
chuāng(hu)liánzi	N: drapes, shades, curtains	75
liànxí	V/N: practice	158
liáng	V: measure	54
liángkuai	SV: be cool (comfortably cold)	28

liǎngbān	two classes	148
liǎobude	IE: extremely, very; terrific	94
língsuì	SV: odds and ends of, sundry,	76
línglíngsuìsuìde	sundries	76
língqián	N: small change	76
língsuì(de) dōngxi	odds and ends, sundry articles	76
língsuì(de) shìqing	sundry affairs	76
lǐngjiào	IE: May I receive your instruction? (used to introduce a query)	227
língwài	A: besides, in addition to	74
	SP: other	
liú	V: keep, set aside, detain, save	66
liúqilai	RV: put away	66
liú húzi	VO: grow a beard or mustache	187
liú shén	V/VO: take care/be careful	96
liúshēngjī	N: phonograph	157
liúshēngjī piānzi	N: phonograph record	157
liú tiáo	VO: leave a message	66
liúxia	RV: leave it here	66
lùkǒu(r)	N: end of a street	3
lúzi	N: stove, range, heater, furnace	65
lǚxíng	V/N: travel/travel, trip (M: cì)	197
luàn	SV: be confused, in disorder, mixed up, helter-skelter, in trouble	95
luànqībāzāo	IE: in confusion,	95
luàn shuō	speak recklessly, not know what one is saying	95

M

máfan	N: trouble, nuisance	2
mǎhū	SV: be careless, not serious minded	228
māmǎhūhū	SV: be careless, not serious minded	228
mǎn	SV: to be full	137
mànchē	N: local train	125
mànzǒu	IE: Depart slowly, be careful (said to a friend who has been visiting and is leaving)	227
mǎnmǎnr(de)	A: slowly	19
méi	N: coal (M: -jīn, catty; -dūn, ton)	115

méiyǒu bànfǎ	VO: there is no way out	157
méiguānxi	IE: It doesn't matter, it's not important.	85
méi(you) guānxi	VO: not related to, not relevant	85
méi shénme kěshuōde	nothing that can be said	168
méi wèntí	IE: There is no problem.	158
méixiǎngdào	RV: didn't expect	106
méi zhīshi	VO: uninitiated; uneducated	179
méi zuòr	there are no seats	126
ménfáng	N: gatekeeper's room, gatekeeper	148
ménkǒu	N: gate way, door way, in front of the door	84
ménpiào	N: entrance ticket (of any kind)	3
mèng	N: dream	168
mèngjiàn	RV: dreamed about, see...in a dream	168
mǐ	N: hulled rice (grain) (M: -dǒu, peck; -shēng, pint; -jīn, catty)	115
mínghòutiān	TW: tomorrow or day after tomorrow	198
míngzi	N: name (M: -gè)	84
míngzi jiào...	(his) name is...	84
miánhua	N: cotton (M: -jīn, catty; -bāo, bale)	115
miànbāo	N: bread (M: -kuài for slice; -gè for loaf)	85
mùshī	N: preach, pastor, minister	137
<u>N</u>		
ná...zuò bǐfang	take...for an example	96
ná shǒu bǐfang	PH: to describe with the hands	96
ná zhǔ	RV: take hold of	46
nà shì zìrán	IE: Naturally!	157
nǎi	N: milk	85
nán'chu	N: difficulty	167
nánguài	A: no wonder that	227
nánfāng	N: the South	28
nánfāng rén	N: Southerner	28
nányòngren	N: male servant	3
nèikē	N: medical department	167
nèirén	N: my wife (polite remark)	95
niánqīng	SV: be young	187
niándì	TW: end of the year	197
-niánjí	M: grade in school	10

niánqīngde	N: young person	187
niánqīng rén	N: young person	187
niàn dàxué	study in college	36
niànshúle	RV: read (a book) until familiar with it	198
niàn Zhōngwén	VO: study Chinese	46
niǎor	N: bird (M: -zhī)	29
niǎor jiào	singing of birds	29
Nín qǐng	IE: please go ahead, after you	29
niú	N: cow, ox, cattle	85
niú'nǎi	N: cow's milk	85
nòng	V: arrange, take care of, see to, lend to, handle	105
nòngcuòle	RV: make a mistake, didn't do it right	105
nònghǎole	RV: it's been fixed	105
nònghuàile	RV: break (something)	105
nòngzǒu	RV: take away	105
nuǎnhuo	SV: be warm (comfortably warm)	28
nǚyòngren	N: maid	3
<u>P</u>		
páizi	N: sign, tag (baggage), brand, make	126
pài	V: select, appoint or sent (someone to do something)	105
-pán	M: plate of, platter of	75
chápánzi	tea tray	75
pánzi...	N: plate, platter, tray	75
yipán cài	a dish of food	75
pàngzi	N: fat person	228
pǎolái pǎoqù	run back and forth	138
péi	V: accompany, escort	197
péike	N: guest who is not the guest of honor	197
péi kè	VO: entertain a guest	197
péi(zhe)ta	to keep him company	197
péi(zhe)ta qù	go along with him and keep him company	197
péi(zhe)ta zuò yìhuìr	sit with him for a while	197
pén	N: basin, tub	65
pèng	V: bump into, run into	36
pènghuài	RC: bump into and break	36
pèngjian	RC: meet by accident	36
pèngshang	RC: run into	36

pí	N: skin, fur, leather, hide (M: -kuài, zhāng)	54
píbāo	N: hand bag, brief case, suit case	54
pídàyī	N: fur coat (M: -jiàn)	106
píxiāng	N: suitcase, trunk, chest (leather)	125
píxié	N: leather shoes	54
pízi	N: fur, leather, hide	54
pízi zuòde	made of leather	54
piānzi	N: record, film	157
piànzi	N: card, calling card (M: -zhāng)	148
piào	N: ticket (M: -zhāng)	3
piàofáng	N: ticket office	126
piàoliang	SV: be attractive, smart looking	55
píngguǒ	N: apple	36
píngxìn	N: ordinary mail (M: -fēng)	45
pǔtōng	SV: ordinary, common (cf. píngcháng)	167
pǔtōng huà	A: ordinarily common speech	167
pùzi ménkǒu	entrance of a store	84

Q

qí	V: ride, straddle	179
qí mǎ	VO: ride horseback	179
qí zìxíngchē	VO: ride a bicycle	179
qídǎo	V: pray	138
qíshí	A: in fact, as a matter of fact	187
-qǐlai	RVE: start to, begin to; (also indicates success in attaining object of the action)	96
qǐ míngzi	VO: give a name, to name	84
qìhòu	N: climate	217
qiānwàn	A: by all means, without fail, be sure	11
qiánhòu	A: all told, altogether, (from beginning to end)	218
qiánhòu yígòng	first and last, altogether	218
qiányuàn(r)	N: frontyard	27
qiǎn	SV: be light (in color), shallow (of water, thought)	55
qiǎnhóng	N: light red	55
qiǎnlán	N: light blue	55
qiáng	N: wall	65

qínjin	SV: be diligent (referring to physical work)	84
qīng	SV: light (in weight)	47
qīngjìng	SV: be quiet	199
qīngnián(ren)	N: young person	187
qīngcài	N: green vegetables	86
qīngtiān	N/VO: clear sky, day or weather	29
qīngxìng	N: condition, situation	114
qǐng dàifu	VO: call a doctor	96
qǐnghuī	IE: Please return (by guest)	227
qǐng jià	VO: ask leave	149
qǐng kè	VO: invite guests, give a party	85
qǐngwèn	IE: may I inquire	94
qióng	SV: be poor	139
qióng rén	N: poor people	139
qiūtiān	TW: fall	28
qiú	V: ask, beg	148
qiú rén	VO: ask for help, ask a favor	148
qǔ	fetch, take out, call for (jiē and qǔ both mean 'fetch', but jiē usually refers to people, qǔ to things)	3
qǔ bāoguǒ	VO: get parcel post	46
qǔchulai	RV: take out, withdraw	3
qǔ dōngxì	VO: fetch things	3
qǔ qián	VO: fetch money, withdraw money	3
qǔ xíngli	VO: get baggage	3
qùnián niándǐ	TW: end of last year	197
qù xìn	VO: send a letter (there)	37

R

rènao	SV: be noisy and bustling	187
rénkǒu	N: population	115

S

sānděng	third class	125
sāncénglóu	third floor, three stories	168
sānfēnde yóupiào	a three-cent stamp	46
sānfēnzhīyī	NU: one third	149
sānge xuéqī	three terms	149
sānlúnchē	N: pedicab	125
sānlúnr	N: pedicab (M: -liàng)	125

sàn	V: disperse, break up, adjourn	137
sànbù	VO: take a stroll, take a walk	27
sàn huì	VO: adjourn a meeting	137
shāfā	N: sofa (M: -gè, -tào)	75
Shāndōngshěng	Shantung province	36
shāndōng	N: cave	105
shāngfēng	VO: catch cold	95
shāngliang	V: discuss, talk over	74
shàngbān	VO: go to class; go to work	148
shāng dàxué	go to college	36
shàngdì	N: God (M: -wèi)	137
shànglái xiàqù	go up and down	138
shàngxuéqī	last term	149
Shàoxiàn	PW: a fictitious town	114
shèhuì	N: society	36
shèhuìxué	N: sociology	36
shēn	SV: be deep (color, water, thought)	55
shēnhuáng	N: deep yellow	55
shēnlǜ	N: deep green	55
shēntǐ	N: body, health	179
shénmede	N: and so on	75
xiàng...shénmede	such as...etc.	75
shènzhìyú	A: even, to the point	217
shēng	V: give birth to; be born	35
shēng	SV: unfamiliar, raw, fresh	198
shēng cài	raw vegetables	198
shēnghuó	V/N: live/livelihood, living	218
shēng lúzi	VO: start a fire in the stove, light the furnace	65
shēng rén	stranger, new comer	198
shēngri	N: birthday	227
shēng ròu	uncooked meat	198
shēng zì	new word	198
shēngyin or shēngr	N: sound, noise	95
shěng	N: province	36
shěng	V: save (economize)	85
shěngde	lest, avoid, in order to prevent (someone from doing something)	198
shěngqián/shěng qián	SV/VO: economical/save money	86
shěngshíhou/ shěng shíhou	SV/VO: time-saving/save time	86
shěngshì/shěng shì	SV/VO: trouble-saving/save trouble	85
shěngzhāng	N: governor of a province	148
Shèngjīng	N: Holy Bible, the Scriptures, the Bible	138

shī	N: poem, poetry (M: -shǒu)	137
shítou	N: rock, stone	178
shízài	SV: be real, honest	167
shízài shuō	A: really, actually	167
shízi	N: across in the shape of the Chinese character ten (十)	3
shízi-lùkǒur	PW: street or road intersection	3
shì	V: try	46
shì wēndù	VO: take temperature	96
-shì	N: style, pattern fashion	74
jiùshì	old style	74
nánshì zháji	southern fried chicken	74
xīshì	western style or fashion	74
xīshì fángzi	western style house	74
xīshì jiājū	western style furniture	74
xīnshì	modern style	74
Zhōngshì	Chinese style	74
shōushi	V: fix, repair, clean up, put in order, straighten out	10
shōushi dōngxi	straighten things up	10
shōushihǎole	straightened out	10
shōushi qìchē	repair an automobile	10
shōushiwánle	finished fixing	10
shōushi wūzi	fix up a room	10
shōushi xingle	pack up	10
shōutiáor	N: receipt	66
shǒu diǎndēng	N: flash light	64
shǒujīn	N: towel (M: -tiáo; -kuài)	10
shǒuxu	N: procedure, process	167
shǒudū	N: capital	218
shǒushi	N: jewelry (M: -jiàn)	105
shú (or shǒu)	SV: be well acquainted with; ripe, be cooked, done	198
shú ren	N: acquaintance	198
shǔjià	N: summer vacation	149
shù	N: tree (M: -kē)	28
shùyèzi	N: tree leaf	29
shuā	V: brush	11
shuā yá	VO: brush teeth	11
shuā yīshang	VO: brush clothes	11
shuāzi	N: brush (M: -bǎ--generally for things which have handles or parts grasped by the hand in using)	11
shuāi	V: fall (of a person); throw (something) down	188
shuāidǎole	RV: fell down	188
shuāidiǎole	RV: fell down and came off	188

shuāihuàile	RV: it fell down and broke; it was thrown and broken	188
shuāisǐle	RV: fell down and died	188
shuāitāngxiale	RV: fell flat	188
shuāizhao	RV: fell down and got hurt	188
-shuāng	M: pair (for shoes, socks, gloves, chopsticks, etc.)	54
shuǐ guǎnzi	N: water pipe	65
shuǐguǒ	N: fruit	86
shùnbian	A: when convenient, at your convenience	197
shuōfǎ	N: the way of speaking	209
shuōlái shuōqù	discuss (the matter) back and forth	138
shuō shízàide	tell you the honest truth	167
sīlì(de)	BF: privately established (school, factory, etc.)	115
sǐ	V: die	139
sǐrén	N: dead person	139
sìniánjí	PW: fourth grade or year (in school)	10
sìshēng	N: four tones (of the Chinese Mandarin language)	209
sòng lǐ	VO: give gifts	227
súhuà	N: proverb, common saying (M: -jù)	226
súyǔ(r)	N: proverb, common saying (M: -jù; interchangeable with súhuà)	226
sùshè	N: dormitory	149
suàn	V: reckon, calculate, add, count	65
suànchulai	RV: figure out	65
suànshang	RV: include in, add, count in	65
suīrán...dàodǐ	although...after all...	217
suīrán...kěshi	A: although...(yet)...	18
suǒ	V/N: lock (M: -bǎ)	65
suǒqilai	RV: lock up (things, people)	65
suǒshang	RV: lock up (doors, locks)	65
-suǒ(r)	M: for houses	64

T

tái	N: stage, platform	126
táitou	VO: lift up one's head, raise up one's head	159
tàiyang	N: sun, sunlight	178
tǎnzi	N: blanket (M: -kuài; tiáo)	75
-táng	BF/M: hall/class period	149
Tángshī	N: Táng (Dynasty) poetry (M: shǒu)	158
tǎng	V: lie down	95
tǎngxia	RV: lie down, fall down	95
tǎngzai chuángshang	lie on the bed	95
-tào	M: set of, suit of	75
yítào jiājū	set of, furniture	75
yítào pánzi wǎn	set of dishes	75
yítào shū	set of books	75
yítào yīshang	suit of clothes	75
(tèbié)-kuàichē	N: express train	125
téng	SV: ache	95
tímu	N: topic, theme	208
tīyùguǎn	N: gym	149
Tiānzhǔjiào	N: Catholic Church (Roman)	116
tián	V: fill in	168
tián biǎo	VO: fill in a form	168
tián	SV: be sweet	19
tiāo	V: choose; select	218
tiáor	N: brief note, short message	66
tiě	N: iron	115
tiěde	N: of iron	115
tīngchūlai	RV: make out (hearing)	158
tīng piānzi	VO: listen to record	157
tīng xì	VO: go to a play	178
tīngzhe xiàng	sounds like	10
tíng	V: stop, park	2
tíng chē	VO: park a car, stop a train	2
tǐng	A: very	84
tǐng hǎo	very good	84
tǐng shūfu	very comfortable	84
tǐng yǒuyìsi	very interesting	84

tōng	V/RVE: pass through/get through	218
tōng chē	to be open to traffic,	218
tōngdiànhuà	be accessible by train or bus	218
tōng xìn	to put through a phone call	218
	to correspond by mail	218
tóng	N: copper, brass	115
tóngde	N: of copper, of brass	115
tóngbān	N/VO: classmate	187
tóngshí	A: at the same time	217
tóngshì	N/VO: co-corker, colleague	187
tóngxué	N/VO: schoolmate, fellow students	187
tóngkuai	SV: be content, be happy	2
tōu	V: steal	106
tōutōurde	A: stealthily, secretly	106
tōuzhe	A: stealthily, secretly	106
tóuděng(chē)	SV: first class train	125
tóuténg	N: have a headache	95
túshūguǎn	N: library	149
tǔ	N: dust, earth	28
tuī	V: push	187
tuīkai	RV: push open	187
tuīshàngqu	RV: push up	187
tuīxiàlai	RV: push down	187
<u>W</u>		
wàzi	N: sock, stocking (M: -shuāng, for pair; -zhī for one of a pair)	56
wài	EX: hello (used in telephone conversation only)	94
wàikē	surgical department	167
wánquán	SV/A: be complete/completely	217
wàng shàng tuī	push upward	187
wèi	CV: for	86
wèi(de)shì	A: in order to, in order that	188
wèi(de)shì hǎo	in order to, so that	199
wēndù	N: temperature	96
wēndùbiǎo	N: thermometer	96
wēnxí	V: review	158

wén	V: smell	18
wénchūlai	RV: make out (smelling)	158
wénjian	RV: smelled	18
wénhuà	N: civilization, culture	218
wényán	N: literary language, classical style	208
wèntí	N: question, problem	158
wèir	taste, flavor, odor	18
wǒ zìjǐ lái	IE: let me do it myself	37
wǒ gǎn shuō	IE: I venture to say that, I'm sure	96
wǒ lái	IE: let me do it	37
wǒ nàirén	my wife (polite remark)	95
wōmen dàjiā	N: all of us	2
wòfáng	N: bedroom (M: -jiān)	64
wúxiàndiàn	N: radio	208
wù	N: fog	29

X

xī	N: tin	115
xīfú	N: Western-style clothes (M: -tào)	106
xīcān	N: Western-style meal (M: -dùn)	85
xīhú	PW: West Lake (of Hangchow)	197
xīhú Fàndiàn	N: West Lake Hotel	198
xíguàn	N: habits	218
xǐdediào	RV: can be washed off	188
(xǐ)liǎnpén	N: wash basin	65
xízǎo	VO: to take a bath	11
(xǐ)zǎofáng	N: bathroom (M: -jiān)	11
(xǐ)zǎopén	N: bath tub	65
xì	N: play, opera	178
xìyuánzi	N: opera house, theater	178
-xià	BF: (RV- ending indicating downward motion or capacity)	56
xiàbān	VO: class is dismissed; office hours are over	148
xiàqi yǔ laile	RV: begin to rain	96
xià wù	VO: become foggy	29
xiàxuégāi	next term	149
xià xuě	VO: snow (falls)	28
xià yǔ	VO: rain (falls)	28
xiàyuè(yuè)dǐ	TW: end of next month	197

xià	V: startle, frighten	168
xiàhuàile	RV: scared to pieces	168
xiàsile	RV: scared to death	168
xià yítiào	startled	168
xiàtian	TW: summer	28
xián	SV: be salty	18
xiáncài	N: salted vegetables	18
xiánjīdàn	N: salted egg	18
xiánròu	N: salted meat	18
xiányú	N: salted fish	18
xiàn	M/N: hsien, county	36
xiànzhǎng	N: magistrate of a county	148
xiāng	SV: be fragrant, smell good	18
xiāngjiāo	banana	36
xiāngshuǐ, xiāngshuǐr	N: perfume	18
xiāngwèir	N: good smell, aroma	18
xiāngdāng	A: fairly	188
xiāngzi	N: suitcase, trunk, chest	125
xiāngqilai	RV: recall, think of	159
xiāngqi lǎojiā laile	recall my old home	159
xiāngqi tā shuode laile	recall what he said	159
xiāngqi yiqiande shiqing laile	recall old times	159
xiǎng bànfǎ	VO: to think of a way	157
xiǎngbuqilái	RV: do not remember	96
xiǎng zhúyì	VO: think of a way	179
xiàng	AV: resemble, seem like	10
	SV: look alike	
xiàng...nàyàngr	like that	10
xiàngpiānr	N: photograph	168
xiàng...zhèyàngr	like this	10
xiànglái	A: always and customarily, up to now	217
xiǎode	V: know	95
xiǎoshuōr	N: novel	208
xiǎoxué	N: elementary school	115
xiàozhǎng	N: principal of a school president of a college	148
xié	N: shoe (M: -shuāng for pair, -zhī for one of a pair)	54
xiépù	N: shoe store	54
xiěbùdé	RV: writing cannot be finished on time	94
xiěfǎ	N: the way of writing	209
xīn	heart, mind	2

xīnxiān	SV: fresh; new	217
xīnwén	N: news	208
xīnxiān jīdàn	fresh egg	217
xīnxiān niúǎi	fresh milk	217
Xīnyǎ Gōngsī	N: New Asia Company	94
xìn	V: believe	138
xìnfēngr	N: envelope	46
xìn jiào	VO: accept a religion, adhere to a religion, be a Christian	138
xìn Jīdūjiào	VO: be a Christian	138
xìn Tiānzhǔjiào	VO: be a Catholic	138
xìntǒng (yóutǒng)	N: mail box (M: -ge)	46
xìnxiāng (yóuxiāng)	N: mail box (M: -ge)	46
xìn Yēsūjiào	VO: be a Christian	138
xìnzhǐ	N: letter paper (M: -zhāng)	46
xìn zōngjiào	VO: believe in religion	208
xīngqī	N/TW: week/Sunday	125
xīngqīrì	TW: Sunday	125
xīngqītīān	TW: Sunday (interchangable with xīngqīrì)	125
xīngqīyī	TW: Monday	125
xíngli	N: baggage (M: -jiàn)	3
xínglipiào	N: baggage ticket	3
xǐng	V: wake up	138
xìngqu	N: interest (cf. yǒuyìsi)	187
xìngkuī	A: fortunately	107
xiūxi	V: rest, take a vacation	11
xūyào	V: need N: need	75
xǔ	V: permit, allow, let	126
xuéqī	N/M: semester, term	149
xuéwén	N: learning, knowledge	37
xué Zhōngwén	VO: study Chinese	46
xuě	N: snow	28

Y

yá	N: tooth	10
yágāo	N: toothpaste (M: -tǒng-- meaning tube, keg, barrel, tank)	11
yákē	N: dental department	167
yáshuā	N: toothbrush (M: -bǎ)	11
yān	N: tobacco, cigarette (M: -zhī, stick; -gēn, stick; hé(r), box; -bāo, pack; -tiāor, carton); smoke	35

yán	N: salt	18
yánjiu	V: study, make special investigation or study of	36
yánshèr, yánsè	N: color	28
yǎnjiǎng	V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech (interchangable with jiāngyǎn)	114
yǎnjing	N: eye (M: -zhī)	10
yǎnjing(r)	N: eye glasses (M: -fù, set)	148
yǎnkē	N: optical department	167
yángguǐzi	N: foreign devil, foreigner	228
yānghuǒ	N: matches (M: -gēn for stick; -hé(r) for box; bāo for package)--lit. foreign fire	37
yào	N: medicine	3
yàofāngr	N: prescription (M: -zhāng)	169
yàofáng	N: drugstore (cf. yàopù)	169
yàopù	N: medicine (herb) shop	3
yàoshi	N: key (M: -bǎ)	65
Yēlǔ Dàxué	Yale University	36
Yēsūjiào	N: Christianity (usually refers to the Protestant church as vs. the Catholic church)	116
yěcān	V/N: picnic	179
yè	M: page	157
yèzi	N: leaf	29
yīfu	N: clothes (M: -tào for suit, jiàn for piece)	105
yīyuàn	N: hospital	167
yíqiè	N: all of anything	10
yíge xīngqī	NU-M: one week	125
yìbāo dōngxi	N: a package of something	56
yìbāo yān	N: a package of cigarettes	56
yìbiānr...yìbiānr...	A: on one side...on the other, on one hand...on the other	35
yìkǒu fàn	a mouthful of rice	228
yízi	N: soap (M: -kuài)	10
...yǐnèi	MA: within	199
yíwéi	V: suppose, think that, consider	197
yìdiǎnr yìdiǎnr(de)	A: little by little	76
yīn tiān	N/VO: cloudy day	28
yín-	BF: silver	115
yínde	N: of silver	115
yínsháo	N: silver spoon	115
yínzi	N: silver	115

yīnggāi	A: ought to (interchangable with yīngdāng)	55
yòngchu	N: use, usage	167
yōnggōng	VO: put time and effort into SV: work or study hard	36
yòngren	N: servant	3
yòngxīn	SV/VO: put heart into, apply one's mind to	2
yòng Zhōngwén xiě (yòng) tóng zuòde	PH: write in Chinese made of copper(brass)	46 115
yóu	N: oil, sauce	18
yóuchāi	N: mail man	46
yóufèi	N: postage	45
yóupiào	N: postage stamp (M: -zhāng)	45
yóuzhèngjú	N: Post Office	45
yóuqí(shì)	A: especially, above all	29
yóuyǒng	V: swim	188
yóuyǒngchí	N: swimming pool	188
yǒudàoli	SV: be logical, reasonable	138
yǒudeshì	V: there is plenty (of it)	126
yǒu fēnbie	there is a difference	158
yǒu guānxi	VO: to be related to, to be relevant	85
yǒuguīju	SV: be well disciplined, well mannered	126
yǒujīngshen	VO: energetic, spirited	179
yǒujīngyàn	VO/SV: have experience/ be experienced	148
yǒulǐ	VO/SV: logical, reasonable	178
yǒulimào	SV: be polite	227
yǒu xìngqu	SV/VO: be interested in, show interest in	187
yǒuxuéwen	SV: learned	37
yǒuyánjiu	SV/VO: have specialized knowledge	36
yǒuyidiǎnr	A: a little bit	19
yǒu zhīshi	VO: well informed, educated	179
yǒu zuòr	there are seats	126
yǔ	N: rain	28
yuángù	N: reason	168
yuánzi	N: garden (M: -ge) theater (M: -jiā)	178
yuànzi	N: yard	27
yuē	V: invite	199
yuēhǎo	RV: reach an agreement with, (someone to do something)	199
yuēhui	N: engagement, appointment	116
yuèdì	TW: end of the month	197
yuèliang	N: moon	159

yuè...yuè yuè chī yuè pàng	A: the more...the more... the more you eat the fatter you are	157 157
yuè lái yuè... yuè lái yuè nán	A: getting more and more... getting more and more difficult	157 157
yuè lái yuè zāogāo yuè xiě yuè kuài	getting worse and worse the more you write the faster you get	157 157
yúncǎi	N: cloud (M: -kuài)	29
yùngì yùndòng yùndòngchǎng	N: luck, fortune V: exercise N: athletic field	107 149 149

Z

zázhì	N: magazine	208
zàihu	V: be of concern to, care	188
zài shuō	A-V: see about it, talk further, consider it further A: furthermore, moreover	37
zànměi zànměishī	V: praise N: hymnal, hymn	137 137
zāogāo	SV: what a mess! too bad	106
zǎowǎn	A: sooner or later	228
zéi	N: thief	106
zhá zhá jī zhá jī zhá jiǎozi zháyú zhá yú	V: fry in deep fat N: fried chicken VO: fry chicken N/VO: fried meat, dumplings N: fried fish VO: fry fish	19 19 19 189 19 19
zhāi	V: take off (hat, flower, etc.) take down (picture, telephone receiver, etc.; opposite guà)	94
zhāi huār	VO: pick flowers	94
zhǎi	SV: be narrow	54
zhànshí	A: temporarily, for the time being	75
zhànzhù zhàntái	RV: stop, stand still N: station, platform	46 126
zhǎng -zhǎng	V: grow, rise in price N: head (of an organization)	35 148
zhàng	N: account, bill	218
zhāoliáng	VO: catch cold	95

zhǎo (qián)	V(O): make change	56
zhǎo dàifu kànbìng	PH: see the doctor for an ailment	96
zhǎo máfan	VO: look for trouble, make trouble	2
zhào àikèsī-guāng	VO: take an X-ray	169
zhào àikèsī-guāng xiàng	VO: take an X-ray picture	169
zhào xiàng	VO: take a picture, be photographed	168
zhàoxiàngjī	N: camera	168
zhèibān	this class	148
zhèixuéqī	this term	149
zhèizhǒng rén	this kind person	36
zhēn	N: needle, pin M: stitch, shot, etc.	96
zhěntou	N: pillow	75
zhěng	A: just, exactly	125
zhěng bādiǎn (bādiǎn zhěng)	eight o'clock sharp, exactly eight o'clock	125
zhěng shíkuài qián	ten dollars even	125
zhèng héshì	just right	55
zhèngzhì	N: politics	208
zhīshi	N: knowledge	179
zhí	V: be worth	106
zhí qián/zhíqián	VO/SV: be worth (so much) money/ be valuable	106
zhíde	AV: worth while	106
zhǐ	V: point	167
zhǐzhe	V: pointing	167
zhǐhǎo	A: the best thing is to..., the only thing to do is....	178
zhōngxué	N: high school, secondary school	115
Zhōngwén	N: Chinese	46
Zhōngwén shū	N: Chinese book	46
Zhōngyāng Gōngyuán	N: Central Park	178
-zhǒng	M: kind of, sort of, race	36
zhòng	SV: heavy (in weight)	47
zhúyì	N: idea, way, plan	179
zhǔyì	N: principle (-ism)	208
-zhù	BF: (denoting firmness or security)	46
zhùxiào	VO: live in the school	149
zhù yīyuàn	VO: stay in the hospital	169
zhùyuàn	VO: stay in the hospital	169
zhùyuànde bìng rén	N: in patient	169
zhùyì	VO: pay attention (cf. liúshén) AV/V: pay attention to/pay attention	208

zhuāng	V: pack, load	56
zhuāngmǎnle	RV: packed full	137
zhuāngqilai	RV: pack up	56
zhuāngshang	RV: pack up	56
zhuī	V: chase after, catch up with	188
zhuībushàng	RV: cannot catch up with	188
zhuīdeshàng	RV: can catch up with	188
zhuīshang	RV: catch up with	188
zhuōbù	N: table cloth	54
zhǔn	SV/A: be accurate/certainly	209
zhǔn shíhou	on time	209
zǐxi	SV/A: be careful/carefully (cf. liúshén; xiǎoxin)	208
zìdiǎn	N: dictionary	209
zìláishuǐ	N: running water	65
zìláishuǐbǐ	N: fountain pen	65
zìrán	SV/A: be natural/of course, naturally	157
zìsī	SV: be selfish	218
zìxíngchē	V: bicycle	179
zōngjiào	N: religion	208
zǒng(shi)	A: always	28
zǒubudòng	RV: to tired to walk any farther	187
zǒulái zǒuqù	walk back and forth	138
zǒushúle	RV: go over (a piece of road) until familiar with it	198
zū	V: rent	64
zūchuqu	rent out	64
zū fáng	VO: rent a house	64
zūqian	N: rental	64
zǔzhī	V/N: organize, organization	197
zuǐ	N: mouth	10
zuòbuxià	RV: will not seat	56
zuòmǎnle	RV: all seats are taken, (the room) is full	137
zuò sānlúnr	VO: to ride a pedicab	125
zuòwèi (zuòr)	N: seat (M: -gè)	126
zuòshúle	RV: do (something) until familiar with it	198
zuòchéng	RV: accomplish	158
zuòdéle	RV: the job is completed	94
zuò lìbài	attend a religious service, go to church	137
zuò liànxí	VO: do exercise	158
zuòmèng	VO: dream	168

